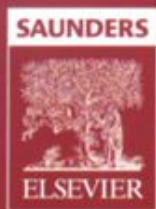
A close-up, high-contrast photograph of a horse's head, focusing on the eye and muzzle. The image is tinted with a deep red color, creating a dramatic and professional appearance. The horse's eye is dark and expressive, with long eyelashes. The muzzle is visible in the lower right, showing the texture of the skin and the nostril.

# SAUNDERS Equine Formulary

Derek C. Knottenbelt



# Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

SAUNDERS Equine Formulary

iii

1st ed.

**Derek C. Knottenbelt**

OBE BVM&S DVMS DipECEIM MRCVS, Philip Leverhulme Hospital, University of Liverpool, Liverpool, UK

0-7020-2790-1

iii

**SAUNDERS**

iv

**ELSEVIER**

© 2006, Elsevier Limited. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the Publishers. Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Health Sciences Rights Department, 1600 John F. Kennedy Boulevard, Suite 1800, Philadelphia, PA 19103-2899, USA: phone: (+1) 215 239 3804; fax: (+1) 215 239 3805; or, e-mail: [healthpermissions@elsevier.com](mailto:healthpermissions@elsevier.com). You may also complete your request on-line via the Elsevier homepage (<http://www.elsevier.com>), by selecting 'Support and contact' and then 'Copyright and Permission'.

First Edition published 1991 Department of Veterinary Clinical Science, University of Liverpool

Second Edition published 1992 Liverpool University Press

Third Edition published 1997 Liverpool University Press

This edition first published by Elsevier Limited 2006

ISBN 0 7020 2790 1

**British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data**

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

**Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data**

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

NOTE

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our knowledge, changes in practice, treatment and drug therapy may become necessary or appropriate. Readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of the practitioner, relying on their own experience and knowledge of the patient, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the publisher nor the author assumes any liability for any injury and/or damage.

The Publisher

Printed in Europe

For Elsevier:

Commissioning Editor: Joyce Rodenhuis

Development Editor: Rita Demetriou-Swanwick

Project Manager: Emma Riley

Designer: Andy Chapman

Illustrator: Samantha J Elmhurst

Illustration Manager: Bruce Hogarth

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

	Front Matter	
	PART 1 VITAL SIGNS, NORMAL VALUES	iv
1	Part 1 VITAL SIGNS, NORMAL VALUES	3
	PART 2 DIAGNOSTIC TESTS	3
2	Part 2 DIAGNOSTIC TESTS	41
	PART 3 INDEX OF DRUGS USED IN EQUINE MEDICINE	41
3	Part 3 INDEX OF DRUGS USED IN EQUINE MEDICINE	69
4	Section 1 Drugs acting on the central nervous system	79
5	Section 2 Drugs acting on the cardiovascular system	107
6	Section 3 Drugs acting on the respiratory system	117
7	Section 4 Drugs acting on the urinary tract	131
8	Section 5 Drugs acting on the gastrointestinal tract	135
9	Section 6 Hormones/steroids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	147
10	Section 7 Anti-infective drugs	167
11	Section 8 Blood-modifying agents	199
12	Section 9 Vaccines/antisera	217
13	Section 10 Miscellaneous drugs/medications and other materials	223
	PART 4 CLINICAL AIDS	223
14	Section 1 Bodyweight and surface area estimation	269
15	Section 2 Imperial—metric conversion	273

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

16	Section 3 SI—old unit conversion factors	279 279
17	Section 4 Restraint of horses	285 285
18	Section 5 Ageing	297 297
19	Section 6 Humane destruction	311 311
20	Section 7 Bandaging techniques	321 321
21	Section 8 Clinical techniques	349 349
22	Section 9 Sign of impending parturition	425 425
23	Section 10 Neonatal assessment and scoring of foals	427 427
24	Section 11 Poisons and antidotes	437 437
25	Section 12 Notifiable diseases	441 441
26	Section 13 Investigative methods/protocols	443 443
27	Section 14 Equipment for equine practice	459 459
28	Section 15 Anaesthesia	465 465
29	Section 16 Current requirements concerning drug usage and passport regulations in the UK	479

# Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

## <sup>1</sup> Part 1 VITAL SIGNS, NORMAL VALUES

3

### 1.1 REFERENCE VALUES

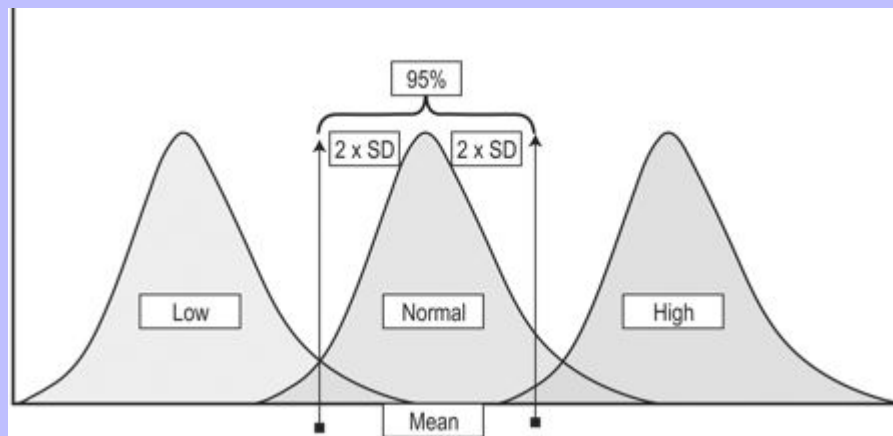
Abnormalities of physiological parameters (vital signs, haematological or biochemical parameters) are frequently used to assist the diagnosis and management of disease but there are important considerations to be taken into account before they can be relied upon. Hitherto the term 'normal value' has been used to indicate that the measured parameter is within the reference range for a pool of apparently normal horses. There are always valid criticisms of defined normal values in view of individual variations within the natural/normal population distribution. The term 'reference value' is now used widely so that the implication of normality is not emphasised. An apparently normal individual animal may have values that fall outside the accepted 95% confidence limits and abnormal ones may fall into the normal range. However, the clinician is usually able to assess the validity of results based upon the particular laboratory normal values and the clinical features, which have instigated the sampling, and testing carried out.

Many commercial laboratories have pathologists who may be qualified and able to provide interpretive assistance but without provision of a complete range of information it is unreasonable to expect this. Therefore all requests for laboratory testing should be accompanied by as much clinical and historical information as can reasonably be provided. This also provides the pathologist with added information, which might bias or alter the tests, which are performed. Clinicians can seldom be effective or convincing specialist pathologists!

Commercial and 'in-house' laboratories must ensure that they are subjected to proper and regular quality control assessments. This serves to ensure the quality and therefore the validity of the results of assays. Failure to do this opens the door for misinterpretation at best and litigation at worst. Misleading laboratory results can also jeopardise the well-being of the patient and are in any case a complete waste of time, effort and money. Organisations exist to provide quality control assessments and these provide a vital service to the profession and the owners of animals who have a right to expect quality and value for money.

3

Fig. 1.1 Distribution curves for a haematological or biochemical parameter showing the 'normal' reference range in the middle and 'abnormal low' range to the left and 'abnormally high' range to the right. It can be seen that there are (large) areas of overlap such that a normal horse can have an apparently abnormal result while an abnormal one might easily have a normal value. This makes interpretation a critical factor in clinical practice. The more distant the value from the normal the more likely it is to be abnormal but these values are unlikely to create major problems for the clinician. It is the subtle differences that are the challenge. In many cases the trends in values are more helpful than the single 'snapshot' estimation. This applies in particular to conditions where the clinical signs are not in themselves pathognomonic, e.g. liver disease.



Statistical analysis of the results of profile v individual laboratory examinations shows that where a single test is performed the chances of the result being an error are low, but where six parameters are measured there is a 50% chance that one of them will be outside the reference range. The greater the number of tests performed the greater the chance of abnormal findings (in otherwise normal horses!).

### 1.1.1 Note:

The reference values shown in this section are those that are accepted in the Department of Veterinary Pathology, University of Liverpool. The values may differ from those in other laboratories and may also be varied from time to time in the light of ongoing developments and experience in clinical pathology. For example estimation of creatine kinase (CK) can be made at different temperatures and so a value that seems low or high from one laboratory may appear to be normal when compared to the reference range from another.

The laboratory should provide their own 'reference values' on every report although the lab should not report on the findings unless this is based on a full history and is the opinion of a qualified and experienced clinical pathologist.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 1.1.2 Normal vital signs

5

The normal vital signs for horses will vary according to the circumstances, e.g. transport, exercise and mental status. External and internal factors may influence them and due note should always be made of the circumstances under which they are obtained. There are some circumstances when abnormalities can be masked by temporary or intermittent alterations in vital signs.

Table 1.1

	Pulse rate (b/min)	Respiration rate (/min)	Temperature (rectal) (°C)	Capillary refill time (sec)
Foal (newborn)	100–128	14–15	38.5–39.5	<2
Foal (7 days)	80–120	14–16	38.0–39.0	<2
Foal (3 months)	60–100	14–15	37.5–38.0	<2
Pony	45–55	12–15	37.5–38.0	<2
Thoroughbred (resting)	35–45	12–15	37.5–38.0	<2
Thoroughbred (fit)	25–40	10–15	37.5–38.5	<2

5

### 1.2 SAMPLE COLLECTION

6

Not only is the correct anticoagulant required essential for accurate laboratory analysis but it is essential that the tubes are filled correctly.

#### 1.2.1 Note:

Check anticoagulant requirements with laboratory before obtaining samples. Consider effects of transport on samples, particularly when this involves postal services.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 1.2

Tube: Parameter	FIOx	Citrate	LiHep	Plain	Affected by
Haematology ✓	0	0	±	0	L H
Clotting 0	0	✓	0	0	L H
Glucose 0	✓	0	0	0	S
Phosphate 0	✓	0	0	±	H
Urea 0	0	±	±	✓	H
Proteins 0	0	±	±	✓	L H
Fibrinogen 0	0	±	✓	0	
Serum amyloid A 0	0	0	±	✓	L H
Bilirubin ±	0	±	±	✓	H
Cholesterol 0	0	0	±	✓	
Triglycerides 0	0	0	±	✓	L
Creatinine 0	0	0	±	✓	L H
Lactate	Mixture of FIOx + EDTA – check with lab (assay immediately)				
Copper 0	0	0	±	✓	H
Electrolytes 0	0	0	0	✓	
Blood gases 0	0	0	✓	0	L H
Bicarbonate 0	0	0	✓	0	L H S
Ammonia	Special requirements – check with lab first (assay immediately)				
Enzymes 0	0	0	±	✓	S
Hormones 0	0	0	✓	✓	
H = affected by haemolysis; L = affected by lipaemia; S = immediate separation. SAMPLES MARKED: ✓ are <b>BEST</b> , ± are <b>ACCEPTABLE</b> , 0 are <b>UNACCEPTABLE</b> .					

6

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 1.2.2 Haematology

7

Table 1.3

Parameter (units)	0–3 weeks	Pony/mare	TB	TB (fit)
Haemoglobin (g/L)	130	120	125	145
RANGE	110–150	90–140	110–180	120–180
Haematocrit (L/L)	0.38	0.36	0.40	0.42
RANGE	0.31–0.45	0.30–0.42	0.35–0.46	0.37–0.45
RBC ( $\times 10^{12}/L$ )	9.9	10.0	10.5	10.8
RANGE	8.0–11.0	8.8–12.6	8.5–12.5	8.5–12.9
MCV (fl)	41–49			
MCHC (g/L) (%)	310–370 (31–36%) (max value = saturated)			
MCH (pg)	13–18			
RBC diameter ( $\mu$ )	5–6			
Platelets ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	240–550			
WBC TOTAL ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	6.0–12.0 (often slightly higher in yearlings)			
Neutrophils ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	2.7–6.7 (higher in foals)			
(%) <sup>*</sup>	(45–55%)			
Lymphocytes ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	1.5–5.5 (n:L : 1.2:1.0)			
(%) <sup>*</sup>	(35–50%)			
Eosinophils ( $\mu 10^9/L$ )	0.1–0.6			
(%) <sup>*</sup>	(0–5%)			
Monocytes ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	0.0–0.2			
(%) <sup>*</sup>	(0–3%)			
Bone marrow	0.5:1.0–1.5			
M:E ratio				
<b>Note:</b>				
(i) Stab/unsegmented neutrophils are not usually present in normal blood.				
(ii) Normoblasts very rarely appear in peripheral/circulating blood even in profound anaemia.				
(iii) Reticulocytes (as identified by supravital staining) are not present.				
(iv) Early erythrocytes may show Heinz bodies, but are best recognised by increased cell volume.				

\* Differential counts should not be expressed in percentage terms – this can be grossly misleading.

7

### 1.2.2.1 Derived values

8

These parameters are derived from the red cell values and include:

#### 1. MCHC (mean cell haemoglobin concentration):

- This is the average proportion of haemoglobin in the average red cell.
- This value cannot exceed about 36 because this represents the saturation point. Laboratory errors etc. will however often reveal a value of slightly above this (up to 38 can probably be accepted).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- However, beyond this value represents a problem that should be explored. It could be technical problems or result from haemolysis deriving either from intravascular haemolysis (pathological) or *in vitro* (resulting from technical errors of collection, storage and handling).
- Whenever the value exceeds 36–38, the blood haemoglobin should be remeasured and the haemoglobin concentration should be measured in the plasma. The haematocrit should also be repeated.

$$\text{MCHC (g/L)} = \frac{\text{Haemoglobin (g/L)}}{\text{Haematocrit}} \times 10$$

### 2. MCV (mean cell volume)

- This is a measure of the average volume of one red cell (erythrocyte).
- An average volume is not really an easy index to interpret and so the appearance of the red cells on the smear must be examined to see if there are many small cells and many large ones or whether the distribution of the size of the red cells is normal.
- Modern laser cell counters provide an accurate measure of the size distribution and this is a very valuable aid to the interpretation of the red cells parameters.

$$\text{MCV (fl)} = \frac{\text{Haematocrit (L/L)} \times 10}{\text{Red cell count } (\times 10^9/\text{L})}$$

### 3. MCH (mean cell haemoglobin) – actual weight of haemoglobin in the average red cell.

- MCH is seldom used because it is derived from the two most inexact measurements, i.e. haemoglobin and red cell counts. It is not considered here, as it has no material advantage over MCHC and considerable problems of accuracy.

8

Many clinical pathologists regard the MCHC and the MCV as the most sensitive indicators of red cell normality. However, errors of calculation can result in significant errors of judgement. The commonest errors arise from:

9

- Technical problems associated with collection of blood samples (including partial or extensive clotting or haemolysis during or after collection).
- Failure to take account of the very high erythrocyte sedimentation rate of horse blood. For this reason blood samples should always be handled correctly from the moment of collection.
- During preparation for cell counting or other haematological analysis the sample should be continuously mixed preferably on an automatic rotating mixer.

For example:

1. Lysis of red cells results in a low haematocrit reading but a normal haemoglobin concentration – this results in an elevation of MCHC above the natural maximum/saturated value of 36–38% (often well above 40). This value can therefore be used as an index of the technical aspects of red cell measurement. MCHC values greater than 36–38% should be viewed with caution. Repeated testing is probably indicated.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

2. A haematocrit tube that is filled from the top of a sample that has been left to stand even for only a minute or two will have fewer red cells (and therefore a lower haematocrit reading). The 'corresponding' haemoglobin concentration might be obtained from a similar sample a few moments later (low haemoglobin/haematocrit/red cell count) or may be taken from the bottom of the blood collection tube (high haemoglobin/haematocrit). In either case there will be a serious distortion of the values potentially resulting in a significant error of interpretation.

9

### 1.2.3 Plasma and serum biochemistry

10

#### 1.2.3.1 (i) Plasma/serum proteins

It is important to ensure the correct choice of collection tubes/anticoagulants when deciding what parameters are needed. See above (p. 6) for ideal/acceptable tubes.

Table 1.4

Parameter (units)	Normal value/range
Total protein serum (g/L)	62.5–70.0
plasma (g/L)	65–73
Albumin (g/L)	30–36
Globulin (g/L)	17.0–40.0 (8–32 in newborn)
α Globulin (total) (g/L)	8.0–13.0
α <sub>1</sub> globulin	2.0–4.0
α <sub>2</sub> globulin	6.0–13.0
β globulin (total) (g/L)	8.0–15.0
β <sub>1</sub> globulin	7.0–13.0
β <sub>2</sub> globulin	6.0–10.0
γ globulin (g/L)	7.0–14.0 (Note foal IgG ex colostrum)
Fibrinogen (plasma) (g/L)	1.5–3.0*
Albumin:Globulin ratio	A/G × 100 = 100%; A:G:1:1
Serum amyloid A (SAA) (u/L)**	0–20

\* Check method of estimation as the estimated values can vary widely with heat precipitation/subtraction methods.

\*\* Measured by electroimmunoassay.

10

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

1.2.3.2

(ii) Globulins

11

Table 1.5 Globulin distribution in plasma of normal horses

Globulin fraction	Major components	Function
$\alpha$ -1	$\alpha$ -1 lipoprotein	Lipid/hormone transport
	$\alpha$ -1 anti-trypsin	Proteinase inhibitor
	$\alpha$ -1 glycoprotein	
	Caeruloplasmin	Copper transport
$\alpha$ -2	$\alpha$ -2 macroglobulins	Proteinase inhibitor
	$\alpha$ -2 glycoproteins	
	Haptoglobin	Haemoglobin binding/peroxidase
$\beta$ -1	$\beta$ -1 lipoprotein	Lipid transport
	Transferrin	Iron transport
	Complement (3/4/5)	Complement factors
$\beta$ -2	IgG (T)	Antibodies
	IgA	Antibodies
	Fibrinogen	Coagulation
$\gamma$	IgG	Antibodies
	IgM	Antibodies

(After Blackmore and Brobst (1981) Biochemical Values in Equine Medicine, AHT, Newmarket.)

11

1.2.3.3

Interpretive comment on protein distribution as calculated from electrophoresis

12

The interpretation of protein profiles forms an important part of clinical pathology, but the clinical status of the horse MUST be taken into account during the assessment of the significance of the findings.

Table 1.6

Condition	Albumin	$\alpha$ globulin	$\beta$ globulin	$\gamma$ globulin
Infection	VIRAL	NORMAL	NORMAL	ELEVATED
	ACUTE	NORMAL (LOW)	ELEVATED	NORMAL
	CHRONIC	NORMAL	ELEVATED	(Elevated later)
Parasitism	LOW	ELEVATED	ELEVATED	ELEVATED
Hepatic disease	LOW	NORMAL	NORMAL	ELEVATED

(After Taylor FGR, Hillier MH (1977) Diagnostic Techniques in Equine Medicine. WB Saunders, London.)

Table 1.7 Interpretive values for serum amyloid A protein (SAA) in newborn foals

	Serum amyloid A (u/litre)
Normal	0–20
Non-infective acute phase response (trauma/prematurity)	20–100
Infective response	>200

(After: Chavvatte PM, Pepys MB, Roberts B, Ousey JC, McGladdery AJ, Rossdale PD (1992) Measurement of serum amyloid A protein (SAA) as an aid to differential diagnosis of infection in newborn foals. Proceedings of 6th International Conference – Equine Infectious Diseases. R&W Publications, Newmarket.)

12

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 1.2.3.4 (iii) Non-protein biochemistry

13

The correct sample must be taken for the selected parameters. See above (p. 6) for ideal/acceptable tubes.

Table 1.8

Parameter (units)	Normal value/range
Ammonia (mmol/L)	<40
Bile acids (μmol/L)	10.0–20.0
Bilirubin (total) (μmol/L)	24.0–50.0 (up to 120 if starved >24 h)
Conjugated (direct) (μmol/L)	4.0–15.0
Unconjugated (indirect) (μmol/L)	5–35
Cholesterol (mmol/L)	2.5–3.5
Creatinine (μmol/L)	90.0–200.0
Glucose (mmol/L)	3.5–6.0
Lactate (mmol/L)	0.6–1.9 (Slightly lower in arterial blood)
Phosphate (inorganic) (mmol/L)	1.0–2.0 (Higher in young: up to 4.0)
Triglycerides (mmol/L)	0.1–0.8
Urate (mmol/L)	50–60
Urea (mmol/L)	3.5–8.0

13

### 1.2.3.5 (iv) Electrolyte and mineral parameters

14

It is important to ensure the correct choice of collection tubes/anticoagulants when deciding what parameters are needed. See above (p. 6) for ideal/acceptable tubes.

Table 1.9

Parameter (units)	Normal value/range
Calcium (total) (mmol/L)	2.5–4.0
Calcium (ionised) (mmol/L)	1.5–1.8
Chloride (mmol/L)	90.0–105.0
Copper (μmol/L)	19.0–28.0
Iodine (total) (nmol/L)	400–900
Protein bound (mg/L)	1.5–2.5
Iron (μmol/L)	25.0–30.0
Iron binding cap (total) (μmol/L)	40.0–80.0
Unbound (μmol/L)	35–45
Iron saturation (%)	25–50
Ferritin (μg/L)	60–360
Magnesium (mmol/L)	0.6–1.0
Potassium (mmol/L)	3.5–5.5
Potassium (red cell) (mmol/L)	75.0–104.0
Selenium (μmol/L)	>1.5
Sodium (mmol/L)	134.0–143.0
Osmolality (mosmol/L/mmol/L)	279–296
Calcium:phosphate ratio	2–5

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

1.2.3.5.1

### Note:

The anaemia of chronic inflammation is possibly the most common form of chronic slowly progressive anaemia in horses. Diagnostic confirmation of this state is problematical. However an iron profile can be helpful and can confirm the diagnosis when considered along with the presenting clinical signs and other haematological and biochemical parameters.

14

Table 1.10

	Reference	Anaemia of chronic inflammation
Plasma iron (μmol/L)	25–30	Reduced
Iron binding cap (total) (μ mol/L)	40.0–80.0	Reduced
Unbound iron (μmol/L)	35–45	
Iron saturation (%)	25–50	
Transferrin	Not yet established	Decreased percent saturation
Ferritin (μ g/L)	60–360	Elevated

15

1.2.3.6

### (v) Vitamins/hormones (excluding sex hormones)

Ensure correct choice of collection tubes/anticoagulants when deciding what parameters are needed. See above for ideal/acceptable tubes (p. 6).

Table 1.11

Parameter (units)	Normal value/range
Cortisol (nmol/L)	25.0–155.0 (Marked diurnal variations)
Folate (ng/mL)	7.0–13.0
Insulin (μiu/mL)	5.0–36.0
Parathormone (pmol/L)	60.0–80.0
Tri-iodothyronine (T <sub>3</sub> ) (nmol/L)	0.5–2.0
Thyroxine (T <sub>4</sub> ) (nmol/L)	4.0–40.0 (High in neonate)
Vitamin A (pg/mL)	20–175
β-carotene (mg/L)	150–400
Vitamin B <sub>12</sub> (pg/mL)	>1000
Vitamin E (μmol/L) (α-tocopherol)	>4.6

15

1.2.3.7

### (vi) Acid–base balance

Table 1.12

	Arterial	Venous
pH	7.35–7.41	7.36–7.43
pCO <sub>2</sub>	37.00–43.00	45.00–49.00
pO <sub>2</sub>	73.00–98.00	36.00–47.00
HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup> (mmol/L)	22.50–26.50	22.30–25.00
Base excess	0.00 to +4.00	–2.00 to +1.50
Anion gap (meq/L)	6–15	
Metabolic fluid requirement = 15 mL/kg/day		

16

# Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

The fluid requirement can be calculated from the formula:

$$\text{Deficit (litres)} = \frac{\text{Bodyweight (kg)} \times \text{Dehydration (\%)}}{100}$$

The bicarbonate deficit in acidosis can be calculated from the formula:

$$\text{Bicarbonate deficit (mL of 8.4\% molar)} = 0.3 \times \text{Base excess} \times \text{Bodyweight (kg)}$$

1.2.3.7.1

## Comments:

- Bicarbonate should only be administered when metabolic acidosis is known to be present, i.e.:
  - (a) base excess is negative;
  - (b) pH is acidic;
  - (c) plasma bicarbonate is low.
- Bicarbonate is contraindicated in respiratory acidosis.

1.2.3.8

## (vii) Enzymes

The estimation of serum/plasma enzymes usually relies upon dynamic assays and so the correct sample must be obtained and the sample must be handled correctly to ensure that enzymes are not degraded by the manipulations. Ensure correct choice of collection tubes/anticoagulants when deciding what parameters are needed. See above (p. 6) for ideal/acceptable tubes.

16

Parameter (units)	Normal value/range
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP) (iu/L)	<250 (Higher in young)
Amylase (iu/L)	75–150
Arginase (iu/L)	0–14
Aspartate aminotransferase (iu/L)	80–250
Creatine kinase (iu/L)	<50
γ-Glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) (iu/L)	<40
Glutamate dehydrogenase (GLDH) (iu/L)	<6
Glutathione peroxidase (GsHPx) (m/mL RBC)	30–70
Intestinal alkaline phosphatase (IALP) (iu/L)	<30
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) (iu/L)	76–400 (Higher in young)
LDH <sub>1</sub> (iu/L) (% of total)	6–48 (8–12)
LDH <sub>2</sub> (iu/L) (% of total)	15–120 (20–30)
LDH <sub>3</sub> (iu/L) (% of total)	26–180 (35–45)
LDH <sub>4</sub> (iu/L) (% of total)	10–80 (12–20)
LDH <sub>5</sub> (iu/L) (% of total)	1–20 (1–5)
Inositol (sorbitol) dehydrogenase (IDH/SDH) (iu/L)	<2*

17

\* IDH (SDH) has very short half-life in vitro and in vivo (~2 h).

1.2.3.8.1

## Comments:

- Alanine aminotransferase (ALT/SGPT) estimation is of no practical/diagnostic value in the horse.

17



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

1.2.3.9

### Interpretive comments on enzyme profiles in horses

18

- The interpretation of plasma enzyme changes depends upon the distribution of the enzymes in the tissues that are damaged by a specific disorder.
- Intracellular enzymes are released into the blood stream when cells are either disrupted or where there is an increased permeability without necessarily incurring cell destruction.
- Specific organs have specific distributions of enzymes and so it is possible to identify the extent and type of damage from a careful interpretation of enzyme profiles. However, some enzymes are not as specific as others. Combinations of enzyme assay can be helpful in discriminating between the various organs.

**Table 1.14 The distribution of the various common diagnostically useful enzymes in the various body tissues**

Enzyme	Organ	Liver	Pancreas	Muscle	Kidney	Gut	Brain	Bone
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)		♦			♦	♦*		♦
Amylase			♦					
Aspartate transaminase (AST)		♦		♦				
Creatine kinase (CK)				♦			♦	
Gamma glutamyl transferase (GGT)	♦		♦		♦			
Glutamate dehydrogenase (GLDH)	♦							
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	♦	♦	♦	♦	♦	♦	♦	
Inositol (sorbitol) dehydrogenase (IDH/SDH)	♦							
Ornithine carbamyl transferase (OCT)	♦							

\* Intestinal alkaline phosphatase is measured at a different pH to the total value in plasma.

18

Table 1.15 The distribution of the enzymes in the major body tissues

Enzyme	Specificity rating*	Stability rating**	Comments
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)	BONE INTESTINE (ILEUM) BILIARY TREE KIDNEY	HIGH	ISO enzymes increase specificity but not often measured apart from intestinal ALP
Amylase	PANCREAS	HIGH	
Aspartate transaminase (AST)	LIVER  SKELETAL MUSCLE  CARDIAC MUSCLE	HIGH	Good screening enzyme used to support differential detection of tissue damage
Creatine kinase (CK)	MUSCLE BRAIN	MODERATE	Isoenzymes helpful For brain measure in CSF
Gamma glutamyl transferase (GGT)	LIVER KIDNEY	HIGH	For kidney measure in urine
Glutamate dehydrogenase (GLDH)	LIVER	MODERATE	Index of nuclear (profound) damage
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	ALL TISSUES	MODERATE	Isoenzyme profile important (see p. 21)
Inositol (sorbitol) dehydrogenase (IDH/SDH)	LIVER	LOW	Very labile Highly specific to liver
Ornithine carbamyl transferase (OCT)	LIVER	LOW	Very labile Few labs perform this

Key:

\* Specificity rating relates the extent to which the enzyme is specifically indicative of a particular organ damage. Enzymes that have multiple organ distributions are likely therefore to have a low specificity although paired enzyme tests may enable the specificity to be increased significantly.

\*\* Stability rating relates to the extent to which stored (or posted) samples remain stable for analysis. A low rating means that the test is likely (or certainly) to be affected by storage or delays between collection and analysis.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 1.16 The relative activities of the major systemic enzymes as a proportion of the organ with the most activity (marked 100%)

Organ	Enzyme					
	ALP	AST	CK	IDH	GLDH	GGT
Brain	2	9	28	3	0	1
Myocardium	1	59	70	4	1	1
Skeletal muscle	1	<b>100</b>	<b>100</b>	0	1	1
Spleen	9	7	2	0	2	1
Liver	7	62	22	<b>100</b>	<b>100</b>	17
Pancreas	21	41	9	4	3	71
Kidney	<b>100</b>	13	1	19	7	<b>100</b>
Ileum	22	5	0	3	0	1
Colon	4	3	0	3	0	1
For abbreviations see <a href="#">Table 1.15</a> .						
(After Gerber H (1969) Equine Veterinary Journal 1:129–139.)						

1.2.3.9.1

### Note:

- Table 1.16 is included to demonstrate the distribution of enzymes in the various tissues of the horse and to illustrate the importance of understanding the role of the enzyme in the diagnostic process. For example although GGT is highest in the kidney tissue, blood levels are not increased in renal disease simply because the enzyme escapes into the lumen of the nephron; therefore urinary GGT will be a significant aid to diagnosis in these cases.

1.2.3.10

### Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) isoenzyme profile

- Total LDH is probably of limited value in horses unless it is accompanied by an isoenzyme profile because elevations can be due to broad increases or in more dramatic increase in one or two of the isoenzymes.
- Laboratories should be expected to perform an isoenzymes profile in the event of significant elevations in total LDH so that meaningful diagnostic information can be provided. A simple elevation of the total LDH is probably meaningless without a breakdown of the relative distribution of the isoenzymes. However, where this is provided, the results can be very helpful.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 1.17

Isoenzyme Organ specificity	
1	Heart muscle Brain Testis
2	Non-locomotor muscle Heart Brain Kidney Bone Thyroid
3	All major organs All non-locomotor muscles
4	Intestine Liver Skin
5	Locomotor muscles Liver Intestine Skin

21

### 1.2.3.11 (viii) Blood coagulation

22

- Collect blood into buffered or unbuffered Na citrate; other anticoagulants are not acceptable.

Table 1.18

Platelet count ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	75–305
Plasma fibrinogen (g/L)	<4*
Prothrombin time (PT) (One Stage PT) (sec)	12–15
Activated prothrombin time (APT) (sec)	9–12
Activated partial prothrombin time (APTT) (sec)	45–70
Activated clotting time (sec)	120–190
<i>In vitro</i> clotting time (minutes)	5–7
Bleeding time ( <i>in vivo</i> ) (minutes)	2–3
Fibrin degradation products (FDPs) (mg/mL)	<0.20
Plasminogen (% of pooled normal equine plasma)	65–155
Protein C ( $\mu g/L$ )	90–120
Antithrombin III (% of pooled normal equine plasma)	63–131
Clot retraction time (hours at room temperature)	1–2

- \* The value for plasma fibrinogen varies slightly with the method of estimation. The reference value stated here is that accepted for use with the heat precipitation method. When subtraction (total plasma protein less serum protein) method is used the value may be lower.

22

### 1.2.3.11.1 Note:

23

- Prothrombin time is the time required for fibrin formation after the addition of tissue thromboplastin and calcium to citrated plasma. Prolongation indicates deficiency in the extrinsic or common pathways (see below).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Activated partial thromboplastin time is the time required for the formation of a fibrin clot after addition of a contact activator, phospholipids and calcium to citrated plasma. Prolongation indicates deficiency in the extrinsic or common pathways. Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, warfarin toxicity, vitamin K deficiency and inherited prekallikrein deficiency may be involved.
- Activated clotting time is a measure of the intrinsic and common pathways. It is dependent on platelet phospholipid for activation. Platelet deficiencies (numbers or function) will result in a prolongation of the ACT in the presence of normal coagulation factors.
- Fibrin degradation products are the result of intravascular fibrinolysis. These compounds are intensely anticoagulant and increases are associated with disseminated intravascular coagulopathy or primary fibrinolysis (especially within the major body cavities).

1.2.3.11.2

### Comments:

- Blood coagulation tests are important in horses because there are several disorders that can be differentiated by selective use of coagulation tests. Most of these tests are performed in specially equipped laboratories and the tests require citrated blood samples taken in precisely the correct proportion of 9 parts of blood to 1 part of citrate.
- Special clotting test tubes are available. Specimens should be delivered to the laboratory within 4 hours of collection.
- If postal delays are inevitable a sample from a normal horse should be sent at the same time.

1. **The extrinsic clotting pathway:** This is initiated by tissue thromboplastin (factor III) released from damaged tissue. This pathway is usually tested by use of the **one stage prothrombin time**.

Extensions in prothrombin time will be found in vitamin K deficiency (warfarin toxicosis), advanced liver failure and late disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC).

23

2. **The intrinsic pathway** is initiated by platelet-derived thromboplastin released as a result of vascular collagen exposure. The **activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT)** tests this pathway. An indication of this pathway's efficiency can also be gained from the *in vitro* clotting time (see below).

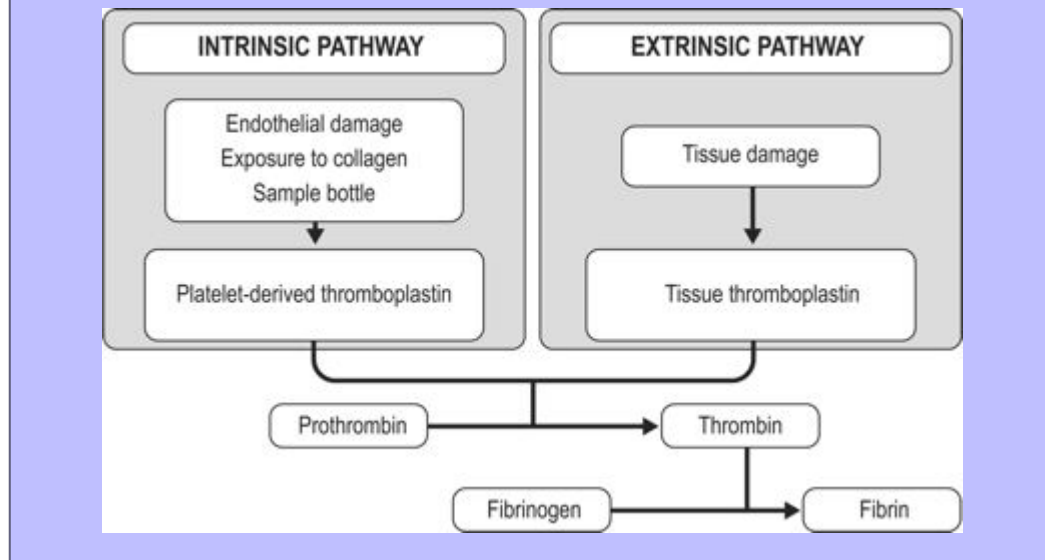
24

An extended APPT result indicates a defect of whole blood coagulation and is found in disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC) or specific deficits in clotting factors (e.g. Factor VIII haemophilia).

- ***In vitro* clotting time:** This is measured by collecting a fresh blood sample and immediately placing it in a plain (clotting) tube. The tube is maintained at or near 37°C and is turned every 30 seconds to check for coagulation. The test is a crude method of assessing the extrinsic clotting cascade as it relies solely on platelet-derived thromboplastin.
- ***In vivo* bleeding time:** This is a simple, approximate test that evaluates the capillary platelet aspect of clotting. A small clipped area of skin or a visible mucous membrane such as the inside of the lip is punctured with a medical stylet and is then blotted every 15 seconds until there is no further blood on the paper. The time taken for the disappearance of the blood spot is the *in vivo* bleeding time. It is therefore an index of the overall status of clotting – the so-called final common pathway.

**Clot retraction time** is a crude indicator of platelet defects (either in number or function). A blood sample is drawn into a plain (clotting) tube and the time taken for the clot to retract from the walls of the vessel is measured. It is prolonged where platelet numbers are low or function is poor.

Fig. 1.2 A simple scheme of the main clotting pathways. Each component is a highly complex process that relies on several bioactive mediators.



24

1.2.3.12

## (ix) Cerebrospinal fluid

25

- COLLECT INTO PLAIN (Sterile) AND EDTA TUBES.
- If bacteriological culture required collect immediately into biphasic (blood) culture medium.

Table 1.19

Colour	Water clear
Cisternal pressure	150–300 mmH <sub>2</sub> O
Refractive index	1.334–1.335
pH	7.4
Cell count (total)	< 0.005 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /L
Cell distribution	Neutrophils/small lymphocytes only
Glucose	50–60% of blood glucose
Pandey test (globulins)*	NEGATIVE
Protein (total)	<1.0 g/L
Creatine kinase#	<2 iu/L
Aspartate transaminase (AST)	20 iu/L
Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH)	< 8 iu/l

\* Pandey test using concentrated phenol.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

# CK may be higher (30–50 iu/L) in foals 7 days old.

1.2.3.12.1

### Comments:

- Cells in cerebrospinal fluid degenerate very fast and the low numbers mean that special methods need to be used. The laboratory will usually provide suitable guidance.
- Assay should be performed within 15 minutes if possible.

25

1.2.3.13

### (x) Synovial fluid

26

- The collection of synovial fluid should always be treated as a full aseptic procedure with full precautions being taken. There is no justification for aseptic sampling even when the joint is known to be infected.
- Contamination with blood is relatively common and makes subsequent interpretation difficult.
- COLLECT INTO PLAIN (Sterile) AND EDTA TUBES.
- If bacterial culture is required collect immediately into BLOOD CULTURE TUBES (biphasic medium essential).

Table 1.20

Appearance	Clear, non-turbid, pale yellow
Volume	Variable with joint
Viscosity (Stringing test)	POSITIVE
Erythrocytes	NIL
Leucocyte count (Total)	$<0.5 \times 10^9/L$
Total protein	$<18 \text{ g/L}$

Correction formula for blood contaminated samples:

$$\text{White cell count of synovial fluid} = \frac{\text{Haematocrit of synovial fluid (\%)} \times \text{Total leucocyte count}}{\text{Haematocrit of blood (\%)}}$$

1.2.3.13.1

### Note:

This correction is simply a means of providing a guide but it can still be problematical.

1.2.3.13.2

### Comments:

- Serum/plasma can easily be mistaken for synovial fluid and more critically vice versa – normal synovial fluid clots with acetic acid!
- Blood contamination can arise during centesis or from internal joint/synovial trauma.

26

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

1.2.3.14

### (xi) Peritoneal fluid

27

Normally there is a very small volume of peritoneal and pleural fluid (25 and 10 mL respectively) so it is sometimes very difficult to obtain a suitable sample from a normal body cavity. Furthermore contamination with blood is more significant if the volume is low. Collection technique is important and repeated punctures should therefore be avoided. A full knowledge of the likely anatomy is helpful in identifying the best site for puncture. In the event that fluid is not obtained a simultaneous ultrasonographic examination may help to identify a pocket of fluid that can be sampled safely and easily.

- COLLECT INTO PLAIN (Sterile) AND EDTA TUBES.
- If culture is required collect immediately into biphasic (blood) culture medium.

Table 1.21

Colour	Clear, pale yellow, non-clotting
Protein (g/L)	<20
Leucocyte count (total) ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	<1
Total red cell count	Negligible
Creatinine ( $\times \text{mol/L}$ )	160–200
Urea (mmol/L)	3.5–6.5

1.2.3.14.1

#### Comments:

- Peritoneal fluid with the same PCV/haematocrit as jugular blood is probably from a blood vessel.
- Peritoneal fluid with a very high PCV/haematocrit is likely to have come from the spleen.
- Peritoneal fluid with a PCV/haematocrit slightly less than jugular blood may indicate peritoneal bleeding.
- Peritoneal fluid with very low PCV/haematocrit is probably the result of a strangulating or infarctive lesion.

27

1.2.3.15

### (xii) Urine

28

- COLLECT INTO STERILE CONTAINERS

1.2.3.15.1

#### Note:

It is important to ensure that bottles etc. are clean and free from sugar contamination so new sterile containers should be used where possible.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 1.22

pH	7.5–9.5
Colour	Clear or cloudy/turbid
Deposit	Carbonate crystals
Blood	NEGATIVE
Specific gravity	1.020–1.060
Gamma glutamyl transferase (GGT) (iu/L)	* 0–5

\* Note that gamma glutamyl transferase (GGT) is not released into blood in significant amounts from damaged tubular cells. Serum concentrations will not be affected by even severe tubular necrosis.

28

Table 1.23

Enzyme	Reference values	Specificity
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP) (iu/L)	0–28	Proximal tubule Values over 28 are significant Diurnal variations
Gamma glutamyl transferase (GGT) (iu/L)	0–5	Proximal tubule Values over 20 are significant Diurnal variations
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) (iu/L)	0–12	Distal tubule Renal papillary necrosis
Enzyme concentrations in urine in normal horses with specificity assessment.		

29

1.2.3.15.2

### Comments:

- Equine urine frequently contains heavy calcium carbonate deposits. This imparts a cloudy appearance to the urine. The first flow of urine is often clear as the urine is voided from the supernatant in the bladder. The final flow may be yellow and a thick creamy consistency. The extent of calcium carbonate in urine depends largely on the diet. Diets that contain high levels of calcium such as alfalfa induce a much higher urine calcium carbonate.
- Normal horse urine may be mucoid in appearance due to the secretions of mucus cells in the renal pelvis. This may cause a positive protein result on a urine dipstick or on full biochemical assay for protein.
- GGT and urine creatinine should be measured together to take account of the variations in enzyme concentrations which occur with period of increased/decreased diuresis.
- Urinary GGT is a useful indicator of renal damage. The concentrations of the enzyme are very high but do not appear in blood as a result of renal tubular cell damage.

29

1.2.3.16

### (xiii) Faecal analysis

30

Equine faeces provide several important diagnostic clues in disease conditions. Rational anthelmintic programmes should employ specific targeted therapy to avoid the unnecessary use of drugs and minimise the potential for resistance development.

#### 1. Routine worm egg count:

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Qualitative and quantitative worm egg counts relying on egg flotation are performed routinely in parasitological laboratories. Quantitative tests employ a counting chamber technique (McMaster chamber) and a saturated salt solution. A strongyle egg count greater than 100 eggs per gram of faeces is usually accepted as being significant.
- Differentiation of worm eggs within the strongyle family is difficult and relies on special culture methods.
- The severity of infestation with cyathostomins is not proportional to the worm egg count. Arrested third stage larvae may cause much more problems than adult worms.
- An ELISA blood test has been developed<sup>1</sup> that gives a proportional response to the severity (number of parasites) in equine *Anoplocephala perfoliata* infestation.

1.2.3.16.1

### Note:

The response to anthelmintic treatment is often taken to indicate drug efficacy but worm egg output is variable in any case. Nevertheless failure to reduce the egg count following treatment may support the diagnosis of drug-resistant parasites.

### 2. Faecal occult blood test:

- Almost all horses will have slight intestinal blood loss. This can be detected simply by mixing a single faecal pellet (up to around 25 g of faeces) in a litre of water and testing the fluid with a urine dipstick to see if the blood square shows changes consistent with haemoglobin or red blood cells. This ortho-toluidine test is highly sensitive and any more than a slightly positive blood result indicates abnormal intestinal bleeding. Severe parasitism, gastric or other intestinal ulceration, clotting disorders and neoplasia may cause large increases in the faecal occult blood. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs will invariably induce significant intestinal blood loss. Severe bleeding in the upper intestinal tract is usually manifest also as patent melaena, i.e. dark, tarry blood-stained faeces. Bleeding in the small colon is usually more obviously red.

30

### 3. Bacterial culture:

31

- Bacterial culture is unreliable from single swabs inserted into the rectum or collection of stale faeces from the environment. It is better practice to submit a sample of freshly voided faeces (or freshly collected faeces from the rectum). Usually the bacterial culture is problematical and in cases where salmonella is suspected at least five separate samples should be taken at 12–24 hour intervals. The faeces may be placed directly into enrichment media. Where clostridia are suspected then anaerobic culture will be required and the specimen needs to be placed in a meat broth directly on collection.

### 4. Rotavirus test:

Several tests are available to detect Rotavirus in faeces from foals.

- Direct electron microscopy on a freshly collected sample.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for the antigen in faeces (*Rotazyme*, Abbott Laboratories, North Chicago, Illinois, USA).

- Latex agglutination Test (*Virogen Rotatest*, Wampole Labs, Cranbury, New Jersey, USA).

### 5. Tests for sand:

- Sand colic is a common problem that is sometimes difficult to diagnose clinically. A specimen of faeces is mixed with water and allowed to stand for up to 2 hours. Sand precipitates to the bottom and is easily felt or even seen in some cases. It may be necessary to encourage the passage of the sand with psyllium or laxatives if the sample is initially negative and the diagnosis is still suspected.

1 *Diagnosteq*, University of Liverpool, Leahurst, Neston, Wirral, CH64 7TE, UK.

31

## 1.3 REPRODUCTIVE DATA

32

The horse is a seasonal (polyestrous) breeder, with a spring and summer breeding season. The timing of the breeding season is different between the northern and southern hemispheres.

### 1.3.1 Mare

Table 1.24

Oestrous cycle length	21 days is normal average 17–24 day oestrous cycle range is normal 'fertile' cycle range 13–25 days (maximal range recorded)
Oestrus	2–7 days (average 4 days)
Ovulation	24–48 h <i>before</i> end of behavioural oestrus
Gestation length	Normal range = 332–342 Maximum range for viable foal is 320–400 days 320–360 days (normal = 335–340 days) Most horse stud farms use 335 days to derive a predicted foaling date

32

### 1.3.1.1 Plasma hormone concentrations

33

Interpret hormone concentrations from single blood/urine samples with caution! Many sources of variation exist. Exact values may differ with breed and age as well as with reproductive status. The normal range of hormone concentrations associated with reproductive states may differ between laboratories. The following tables of values are intended only as guides to sample collection times and choice of analysis requested.

Ensure correct choice of collection tubes/anticoagulants when deciding what parameters are needed. See above for ideal/acceptable collection tubes (p. " ").

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 1.25

Reproductive status		Oestrone Conjugated (total) (ng/mL)	Progesterone (nmol/L)	eCG* (PMSG)
Follicular phase	Early oestrus	<6.0	<3.0 (<1 ng/mL)	–ve
	Late oestrus	<6.0	<3.0 (<1 ng/mL)	–ve
Luteal phase		<6.0	>12 (>6 ng/mL)	–ve
<b>Pregnancy:</b>				
8–25 days		<6.0	>13–57	–ve
40–100 days		<4.0	>10.0	+ve <sup>#</sup>
100–150 days		<6.0	<1.0	–ve
200–300 days		>2	<1.0	–ve
300–term		<2–4	<1.0	–ve
* Equine chorionic gonadotrophin.				
# False-negatives may occur before 60 days and after 90 days.				

Pregnane secretion increases during the final approx 30 days pre-partum. As most P4 assays cannot distinguish these compounds from P4, laboratories may report increased concentrations at this time.

### 1.3.1.2 Granulosa cell tumour

Table 1.26

	Oestrone (pg/mL)	Progesterone (ng/mL)	Testosterone (nmol/L)	Inhibin (ng/mL)
Granulosa cell tumour	<1	<1	0.5 (>50 pg/mL)	>0.7

33

### 1.3.1.2.1 Note:

- Testosterone concentrations are significant but not diagnostic.
- Values over 100 pg/mL are often associated with stallion-like behaviour.

34

### 1.3.1.3 Urinary hormone concentrations

Table 1.27

Total urinary oestrogens (nmol/L)	
Luteal phase	<500
Follicular phase	600–3000
Pregnancy (over 100 days)	>3000

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 1.3.2 Prediction of foaling date from service date

#### 1.3.2.1 Note:

A calculated foaling date is not prescriptive in the horse simply because of the variations in gestation length. Nevertheless it does provide a focus date for the foaling. Mares often have normal foals up to 20 days either side of the expected date.

34

Table 1.28 Prediction of foaling date chart

35

SERVE	Jan	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31
FOAL		Dec 7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	Jan 2	4	6
SERVE	Feb	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	
FOAL		Jan 7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	Feb 1	3	5	
SERVE	Mar	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31
FOAL		Feb 4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	Mar 2	4	6
SERVE	Apr	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	
FOAL		Mar 7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	Apr 2	4	
SERVE	May	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31
FOAL		Apr 6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30	May 2	4	
SERVE	Jun	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	
FOAL		May 7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	Jun 2	4	
SERVE	Jul	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31
FOAL		Jun 6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30	Jul 2	4	6
SERVE	Aug	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31
FOAL		Jul 7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	Aug 2	4	6
SERVE	Sep	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	
FOAL		Aug 7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	Sep 2	4	
SERVE	Oct	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31
FOAL		Sep 6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30	Oct 2	4	6

35

#### 1.3.2.2 Signs of impending parturition

36

The majority of Thoroughbred foals' pregnancies are closely monitored and so an 'expected foaling date' can reasonably be predicted. Nevertheless there is a wide range of 'normal' gestation length and some mares will habitually foal either early or late. In paddock-bred mares the service date and therefore the foaling date may not be known and then there is a danger that foaling will take place 'unexpectedly'.

Regular observation of the mare may allow an owner to identify changes that indicate the proximity of foaling and so the attending veterinarian can be informed in reasonable time. Although most foalings are normal and occur without any interference it is helpful even then to know when a mare is about to foal, so that careful observation may be given.

The natural signs of impending parturition include:

1. Increased abdominal size (usually noticeable from around 8 months gestation).
2. Pelvic relaxation with a prominent tail base as the pelvic ligaments become slack. This sign usually occurs within 2–4 days of parturition.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

3. Udder development usually takes place in the last 2 days although the teats may become longer and some udder development may occur over the 2 weeks before foaling.
4. Teat 'waxing' (wax-candles) are usually indicative of impending foaling within 24 hours (this feature is unpredictable).
5. Milk/colostrum ejection/leakage. In a mare with a normal gestational length this usually means the onset of first-stage labour. This means that foaling should take place within 2–3 hours.

1.3.2.2.1

### Note:

- Premature lactation is a worrying sign indicative of placental inflammation or foetal stress; it must never be ignored in any pregnant mare that is not at full term.
- Excessive leakage may mean that colostrum deprivation will occur in the foal.

6. Milk calcium concentration of over 10 mmol/L indicates that parturition is pending (usually less than 24 hours).
7. Restlessness with repeated flank watching (very similar to milder spasmodic forms of colic!) and repeated lying down and rising. These signs usually indicate onset of stage 1 labour i.e. within a few hours of birth.
8. Behavioural changes (isolation, inappetence and sweating) usually indicate delivery is imminent (within 2–3 hours).

36

1.3.3

### Stallion

37

1.3.3.1

### Semen characteristics

Table 1.29

	Range	Average
Volume (mL)	50–200	50
Gel-free volume (mL)	20–80	45
pH	7.3–7.7	7.4
Sperm/mL ( $\times 10^9$ )	100–500	200
Sperm/ejaculate ( $\times 10^9$ )	2–20	10
Progressively motile sperm (%)	0–95	55
Normal morphology (%)	30–90	55
Values are intended as estimates only.		
Ejaculate parameters vary considerably between breeds, seasons and frequency of ejaculation.		

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

41

### 2 Part 2 DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Several part pages have been deliberately left blank to allow the reader to add any useful comments/tips which he/she observes during execution of the procedures themselves and any new helpful tips which are learned along the way! New tests and new interpretations are being developed and these should be learned by reference to current journals.

#### 2.1 TEST PERFORMANCES

##### 2.1.1 Bromosulphothalein clearance test (BSP clearance)

###### 2.1.1.1 Procedure

1. Starve the horse for 12 hours.
2. Insert a jugular catheter in one side (using full aseptic precautions).
3. Collect two initial clotted blood samples (10 mL) at 30-minute intervals from catheter (flush before and after and discard first 5 mL of blood).
4. Inject 1 g BSP intravenously (approximates to 2.2 mg/kg) in solution into **the other jugular vein** (off the needle).
5. Collect 10 mL clotted blood samples at 1-minute intervals for 5–10 minutes from the jugular catheter.
6. Determine BSP concentrations and plot clearance against time (check with laboratory for technical ability to perform this – never do the test and then try to find a suitable laboratory!).

###### 2.1.1.1.1 Comment

Do not inject and sample from same jugular vein! There is a risk that concentrated dye would be samples in one or more of the test samples.

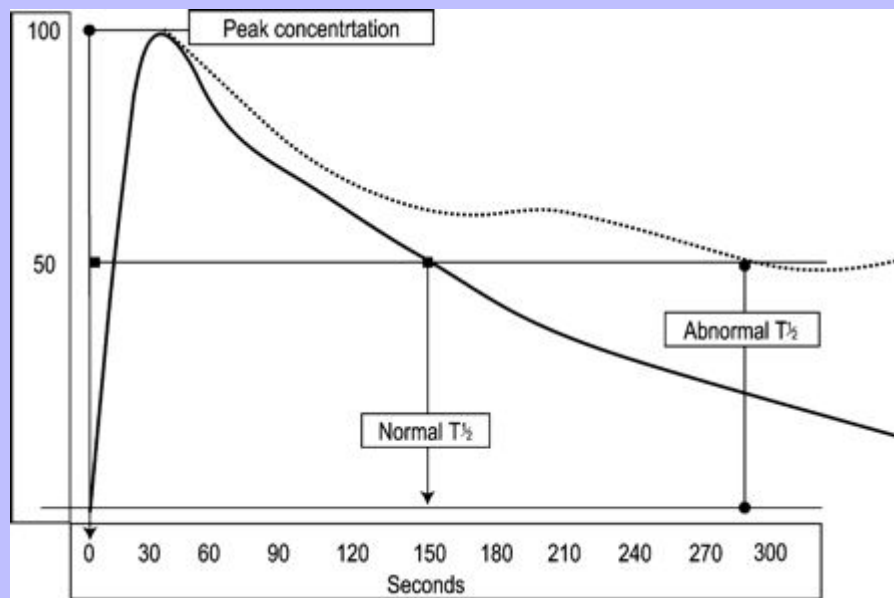
###### 2.1.1.2 Result

**Normal value for BSP clearance ( $T_{1/2}$ ) = 125–200 sec**

Alterations from normal show a delay in clearance of BSP from the blood beyond the normal. Delays may be mild to severe and reflect the loss of liver function. This test has largely been superseded by simple estimation of serum bile acids.

41

Fig. 2.1 An example of the BSP clearance test showing a normal decay and an abnormal result from a horse with advanced liver failure. In the normal horse the retention of BSP was undetectable by 15 minutes while in the abnormal case BSP could still be found after 12 hours.



2.1.1.2.1

#### Comment

**BSP retention** can be determined following administration of accurately calculated doses of BSP (5 mg/kg) from one sample taken 15 minutes after intravenous administration of the dye. Normal animals should have a negligible percentage of the initial concentration remaining at this time.

2.1.2

#### Glucose/xylose absorption test

2.1.2.1

#### Procedure

1. Starve the horse for 12 hours before and during test.
2. Insert (with aseptic precautions) IV cannula with tap/plug. Flush carefully with heparin saline before and after each sampling, taking care to discard the first 5 mL of blood.
3. Collect blood samples into fluoride oxalate anticoagulant at 30 minutes and 60 minutes prior to start (STAT samples) (best if unstressed) (in-dwelling IV cannula).
4. Administer 1 g glucose/kg bodyweight as 20% solution by stomach tube.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

5. Take blood samples (using fluoride oxalate) immediately after glucose administration and at 30-minute intervals for 3 hours.
6. Determine blood glucose concentration of each sample and plot concentration against time (–60 to +180 minutes) to produce a graph.
7. Calculate relative maximum concentration (base level is the mean of the first three samples, i.e. those taken before any glucose absorption) and the time of peak concentration.

2.1.2.1.1

### Comments

- Accuracy of time is important! Either sample accurately at 30-minute intervals or record the precise time of sampling relative to the start of the test for later plotting.
- Xylose absorption test is identical but uses 5 g xylose per kg body weight given as 5% solution by stomach tube. Xylose is difficult to estimate, but is not affected by endogenous glucose metabolism so is theoretically more accurate.
- Check with lab before sending samples (fluoride oxalate anticoagulant is essential).

2.1.2.2

### Result

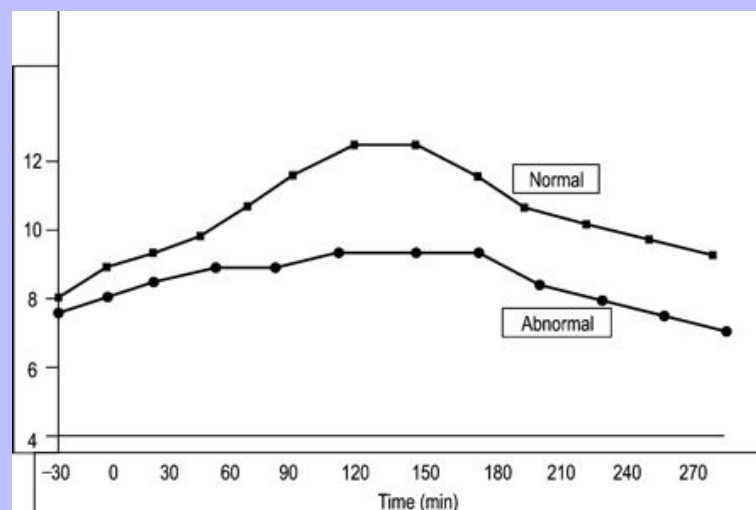
**Normal glucose/xylose absorption = peak at 90–120 min at 2× basal concentration**

Alterations from normal indicated by poor (low) peak value or prolonged time to peak (or both). Flat or delayed peak curves are suggestive of failure of small intestinal absorption of glucose.

43

44

**Fig. 2.2** Blood glucose values (mmol/L) for normal glucose absorption (◆—◆) and an abnormal absorption curve (●—●) obtained from a case of diffuse intestinal lymphosarcoma.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

2.1.2.2.1

### Comments

- Feeding and stress should be avoided during the test.
- Water must be available at all times during the test.
- There is merit in sampling at the time a catheter is placed (30 minutes before the test starts) because nasogastric intubation may be resented and cause a stress-related elevation in the initial (stat) sample taken at time zero. The resting value can be taken as the mean of the first two pre-treatment samples.
- Sampling every 30 minutes is the gold standard, but sampling every hour from the 120 minute point can reduce the number of samples taken without having a material effect on the test interpretation.

44

2.1.3

### Sodium sulphanilate clearance test

45

This test measures the normal renal clearance (tubular function) of sodium sulphanilate from the blood after intravenous injection. The test is seldom performed in practice having been largely replaced by other kidney function tests including clearance ratios. The gold-standard test for renal function is the inulin clearance test, because this compound has no significant protein binding in plasma. Also it is freely diffused across the renal glomerulus and has no material tubular resorption or secretion.

2.1.3.1

### Procedure

1. Place indwelling intravenous catheter (under full aseptic precautions).
  - Plug/tap and flush with heparin saline.
2. Discard first 5 mL of blood obtained through catheter.
  - Collect 10-mL blood sample (plain tube).
  - Flush catheter with heparin saline.
3. Empty the bladder by catheterisation.
4. Administer 10 mg/kg Na sulphanilate aqueous solution by slow intravenous injection.
  - Flush catheter with heparin saline.
5. Sample immediately (time 0) and at 30-minute intervals for 2 hours into plain (clotting) tubes.
6. Determine sodium sulphanilate concentration in serum samples.
7. Calculate  $T_{1/2}$ .

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

2.1.3.1.1

### Comments

- Check with laboratory before performing the test.
- This test is seldom performed and has largely been replaced by estimations of creatinine.

2.1.3.2

### Result

**Normal value for sodium sulphanilate clearance = 35–45 min**

Abnormal clearances are associated with some types of renal tubular disease and reflect a loss of cell function. The test has largely been superseded by other clearance tests (especially creatinine) (see below).

45

2.1.4

### Assessing the immunological status of foals

46

The foal is born immunologically naïve and has no effective immunity at birth. Survival, and more specifically resistance to neonatal septicaemic infection, relies heavily upon effective passive transfer of immune globulins via the colostrum. In the first instance the quality of the available colostrum must be excellent and then the foal must obtain an effective volume of this within 1–3 hours of birth. The same mechanisms that are responsible for colostral (IgG) absorption are also the main portals of entry of infection into the blood stream and so early colostral ingestion and prevention of ingestion of infective bacteria form the cornerstones of neonatal medicine.

- Testing foals' blood for circulating IgG at 20–24 hours has become routine in good-quality breeding farm management but testing at this stage allows very little (if any) time for corrective measures to be taken. By 12–18 hours the intestinal absorption of colostral antibody is virtually zero and so corrective measures taken after this stage must involve intravenous plasma.
- An effective test can be performed at 12 hours using a rapid testing method such as the zinc sulphate test, the latex agglutination test or the CITE tests.
- The value of a test performed at 12–24 hours can be immense. Whilst most septicaemic foals show signs of illness at 24–48 hours of age, the extent of infection can be critical at 12–24 hours.

2.1.5

### Zinc sulphate turbidity test

The zinc sulphate turbidity test is a simple test that can be very useful<sup>12</sup>. It measures the approximate concentration of IgG in serum or plasma to establish the immune status of foals.

2.1.5.1

### Procedure

1. Prepare 250 mg  $\text{ZnSO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in 1 L freshly boiled water (to remove  $\text{CO}_2$ ).
2. Place 6-mL aliquots of the zinc sulphate solution into sealed 7–10 mL vacuumed collection tubes (plain). It is useful to use a syringe attached to a fine needle, which is inserted through the bung into the vacuum (this leaves an air-free space over the solution and retains a slight vacuum in the tube). Tubes prepared in this way remain useful for several months without risk of carbon dioxide contamination and cloudiness.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

3. Add 0.1 mL serum or plasma (collect with a 1 mL insulin syringe from the sedimented blood).
4. Mix by repeated inversion of the tube.
5. Wait 10 min (qualitative) or 60 min (quantitative).
6. Measure against calibrated barium sulphate standards or 'printing test' (see below).

- 1 Le Blanc MM (1990) Chapter 16: Immunologic considerations. In: Equine Clinical Neonatology. AM Koterba, WH Drummond, PC Kosch, eds. Lea & Febiger, Philadelphia, pp. 275-294.
- 2 Le Blanc MM (1990) A modified zinc sulfate turbidity test for the detection of immune status in newly born foals. Journal of Equine Veterinary Science 10:36-40.

46

2.1.5.2

### Interpretation

47

Qualitative result: Obvious turbidity developed in 10 min = positive result, i.e. adequate immunoglobulin content.

2.1.6

### Beware of possible CO<sub>2</sub> absorption into solution giving cloudiness!

If you can JUST read the print through the zinc sulphate solution tube after adding the plasma the globulin level is approximately as shown opposite to each size of print below.

Zinc sulphate turbidity test = <3 g/L

Zinc sulphate turbidity test = 3-6 g/L

Zinc sulphate turbidity test = 6-8 g/L

Zinc sulphate turbidity test = 8-10 g/L

**Zinc sulphate turbidity test = >10 g/L**

2.1.6.1

### Comments

- Significant difference between serum and plasma especially in foals with elevated plasma fibrinogen (i.e. those which are sick, so misleading results might be obtained!).
- Subjective assessment by observing for obvious cloudiness/turbidity of solution after 10 minutes (equates to adequate passive transfer).
- Quick, accurate and cheap (commercial kits are available).
- Accuracy less in low levels (<4 g/L); tends to overestimate in this lower range.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Easy 'in field' method using pre-prepared tubes with vacuum (avoids atmospheric carbon dioxide contamination).
- Useful to test mare's serum at the same time (ideally turbidity should be same as, or greater than the mare's serum).
- The test gives false-positive results with haemolysed serum.
- Can be quantified using spectrophotometer but for this it requires a properly standardised calibration graph.

2.1.6.2

### Note:

- Haemolysis gives distorted (falsely elevated) results.
- Serum is used rather than plasma as distorted results may be obtained if the plasma fibrinogen is elevated. Serum is slower to obtain than plasma. Rapid testing could be delayed therefore.
- Alternative sodium sulfite turbidity test is easy and cheap but is probably too unpredictable for everyday use. Furthermore there is no need to use it if the other tests are available.

47

2.1.7

### Single radial immunodiffusion (SRID)

48

- Specific immunoglobulin assay performed in agar gel<sup>3</sup>.
- Kits are commercially available<sup>4, 5, 6, 7</sup>. Similar kits are available for IgM estimation.
- Home/practice prepared kits are less predictable and must be calibrated.
- The kit can also be used to quantify colostrum quality using whey fraction (minimal acceptable levels 100 g/L of unfractionated/unseparated colostrum).
- Plasma or serum can be used.
- Not applicable stableside as the test needs 24 hours; compromised foals may be dangerously low for 24 hours longer than they might otherwise.
- Accurate (wide range from 0–30 g/L), quantitative, but expensive.
- Useful accurate confirmation test.

3 Rumbaugh GE et al. (1978) Measurement of neonatal equine immunoglobulins for assessment of colostral immunoglobulin transfer: Comparison of single radioimmunodiffusion with zinc sulfate turbidity test, serum protein electrophoresis, refractory for total serum protein and sodium sulfite precipitation test. Journal of the American Veterinary Medical Association 172:321–325.

4 Aglutinate Equine Colostrum Test® (Ab-Ag Laboratories, 11 Victoria Street, Littleport, Cambs, CB6 1LU, UK).

5 ICN Immunobiologicals, PO Box 1200, Lisle, Illinois 60532, USA.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

6 VMRD Inc., PO Box 502, Pullman, WA 99163, USA.

7 Veterinary Immunogenic Ltd, USA and Penrith, UK.

### 2.1.8 Electrophoresis and biochemical protein estimation

- Total serum protein can be accurately determined by the Biuret reaction or using a refractometer but this is an unreliable indicator of globulin status because of the wide range of 'normal' concentrations of total protein in pre-suckle foals.
- Individual plasma proteins ( $\alpha_{1/2}$ ,  $\beta_{1/2}$ ,  $\gamma$  globulins and albumin) determined from electrophoresis and scanning by densitometer provide a very accurate estimation but the process is time consuming and needs specialist equipment.
- A combination of laboratory estimation and electrophoresis can be a useful confirmation of 'stable side' results obtained from other methods.

### 2.1.9 Latex agglutination

- Polystyrene particles (latex beads) used to visualize the reaction between antibody and specific protein<sup>8</sup>.
- Specific equine immunoglobulin (IgG) antiserum coated onto latex reagent and mixed with sample under test.

48

- Positive agglutination occurs within 15 minutes with quantitative capability.
- Some kits are only useful for plasma and others only serum. ENSURE THAT THE CORRECT SPECIMEN IS USED.

49

#### 2.1.9.1 Comments

- Very expensive commercial kits available<sup>9</sup>.
- Technically simple and rapid.
- High accuracy around or below 4 g/L, but above this it is poor (may miss marginal deficiencies around 6 g/L).
- Not affected by haemolysis and whole blood can be used in some kits.
- Can be performed stable side or in stud office.

9 Haver-Lockhart, Shawnee, Kansas, USA.

8 Kruse-Elliott K, Wagner DC (1984) Failure of passive antibody transfer in the foal. Compendium of Continuing Education for the Practising Veterinarian 6:702–706.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 2.1.10 Concentration immunoassay technology test (CITE test)

- This is a rapid (8–10 minutes to completion) and reliable test that can easily be performed with practice facilities<sup>10</sup>. It does require accurate pipetting (suitable pipettes are included in the commercial pack).
- The instructions on the commercial kits must be followed accurately.

#### 2.1.10.1 Note:

Accuracy is close to the definitive methods. Standards provide reliable quality and technical controls. The test is relatively expensive but its convenience makes this a minor consideration. The test is less affected by haemolysis than most others.

10 IDEXX Ltd, Portland ME; USA and UK.

### 2.1.11 Glutaraldehyde coagulation

- Chemical (analytical) grade 25% glutaraldehyde solution is used and this forms an insoluble precipitate when mixed with basic proteins<sup>11, 12</sup>. The test is rather crude, but it is very inexpensive and very reliable. Any haemolysis may result in overestimated IgG. The method should be quality checked against the SRID test (above).
- Prepare a 10% solution of glutaraldehyde in deionised (pure) water.
- Add 50 µL glutaraldehyde to 5 mL of serum and start clock.
- Measure time for clotting of serum to develop.

49

#### 2.1.11.1 Interpretation

50

- Clotting in less than 10 minutes = IgG >8.0 g/L.
- Clotting in 60 minutes = IgG concentration 4.0–8.0 g/L.

11 Clabough DL, Conboy S, Roberts MC (1989) Comparison of four screening techniques for the diagnosis of equine neonatal hypogammaglobulinaemia. *Journal of the American Veterinary Medical Association* 194:1717–1720.

12 Madigan JE (1997) Assessment of passive immunity. Chapter 9. *Manual of Equine Neonatal Medicine*, 3rd edn. Live Oak Publishing, Woodland, USA, pp. 36–40.

### 2.1.12 Immunoturbidometry

Immunoprecipitate measured by optical instruments. These are accurate and rapid but unnecessarily complicated for practical situations. Their main use lies in research and quality control/calibration of other methods.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

2.1.12.1

### Remember:

- There is no transplacental immune globulin transfer so the foal is immunologically naive at birth.
- Passive transfer is the most significant (only) source of immune globulin in the newborn foal.
- Fetus has some immunological competence from 6 months gestation but only starts to produce significant antibodies at birth. It takes >14 days to produce any effective active humoral protection and establishment of normal cellular responses may take longer than this.
- The mare concentrates IgGs into udder in last 3 weeks of gestation in preparation for colostrum production.

2.1.13

### Assessment of colostrum quality

- Colostrum should be checked at the earliest possible stage and in any case before the foal has nursed. A 5-mL aliquot is usually all that is required.
- The physical appearance of the secretion will often provide a good guide of quality. Thick, sticky yellow secretion is likely to be good quality.
- Gentle warming to 65°C or so will cause good-quality colostrum to clot strongly. This test can easily be performed in a teaspoon held over a lighter flame for a few seconds.
- Good-quality colostrum should have a specific gravity of >1.060 and contain at least 300 g/L of IgG.
- The specific gravity of the colostrum can be measured with a colostrometer<sup>13</sup>.
- Recent developments in these enable the use of small volumes (5–10 mL) of colostrum.

50

Colostrum quality can also be measured quantitatively using a variety of commercially available kits<sup>14</sup> including:

51

13 Massey RE, LeBlanc MM, Klapstein EF (1991) Colostrum feeding of foals and colostrum banking. Proceedings of the American Association of Equine Practitioners, 36.

14 GAMMA-CHECK-C ® (Veterinary Immunogenics Ltd, Carlton Hill, Penrith, Cumbria, UK).

2.1.14

### Colostrock:

- Samples clotting within 3 minutes of mixing with reagents in tube have >60 g/L IgG.
- Samples clotting 3–10 minutes after mixing have 40 g/L IgG.

These test kits are simple to perform and help to identify mares with poor-quality colostrum. Owners can easily perform them stable-side.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 2.1.15 Phytohaemagglutinin skin test for T-lymphocyte function

The test should be performed within 4 days of birth in animals suspected of having poor immunity. It can equally be performed in older horses but of course the value of the test and the implications to the owner are less easily accepted at a later stage.

#### 2.1.15.1 Method

1. Aseptic preparation of a clipped area of skin on the side of the neck.
2. Measurement of skin thickness using accurate (tuberculin testing or fat thickness calipers).
3. Inject **50 µmg** PHA in 0.05 mL phosphate buffered saline intradermally using 1 mL tuberculin syringe and a 25 G × 1 cm needle. Using the same technique inject the same volume of phosphate buffered saline at an adjacent site (this acts as a negative control).
4. Measure skin thickness at the two sites after 24 hours (some swelling is usually present in normal foals after 4 hours).

#### 2.1.15.2 Interpretation

- Positive results produce obvious lumps (usually + 2–10 mm skin thickness at the site).
- ≤0.6 mm is negative and suggests failure of T-lymphocyte responses. Negative results usually have no lump at all.

#### 2.1.15.2.1 Note:

- This test can be performed *in vitro* on samples of blood collected into lithium heparin anticoagulant.
- The laboratory must be contacted before sending the samples to ensure that they have the test functional.
- Of course, an *in vitro* test is not subject to the variations of an *in vivo* system and both methods have advantages and disadvantages.

51

### 2.1.16 Cryptorchidism test

52

#### 2.1.16.1 Procedure

1. In horses <2 years old and donkeys of any age.
2. Obtain a clotted blood sample (plain tube).
3. Administer 6000 IU human chorionic gonadotrophin intravenously.
4. Obtain a second clotted blood sample 30–120 min later.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

5. Samples are submitted for testosterone analysis.

2.1.16.1.1

### Note:

In horses  $\geq 3$  years old, a single sample of clotted blood submitted for oestrone sulphate analysis is sufficiently accurate.

Table 2.1 Expected values for cryptorchidism test

	Testosterone (nmol/L)		Oestrone sulphate (ng/L)
	Before hCG*	After hCG*	
Entire male	–	–	10–50
Cryptorchid	0.3–4.3	<b>1.0–12.9</b>	0.1–10
Gelding	0.15–0.3	<b>0.05–0.19</b>	<0.02

\* Human chorionic gonadotrophin/luteinising hormone.

2.1.17

### Water deprivation test

- Water deprivation tests are used to identify renal failure and to differentiate psychogenic polydipsia from neurological (central) and nephrogenic (renal) diabetes insipidus.
- These tests **MUST NOT** be performed in horses that are azotaemic or which show evidence of any dehydration.
- It is essential that an accurate bodyweight is taken and tested during the procedure.

2.1.17.1

### Procedure

1. Take a routine blood sample and submit for routine haematology, total protein and albumin and urea and creatinine.
2. Weigh the horse accurately.
3. Remove water from the stable in the evening (so that the tests can be performed on the following morning). Sometimes feed is removed but this is not likely to affect the test materially. Concentrate and salty foods must not be given, however.

52

4. Empty the bladder by catheterisation and determine urine specific gravity.
5. Weigh the horse and obtain urine and blood samples at 4–8-hour intervals.

53

2.1.17.1.1

### Note:

The test should be stopped if the horse shows an ability to concentrate urine (SG rising above 1.025) or if weight loss reaches 5% or if any overt evidence of azotaemia or dehydration develops.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 2.1.17.2 Interpretation

- Normal horses show rapid urine concentration with SG rising above 1.025.
- Horses with psychogenic polydipsia also show normal concentration ability.
- A low or suboptimal SG suggests diabetes insipidus or renal medullary washout (see below).
- If urine does not concentrate at 24 hours to SG >1.025 an extended modified (partial water deprivation test is advisable) (see below).

### 2.1.17.2.1 Comments

- Renal medullary washout is due to excessive drinking in the absence of pathology and is due to the loss of osmotic gradient within the renal tubules. In this case it is possibly better to perform a partial water deprivation test. Water intake is restricted to 40–45 mL/kg/day for several days, fed in small volumes frequently through the day. This will usually restore the gradient and the urine SG will rise to >1.025 and the associated polydipsia will usually resolve.
- Increase in SG >1.025 suggests psychogenic polydipsia while failure to concentrate >1.025 suggests diabetes insipidus.
- An ADH response test is then indicated (see below).

### 2.1.18 Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) challenge test

This test is used to distinguish neurogenic diabetes insipidus from nephrogenic diabetes insipidus.

### 2.1.18.1 Procedure

1. The bladder is emptied by catheterisation.
2. Bodyweight is recorded.
3. Blood and urine samples are obtained prior to the start of the test.
4. EITHER: 0.2 IU of exogenous ADH (vasopressin: pitressin synthetic) is administered IM; OR: 60 IU ADH is administered IM every 6 hours over a 24-hour period.
5. Urine and blood samples are taken every 4–6 hours and bodyweight checked.

53

### 2.1.18.2 Interpretation

- In normal horses and those with central diabetes insipidus, urine SG should increase to over 1.025 within 4–12 hours of the start of the test.
- Horses affected with nephrogenic diabetes insipidus show no or little response to the ADH indicating that the renal tubular resorption of water is incapable of responding to the hormone.

54

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 2.1.19 Renal clearance ratios

#### 2.1.19.1 1. Creatinine clearance ratio

This is proportional to GFR if renal function is normal.

##### 2.1.19.1.1 Procedure

1. Collect total 24-hour urine output.
2. Determine creatinine concentration and volume of urine.

Creatinine clearance ratio, glomerular filtration rate (assuming normal kidney function). GFR is traditionally measured by inulin clearance (a starch-like polymer of fructose which passes readily through the renal glomerular membrane and which is neither secreted nor absorbed by the renal tubules) or by 24-hour endogenous creatinine clearance.

$$\text{Creatinine clearance ratio} = \frac{[\text{Creatinine}]_{\text{SERUM}}}{[\text{Creatinine}]_{\text{URINE}}} \%$$

(NORMAL = 1.0–2.0 mL/kg/min)

#### 2.1.19.2 2. Electrolyte clearance ratio

##### 2.1.19.2.1 Procedure

1. Obtain simultaneous venous blood (clotted) and urine (preferably by catheterisation).
2. Submit for creatinine and electrolyte clearances.
3. Remember that urinary creatinine may be expressed in mmol/L rather than  $\mu\text{mol/L}$ , as it will be for serum! (If you forget this, the results will look wildly out!)
4. The same principle can be applied to any metabolite including cortisol for pituitary-adrenal disorders such as equine Cushing's disease.

$$\text{Clearance [X] (\%)} = \frac{[\text{Creatinine}]_{\text{SERUM}}}{[\text{Creatinine}]_{\text{URINE}}} \times \frac{[\text{X}]_{\text{URINE}}}{[\text{X}]_{\text{SERUM}}} \times 100\%$$

54

Table 2.2 Normal clearance ratios

55

Na <sup>+</sup>	0.1–1.0%
K <sup>+</sup>	15–65.0%
Ca <sup>2+</sup>	1.5–3.5%
PO <sub>4</sub> <sup>3-</sup>	0.0–0.5%
Cl <sup>-</sup>	0.05–1.5%

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

2.1.19.2.1.1

### Comments

- Simultaneously obtained urine and plasma samples can be used to obviate the need to collect 24-hour urine output. However, the accuracy of the analysis is dependent on normal renal function.
- If renal function is not normal the test is invalid (renal creatinine clearance ratio not normal).
- Values may show diurnal variation – results should be used as a guide rather than an absolute indicator.
- Diet has been shown to be a major influence on the results and so interpretation can be very difficult.

2.1.19.3

### 3. Excretion factors

$$\frac{\text{Urine concentration (mmol)}}{\text{Urine specific gravity} - 0.997} \times 0.04$$

Calcium excretion = 15  $\mu\text{mol/mosmol}$  (micromoles per milliosmole)  
Phosphate excretion = 15  $\mu\text{mol/mosmol}$

55

2.1.20

### Diagnostic tests for pituitary adenoma/Cushing's disease in horses/pars intermedia dysfunction (PID)

56

2.1.20.1

### Note:

Diagnosis can also be made from:

1. INSULIN estimation ( $>100 \mu\text{mol/mL}$ ) and no response to IV glucose challenge.
2. URINARY CORTISOL/INSULIN clearance ratios (compared to creatinine).
  - A diagnosis of pituitary adenoma should only be made when the clinical features are suggestive and clinical pathology is confirmatory/supportive.
  - A genuine hypothalamic induced pituitary adenoma is extremely unlikely in horses under 12–15 years of age.

2.1.21

### ACTH stimulation test

2.1.21.1

### Procedure

1. A plain (clotted) blood sample is obtained 30 minutes before and immediately before intravenous administration of 100 IU synthetic adrenocorticotrophic hormone (Synacthen, Ciba, UK).
2. A plain (clotted) blood sample is obtained 2 hours after the injection.
3. Samples are submitted for cortisol assay.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 2.1.21.2 Interpretation

- Normal horses show a 60–80% elevation in serum cortisol at 2 hours after injection.
- Most but not all cases of pituitary-dependent hyperadrenocorticism show much higher increases.
- Interpretation is not always easy when the resting cortisol concentrations are very high.

#### 2.1.21.2.1 Note:

There is a theoretical risk of inducing laminitis with this test and so cases must be carefully selected to exclude those horses that might be prone to or have or have had laminitis.

### 2.1.22 Dexamethasone suppression test

The ability of a small dose of exogenous dexamethasone to suppress the secretion of ACTH from the pituitary gland is tested by this method.

#### 2.1.22.1 Procedure

1. Plain (clotted) blood samples are obtained 30 minutes and immediately before intramuscular administration of 40 µg/kg dexamethasone intramuscularly.
2. Second and third clotted blood samples are obtained 4 hours and 24 hours later.
3. Samples are submitted for cortisol assay.

#### 2.1.22.2 Interpretation

- Normal horses show a fall to 30% of the resting value of serum cortisol concentration. And the depression is maintained for at least 24 hours.
- In cases of pituitary-dependent hyperadrenocorticism the depression is much less (often negligible).

56

#### 2.1.22.2.1 Note:

The test is a more reliable indicator of pituitary hyperadrenocorticism than the ACTH stimulation test.

There is a theoretical risk of inducing laminitis by the administration of the dexamethasone (even though the dose is very small – usually around 20 mg). The test should not be used in horses that have had laminitis or which are clinically affected at the time, or are otherwise prone to develop laminitis.

57

### 2.1.23 Combined ACTH stimulation test response and dexamethasone suppression test

Adrenocortical hypertrophy (for any reason, either primary or secondary) can be inferred from an exaggerated response to administration of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 2.1.23.1 Procedure

Table 2.3 2-day method

Time	Procedure
0 h	Collect 10 mL clotted blood [CORTISOL] Inject 40 µg/kg dexamethasone (IM)
4 h	10 mL clotted blood [CORTISOL]
24 h	10 mL clotted blood [CORTISOL] Inject 1 mg ACTH IV OR Inject (1 IU/kg) ACTH gel IM
36 h	10 mL clotted blood [CORTISOL]

### 2.1.23.2 Interpretation for normal: 2-day test

- Cortisol falls to 30% of baseline in 4 hours and remains at 30% for 24 hours.
- Then 2–3× elevation by 8–12 h after injection of ACTH.

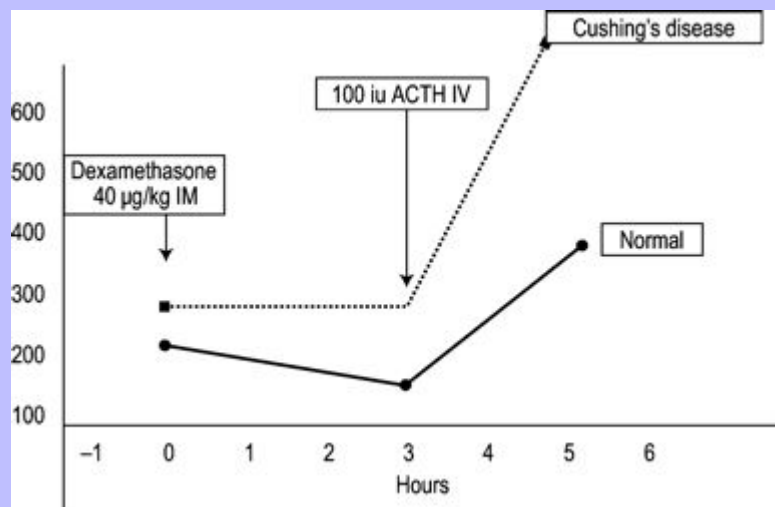
Table 2.4 1-day method

Time	Procedure
0 h	10 mL clotted blood [CORTISOL] Inject 10 mg dexamethasone IM
3 h	Clotted blood [CORTISOL]
5 h	Clotted blood [CORTISOL]

57

58

Fig. 2.3 Combined ACTH stimulation test response and dexamethasone suppression test.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 2.1.23.3 Interpretation for normal: 1-day test

- Cortisol depressed to 35% baseline by 3 hours.
- Cortisol rises to 2.5× baseline at 5 hours.

### 2.1.23.3.1 Comments

- Theoretical risks of laminitis are increased by combination of two compounds that may each have some role in causing laminitis.
- The test should probably not be performed if the patient has or has had laminitis or is liable to it by virtue of breed or management.
- The test requires a minimum period of 5 hours, but is usually conducted over 2 days to minimise the risks of laminitis.

### 2.1.24 Thyrotropin releasing hormone (TRH) response

This test is performed to investigate possible cases of pituitary adenoma (equine Cushing's disease). The test relies upon there being an aberrant response of the pituitary adenoma to TRH and the release of ACTH in response to this. The mechanism for the test is not well understood.

### 2.1.24.1 Procedure

1. Obtain a heparinised blood sample (10 mL).
2. Inject 1 mg thyrotropin releasing hormone (TRH) intravenously.
3. Obtain lithium heparin samples at time 0, 15, 30, 60 minutes.
4. Submit specimens for cortisol assay.

58

### 2.1.24.2 Interpretation

59

- Normal horses show minimal or absent responses.
- Horses affected with pituitary-dependent hyperadrenocorticism show an abnormal elevation of cortisol (often 50–100% increase). Some authorities accept elevations of 25% or more as being positive.

### 2.1.24.2.1 Comments

- There is a very small risk of laminitis induction. Cases should be selected accordingly to avoid this risk as far as practicable.
- There will usually be a simultaneous rise in plasma thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) and in thyroid hormones ( $T_3$  and  $T_4$ ).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Normal maximal cortisol level at 30 minutes. Positive result baseline cortisol elevated above 150 nmol/L with 40% elevation after TRH stimulation OR baseline level normal with >70% rise after stimulation.

59

**Table 2.5 The relative ease and specificity of the various tests that are used for the diagnosis of pituitary-dependent hyperadrenocorticism**

60

Test	Ease factor	Specificity	Notes
ACTH stimulation	FAIR Total time 2 hours Single visit	MODERATE	Laminitis risk probably overstated  Availability of ACTH
Dexamethasone suppression	GOOD	GOOD	Laminitis risk probably overstated Delay to second sample Delay to third sample
Combined ACTH/DEX suppression	POOR	GOOD	Laminitis risk probably overstated  Repeat samples required over 2 days or repeated samples over 3–6 hours
TRH stimulation	GOOD	GOOD	TRH hard to get Difficulty with natural hormones from bovine brain
Resting cortisol concentration	EXCELLENT (single sample)	POOR (diurnal and other variations)	SAFE SINGLE TEST
Insulin	GOOD (urine and blood required)	POOR	Very safe/easy Best performed as an excretion test with cortisol in urine and blood Need to obtain urine sample at same time

60

### 2.1.25 Dynamic thyroid tests

61

Thyroid deficiency is very rare in horses and the test is seldom performed. Check with laboratory before start to ensure correct samples and timing.

Note that concurrent phenylbutazone may result in a significant reduction in estimated concentrations of T<sub>3</sub> and T<sub>4</sub>.

#### 2.1.25.1 1. Thyroid stimulation test

- (i) Blood samples (plain or heparinised) are obtained 1 and 2 hours before the test begins and again at the start of the test. This provides an effective baseline.
- (ii) 5 IU thyrotropin (TSH) (SIGMA Chemicals Ltd) administered IV or IM.
- (iii) Plain (or heparinised) blood samples obtained at 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8 and 12 hours post-injection.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 2.1.25.1.1 Interpretation

(a) NORMAL:

- Peak increase of  $T_4$  of  $2\times$  base-line concentration at 4 hours post-injection.
- $T_3$  will peak between 1–3 hours at 2–4 times baseline concentration and then drops to less than  $2\times$  baseline by 6 hours.
- In foals the  $T_3$  rise may be faster with doubling at 1–2 hours.

(b) In hypothyroidism the baseline level of  $T_3$  is hardly affected by the TSH and the  $T_4$  responds more slowly than in normal horses.

### 2.1.25.2 2. TRH stimulation test

(i) Initial blood samples at – 1 hour and time 0 provide the baseline.

(ii) Administer 0.5 mg (ponies) or 1 mg (horses) TRH IV.

(iii) Blood samples collected at 2 and 4 hours post-injection.

### 2.1.25.2.1 Interpretation

NORMAL:

- Twofold increase in  $T_4$  by 4 hours and  $T_3$  increases 3-fold by 2 hours.

#### 2.1.25.2.1.1 Note:

- Most commercially available TSH, which is of reasonable price, is of BOVINE ORIGIN. THIS SHOULD NOT BE USED *IN VIVO* IN HORSES due to risk of transmitted CNS disorders and MUST NOT UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES BE USED for horses intended for human consumption.
- Where practicable pharmaceutical grade (HUMAN origin or recombinant) TSH or thyrotropin releasing hormone may be used. THESE ARE VERY EXPENSIVE.

61

### 2.1.26 Schirmer tear test

62

Tear production in the horse is high compared to other species but the large majority of the aqueous component of the pre-corneal tear film is lost by evaporation from the surface of the eye. The Schirmer test provides information about the volume of tears that are being produced. The options are excessive tearing (as in painful or injured or infected eyes) or reduced (as in *keratoconjunctivitis sicca*).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 2.1.26.1 Procedure

1. Either a standard Schirmer tear test strip or a 65 cm length ( $\times 4-6$  mm wide) piece of Whatman Number 1 Filter Paper can be used. In the latter case a bend or a small notch is placed about 5 mm from one end.
  - The Schirmer test strip has a notch that should be placed level with the eyelid margin.
  - The fold on the homemade paper serves the same purpose and measurement is made from these points.
2. The paper is introduced into the lower conjunctival sac so that the mark/fold or notch is at the eyelid margin, behind the lower lid and the eye allowed to close.
3. The paper is left in situ for 1 minute exactly and the distance the wetness has advanced down the paper is measured accurately.
4. The result is expressed as mm/minute.

### 2.1.26.2 Interpretation

- Normal tear production results in a distance of 12–28 mm/minute.
- Less than 10 mm/min is consistent with inadequate tear production while values over 35 mm indicate excessive tear production.
- Horses with obstructed tear ducts (in the absence of any conjunctival infection or inflammation) will usually have normal tear production.

The patency of the nasolacrimal duct is tested by instilling a dye (usually fluorescein) into the conjunctival sac and examining the floor of the ipsilateral nostril for the dye some 10–15 minutes later.

(Note that this is much later than in many other species.)

### 2.1.26.2.1 Comment

Topical local anaesthetic is not used and medications should be withdrawn for some hours prior to the test.

62

### 2.1.27 Phenylephrine equine dysautonomia (grass sickness) test

63

The clinical diagnosis of equine dysautonomia (grass sickness) can be very difficult. However, the phenylephrine eye (ptosis reversal) test can be an effective diagnostic aid. The test is particularly useful in the field situation where sophisticated facilities may not be available.

### 2.1.27.1 Procedure

1. Prepare a 0.5% solution of epinephrine (adrenaline) by diluting 1 mL of a 10% solution with 19 mL sterile saline.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

2. Assess the degree of ptosis (drooping of the upper eyelids) in both eyes by carefully viewing from the front.
3. Add 0.5 mL of the 0.5% solution to the conjunctival sac of one eye only.
4. Reassess the eyelash angle (degree of ptosis) in both eyes after 30 minutes.

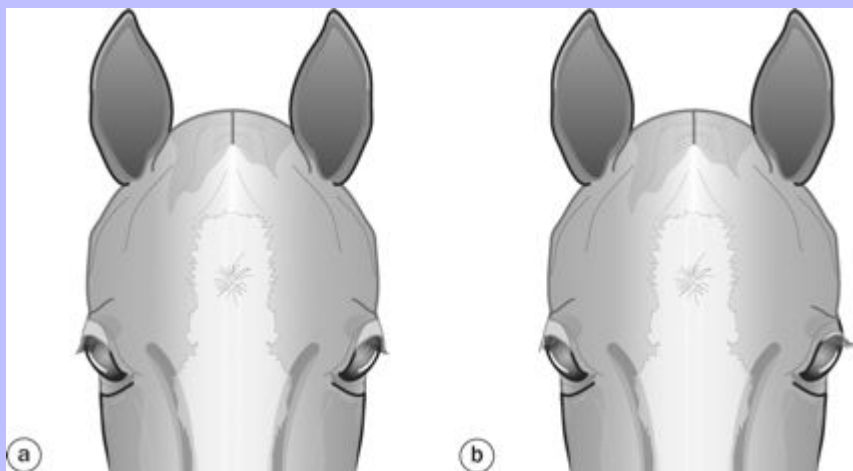
### 2.1.27.2 Interpretation

Positive result (i.e. the horse has equine dysautonomia (grass sickness) if the angle of the treated eye is normalised, i.e. the eyelashes are lifted and the palpebral fissure is widened (the degree of ptosis is reduced) when compared to the untreated eye (see [Fig. 2.4](#)).

### 2.1.27.2.1 Comment

The test must not be performed on a horse that has received acepromazine or an alpha-2 adrenoreceptor agonists drug in the previous 6–8 hours.

Fig. 2.4a and b Prior to application of the phenylephrine the eyelids of most grass sickness cases are uniformly drooped (ptosis) (a). Following application of phenylephrine to one eye the treated eyelid returns to a more normal position. The difference between the eyelid positions is usually very noticeable (b).



### 2.1.28 Alpha-2 adrenoreceptor agonist test for Horner's syndrome

Horner's syndrome is a rare condition in horses associated with impaired autonomic function in the region of the head and neck. The signs are less obvious in the horse than some other animals and usually there is sweating, ptosis, mydriasis and corneal dryness associated with the affected side. Intravenous injection of an alpha

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

2-adrenoreceptor agonist such as romifidine to an affected horse will cause the sweating signs to transfer from the affected side to the normal side.

### 2.1.28.1 Procedure

1. Identify the difference in temperature between the two sides of the horse's face by careful palpation or with the help of a thermal camera.
2. Inject a sedative dose (75 µg/kg) of romifidine (Sedivet, Boehringer Ingelheim, UK) intravenously.
3. Wait 12–15 minutes.
4. Reassess temperature of the two sides in the same way.

### 2.1.28.2 Interpretation

Positive result (i.e. Horner's syndrome is present) if the warmth and sweating of the affected side is reduced and there is increased sweating and warmth on the unaffected side.

64

### 2.1.29 Blondheim test for myoglobin in urine

65

Differentiation of myoglobin from haemoglobin or other abnormal pigments in urine can be difficult in practice. Differentiation is critical to diagnosis of conditions that have pigmenturia as a prominent clinical sign.

### 2.1.29.1 Method

#### STAGE 1: Differentiation between protein and non-protein pigments:

- Three millilitres of 3% sulfosalicylic acid is added to 1 mL of freshly voided or preserved urine (see below).
- The resultant solution is mixed and then centrifuged to separate any precipitate.

### 2.1.29.2 Interpretation

If the pigment is precipitated and the supernatant is clear or the colour of normal urine, the pigment is due to either haemoglobin or myoglobin (i.e. it is protein in nature).

#### STAGE 2: Differentiation between haemoglobin and myoglobin:

- Add 2.8 g of ammonium sulphate to 5 mL of fresh or preserved urine.
- This creates an 80% saturated solution; mix well.
- Centrifuge to separate any precipitate.

### 2.1.29.3 Interpretation

If filtrate still displays the abnormal colour myoglobin is present. If only the normal colour of urine is visible then the pigment was haemoglobin.

#### 2.1.29.3.1 Note:

- Urine preservation is important and this can be achieved by ensuring the urine is at pH 7.0–7.5 (this is a normal pH for horse urine but it may be acidic when myoglobin is present). The urine is then stored in a sealed container at 4°C until analysis can be undertaken. This method permits the Blondheim test to be performed up to 2–3 months after collection and the test is valid even if there is bacterial contamination.
- Other tests can be used also, including spectrophotometric methods.

### <sup>3</sup> Part 3 INDEX OF DRUGS USED IN EQUINE MEDICINE

#### 3.1 THE USE OF VETERINARY MEDICINAL PRODUCTS

(Reproduced from the RCVS Guide to Professional Conduct, 2004.)

1. This guidance is based on current EU and UK law and published guidelines and codes of practice (see below).
2. The responsible use of veterinary medicines for therapeutic and prophylactic purposes is one of the major skills of a veterinary surgeon and crucial to animal welfare and to the maintenance of public health.
3. Under the Medicines Act 1968 the retail sale and supply of medicinal products is restricted to pharmacists with an exemption (at section 58) for veterinary surgeons that are permitted to supply POM V, P and PML medicines only for administration to animals under their care.
4. Failure by the profession to observe these requirements could result in the removal of the exemption for the supply of medicines by veterinary surgeons.

##### 3.1.1 'Under his care'

Although the Medicines Act does not define the phrase, the RCVS has interpreted it as meaning that:

- (a) The veterinary surgeon must have been given the responsibility for the health of the animal or herd by the owner or the owner's agent.
- (b) That responsibility must be real and not nominal.
- (c) The animal or herd must have been seen immediately before prescription and supply or,
- (d) Recently enough or often enough for the veterinary surgeon to have personal knowledge of the condition of the animal or current health status of the herd or flock, to make a diagnosis and prescribe.
- (e) The veterinary surgeon must maintain clinical records of that herd/flock/individual.
  - What amounts to 'recent enough' must be a matter for the professional judgement of the veterinary surgeon in the individual case.
  - Medicinal products must only be supplied under the authority of the veterinary surgeon that has the animal concerned 'under his care'.

Persons who are not Registered Members (or Fellows) of the Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons may not prescribe or administer medicinal products to animals in the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland. Veterinary surgeons from other countries who are not Members of RCVS are deemed to be laypersons and may not prescribe or treat horses in the UK.

69

70

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 3.2 GUIDELINES FOR THE USE OF MEDICINES IN EQUINE ANIMALS

(Issued by the British Equine Veterinary Association, November 1995.)

In response to concerns from practising veterinary surgeons and owners of horses, ponies and donkeys, the British Equine Veterinary Association (BEVA), following consultations with the Ministry of Agriculture (MAFF), the Veterinary Medicines Directorate (VMD), the Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons (RCVS), the British Veterinary Association (BVA), the Society of Practising Veterinary Surgeons (SPVS), the National Office of Animal Health (NOAH), the Jockey Club, the British Horseracing Board (BHB), the Thoroughbred Breeders Association (TBA), the British Horse Society (BHS), the International League for the Protection of Horses (ILPH), the Animal Health Trust (AHT) and the Veterinary Defence Society (VDS), have formulated the following advice for the use of medicines in equine animals:

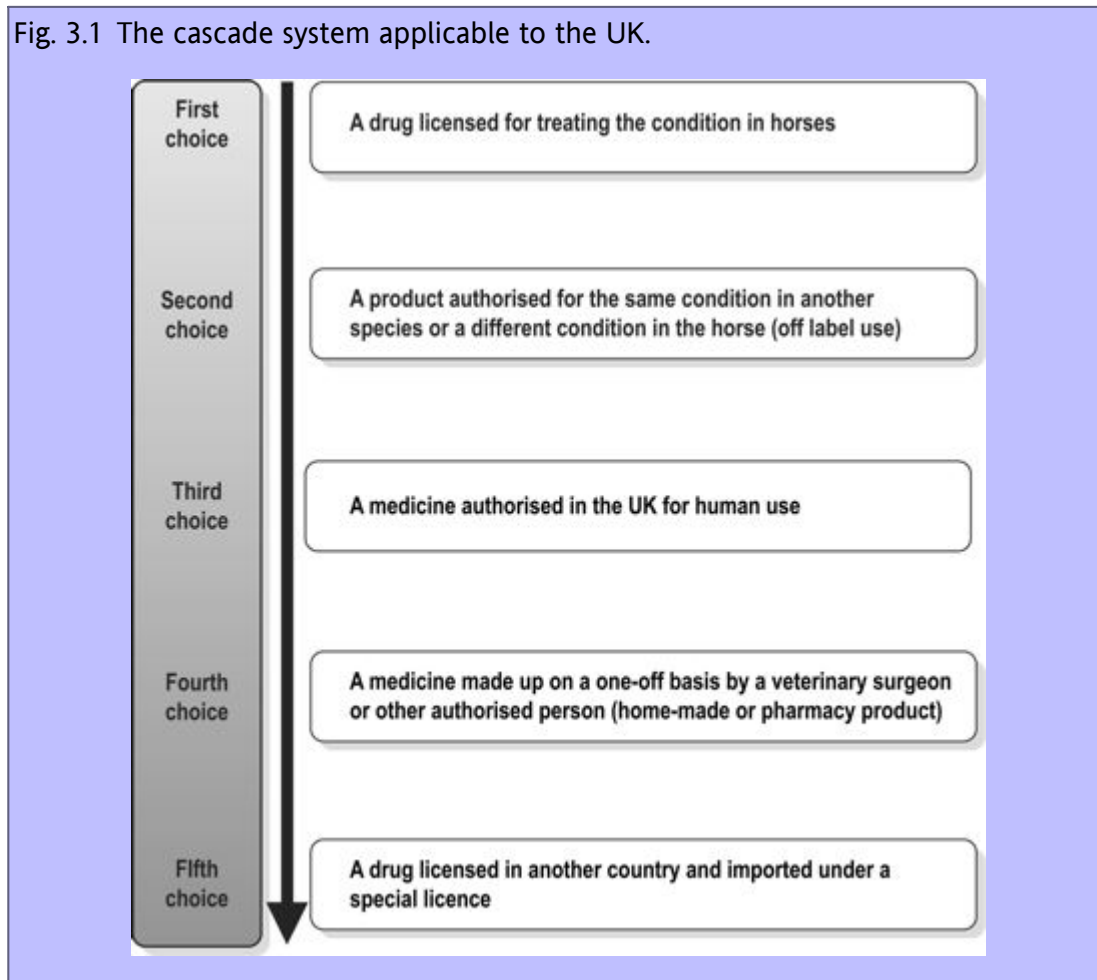
1. From 1st January 1997, veterinary medicines used in food-producing animals will be required by European Union (EU) legislation to have Maximum Residue Limits (MRLs) established to ensure that consumers are not exposed to harmful residues in food. Under EU legislation the horse is normally regarded as a food-producing animal. It remains the duty of veterinarians to ensure the welfare of animals committed to their care, according to the RCVS Guide to Professional Conduct. The EU have emphasised that it is not the intention of Regulatory Authorities to deny veterinarians the possibility of treating animals.
2. Many medicines authorised in the UK for the treatment of equine animals do not have MRLs and withdrawal periods specified for Equidae, but have a contraindication stating, '... do not use in horses intended for human consumption'. Veterinarians may use such medicines to treat horses, ponies and donkeys that, to the best of their knowledge and belief are not intended for slaughter for human consumption at the time of treatment.
3. For equine animals that are intended for slaughter for human consumption, authorised medicines with equine withdrawal periods should be used. If there are no medicines with equine withdrawal periods, medicines containing substances authorised in another food animal species may be used (even if the label contraindicates their use in horses intended for human consumption) with at least the standard withdrawal period of 28 days.
4. Veterinarians should keep adequate case records, including details of medicines used for the treatment of animals and the circumstances of their use.'

From June 2004, all horses in the UK require a definitive identification document (equine passport) and it is advisable that every horse should be categorically identified by microchip so that the documents cannot be 'manipulated'. The documents contain a declaration regarding the use of the horse concerned for meat. Where this is declared then all medications must be recorded regardless of the age and reason. Certain medications cannot be used at all in these animals. Where a declaration is shown that the horse is NOT to be used for human consumption drugs and treatments do not NEED to be recorded.

70



Fig. 3.1 The cascade system applicable to the UK.



More extensive advice on these subjects can be obtained from:

1. The Medicines (Restrictions on the Administration of Veterinary Medicinal Products) Regulations 1994 (S1 1994/2987).
2. Guidance to the Veterinary Profession. Amelia 8 March 1995.
3. VMD Guidance Note. VMD, Woodham Lane, New Haw, Addlestone, Surrey KT15 3NB.
4. DEFRA, local offices in UK.
5. The Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons Guide to Professional Conduct (2000 edn), RCVS, Belgravia House, 62-64 Horseferry Road, London SW1P 2AF.

There is considerable pressure to remove the right to dispense from veterinary surgeons and if we are to retain this right then we have a duty to ensure that our standards are at least as high as any pharmacy (and preferably higher). Prescription writing is frequently cited as being an area in which we perform poorly as a profession.

Medicines should only be prescribed when they are necessary and in all cases the benefit of the medication should be weighed against the risk/harm that might be involved. The owner of the horse should be carefully advised in all cases before a drug is administered or prescribed. In this way problems can be minimised and 'best practice' in the use of drugs applied. Factors that contribute to difficulties with medications prescribed for horses include:

1. Prescriptions not collected or not used in spite of dispensation.
2. Purpose of medication is not clear to the owner and instructions for administration are not absolutely clear.
3. Unrealistic expectation that the owner can/will administer the drug in the correct way.
4. Perceived lack of efficacy for any reason at all including an error of drug selection or unexpected problems (e.g. a horse with diarrhoea may not absorb orally administered drugs as well as one without).
5. Real or perceived side effects detected/reported by the owner but not addressed by the dispensing veterinary surgeon.
6. Unattractive formulations (e.g. suspensions that are hard to mix or particularly smelly drugs or thick injectable materials that cannot easily pass through a needle that the horse will tolerate) that make administration difficult.
7. Complex instructions and advice that are imparted verbally or written instructions that are incomprehensible by the layperson (e.g. use of complex words and expressions).

When handling or dispensing drugs due attention must be paid to possible Health and Safety aspects. For example some drugs (e.g. chloramphenicol can cause aplastic anaemia) may cause serious problems in humans and so appropriate care must be taken to explain the use and care of the drug. Suitable protective gloves may be required at the time. Drugs **MUST** be kept out of reach of children at all times and ideally should be kept in a totally safe place away from human food or drink.

Advice should be given on the safe disposal of unused drugs; ideally all unused drugs should be returned to the dispenser for disposal.

Good prescription principles include:

1. Write legibly with indelible ink and sign with your normal signature and your qualifications, including the bracketed 'Veterinary Surgeon' – even if on practice paper. Add printed details of your name (even if using practice paper).
2. Use approved names for drugs **IN CAPITAL LETTERS – DO NOT ABBREVIATE**.
3. State duration of treatment (where known) and if not known give pharmacist some chance of helping (i.e. add 'Repeat ...n... times'; but do not comment 'Repeat as necessary').

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

73

4. Write out microgram/nanogram. DO NOT ABBREVIATE THESE – abbreviations are not always instantly recognisable and there should be no debate about the statement of dose.
5. Always put a 0 before a decimal point. For example 0.3 milligrams NOT .3 mg.
6. GIVE PRECISE INSTRUCTIONS concerning ROUTE of administration and DOSE rate (either overall or 'per kg' – if per kg is used make sure pharmacist knows weight of animal or he/she won't know how much to dispense).
7. Any alterations invalidate the prescription – rewrite in its entirety – do not attempt to sign alterations – it is not valid.
8. **Prescriptions for Schedule 2 and 3 Controlled Drugs MUST be entirely written in longhand by the prescribing veterinary surgeon.**

**It is NOT acceptable under any conditions to use typewriting or the handwriting of any other person.**

If in any doubt phone and speak to the pharmacist first – he/she will always attempt to help as far as possible and they have knowledge of available formulations, tablet sizes etc. and which might be most suitable. This applies particularly to those drugs which are not in common equine usage and which the veterinary surgeon considers provide the best therapeutic options for the well being of the patient. Pharmacists who receive prescriptions that are clearly wrong in some aspect will return them to the prescriber for correction – this is both time consuming and an embarrassment.

Computer-generated prescriptions are becoming more common. The prescription must include the date, patient's name, clients name and address. The prescription must be printed in English with NO ABBREVIATIONS AT ALL. The name and address of the prescriber must be printed completely and the signature MUST be handwritten.

3.3.1

### Comment:

- Most drugs have established withdrawal times.
- These MUST be considered when using drugs to treat horses intended for human consumption.
- Any drug without a withdrawal time should be used with caution in any animal intended for human consumption.

Notwithstanding these comments veterinary surgeons are reminded of their responsibilities regarding the use of drugs in 'food-producing animals' with respect to minimum acceptable residues and drug clearance times prior to slaughter. Apart from personal safety, the primary concern for the veterinary surgeon is for the patient – all other considerations (cost, disposal, withdrawal times etc.) are secondary.

73

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 3.4 PRESCRIPTION ABBREVIATIONS

74

ac	before feeding
ad(s)	right ear (left)
au	both ears
ad lib	free access
amp	ampoule
aq	water
bid	twice daily
c	with
cap(s)	capsule(s)
circ	about/approximately
disp	dispense
et	and
ext	extract
g	gram
gtt(s)	drop(s)
id	the same
IM (im)	intramuscular(ly)
IV (iv)	intravenous(ly)
m	mix
mcg (µg)	microgram
mg	milligram
mL	millilitre
non rep.	do not repeat
o.d.(s)	right eye (left)
o.m.	every morning
o.n.	every evening/night
o.u.	both eyes
pc	after feeding
po	by mouth
prn	as needed
qd	every day
qid	four times daily
qod	every other day
q 4 h	every (four) hours
qA	sufficient quantity
rep	repeat
s	without
sid	once daily
sig	instruction/label
solve	dissolve
sol'n	solution
SC	subcutaneous(ly)
SS	half
stat	immediately
susp	suspension
tabs	tablets
tbs	tablespoon
tid	three times daily
tr	tincture
tsp	teaspoon
Ut dict	as directed
(s)	left

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

(d) right

### 3.4.1 Comments:

- Avoid using the specific administration abbreviations qd, qod, iid, sid, bid, tid because they may be confused with other abbreviations and are almost unknown outside the veterinary profession.
- If you are in any doubt write out plain directions in longhand!

### 3.5 DRUG CATEGORISATION FOR PRESCRIPTION PURPOSES

#### GSL:

A preparation that falls in the General Sales List, i.e. may be sold by anyone over the counter in any appropriate retail shop.

#### P:

A pharmacy-prepared medicine sold by a retail pharmacy or veterinarian.

74

#### PML:

75

Schedule 1, Medicines Order 1985. Specially listed veterinary products may be sold by pharmacists, agricultural merchants or supplied by veterinary surgeons.

#### POM:

May only be dispensed/sold with a prescription. Veterinary surgeons who dispense drugs from their own stocks for ***treatment of animals under their care*** are deemed to have prescribed the drugs (provided that the correct labelling and packaging has been used).

#### CD:

Controlled Drugs are regulated by the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 and the Misuse of Drugs Regulations, 1985. These regulations classify the controlled drugs into five schedules, numbered in decreasing order of severity of control:

### 3.5.1 Schedule 1

LSD, heroin and other strong opiates and habit-forming drugs.

**None of these are applicable to veterinary use and there is no reason to prescribe or obtain any of them under normal circumstances. Pharmacists will not dispense these on a veterinary prescription and may justifiably question their use or any attempt to prescribe them.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 3.5.2 Schedule 2

Includes morphine, pethidine, papaveretum, etorphine (including large animal and small animal Immobilon), methadone, quinalbarbitone/cinchocaine mixture.

Record all purchases and keep in a full bound record (loose-leaf files are not acceptable).

- Record each individual dispensation within 24 hours of its use.
- Records must be kept for two calendar years after the last entry is made.
- Drugs must be kept in a locked container.
- Prescriptions are required for supply of these from wholesalers/pharmacists. The hand-written prescription should state: 'Please supply for use in my practice ...' and be properly signed, dated and identified.
- **You can be prosecuted for failure to comply with the Act.**

### 3.5.3 Schedule 3

Includes buprenorphine, pentazocine, phenobarbitone (phenobarbital), pentobarbitone, thiopentone (thiopental), methohexitone.

- Receipts of acquisition only to be kept.

### 3.5.4 Schedule 4

Includes butorphanol, benzodiazepines (diazepam, midazolam).

- Exempted from control when used in normal veterinary practice.

### 3.5.5 Schedule 5

Preparations containing codeine, cough medicines etc.

- Exempted from control in normal practice use.

75

#### 3.5.5.1 NOTE:

Currently both British Approved Names (BANs) and recommended International Non-proprietary Names (rINNs) are used in prescriptions in the UK. In some cases these differ significantly and the same or similar names may be given to significantly different drugs in different parts of the world. This can lead to considerable confusion and also to a significant increase in the risks of mis-treatment. Since December 2003, where the names differ, the rINN is the correct prescription name to use. Prescribers and dispensers should attempt wherever possible to use the rINN.

Further information for UK prescribers can be obtained from:

76

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

[<http://www.dh.gov.uk/assetRoot/04/07/36/04077036.pdf>](http://www.dh.gov.uk/assetRoot/04/07/36/04077036.pdf)

### 3.6 DISTRIBUTION CATEGORIES (UK) FROM OCTOBER 2005

From October 2005 drug categories in the UK will be adjusted to a new format. The categories will be:

#### 3.6.1 Prescription Only Medication: POM – V (Veterinarian)

Medicines that may be prescribed by a registered veterinary surgeon following a diagnosis. The prescription may be dispensed by any registered veterinary surgeon or registered pharmacist.

This group includes drugs previously classified as Prescription Only Medications (POM) and some Pharmacy (P) products for food producing animals and for pet animals together with current Medications-for-in feed (MFS) products.

76

##### 3.6.1.1 Notes:

- May be supplied by a different veterinarian to that who writes the prescription or a registered pharmacist.

**Administration should be under the supervision of the prescribing veterinarian.**

77

#### 3.6.2 Prescription Only Medication: POM – VPM (Veterinarian, Pharmacist, Merchant)

This group includes medicines that can be prescribed and supplied by a Registered Qualified Person (RQP), i.e. a registered veterinary surgeon, a registered pharmacist or a registered suitably qualified person (SQP) or it may be supplied separately by a RQP in accordance with a written prescription from another RQP.

Prior diagnosis is not a prerequisite for a prescription for this category but the prescribing RQP must be satisfied that the person administering the medicine has the competence to do so safely and that the use is necessary for the routine control or treatment of endemic disease.

The group includes some current Pharmacy (P), current PML products and MFSX products for food-producing animals.

##### 3.6.2.1 Notes

- May be supplied by a different RQP to that who writes the prescription.
- Administration should be under the supervision of the person deemed competent to administer the medicine.

#### 3.6.3 Non-Food Animal Medicine (NFAM)

Medicines which can be supplied without a prescription by a Registered Qualified Person (RQP), i.e. a registered veterinary surgeon, a registered pharmacist or a suitably qualified person (SQP).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

The RQP must check and be satisfied that the person administering the medicine has the competence to do so safely and that the use is necessary for the routine control or treatment of endemic disease.

3.6.3.1

### Notes:

- No controls on administration.

3.6.4

### General Sales List (GSL)

Medicines that may be supplied by any retailer. These may be for non-food-producing animals or will be included in the exemption list for food-producing animals currently being elaborated by the Commission.

3.6.4.1

### Notes:

- The current P (Pharmacy) products will be divided between the 2 POM categories with general anaesthetics, heart and respiratory treatments and pain relief becoming POM – V. The vaccines and topical products will become POM – VPM.



### 4 Section 1 Drugs acting on the central nervous system

#### 4.1 (a) SEDATIVES AND TRANQUILLISERS

##### Definitions:

##### Sedative:

An agent that quietens nervous excitement (usually designated to the body system upon which it works – thus should be referred to as a ‘neurological sedative’ when used in the commonly accepted fashion ‘sedative’). The effects are usually dose-dependent and may ultimately induce loss of consciousness (these are often termed hypnotics).

##### Tranquilliser:

A drug that brings tranquillity by calming or soothing, quieting or pacifying without depression. The effects are not predictably dose-dependent and in some cases higher doses induce lesser or untoward effects.

##### Ataractic:

A drug that induces a state of stoical indifference. Effects are seldom dose-dependent however.

##### Neuroleptanalgesic:

Altered state of consciousness and inhibited responses induced by a combination of a tranquilliser and an analgesic.

These definitions are not in themselves of much value but they do identify that the drugs chosen may be expected to have different types and extents of effect.

#### 4.1.1 Acepromazine maleate

POM V

##### Indications:

- Restraint.
- Control of excitement.
- Premedication.
- Examination of penis.

**Presentations:** 10 mg/mL, 10 mL, 20 mL and 50 mL multidose bottles for injection.

25 mg tablet for oral use.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** Injection: 0.02-0.11 mg/kg IV/IM/SC (for premedication use lower dose range).

Oral: 0.1-0.2 mg/kg (slow/variable effect).

79

4.1.1.1

### Notes:

**Contraindicated in hypotensive conditions.**

- Acute hypotension due to ACP may be treated with phenylephrine or norepinephrine (noradrenaline).
- May cause penile prolapse/priapism/paraphimosis (especially entire stallions).
- Significant drug interactions with quinidine sulphate (cardiac depression/hypotension).

**NB: 2 mg/kg solution for small animals also available (CHECK STRENGTH).**

80

4.1.2

### Chloral hydrate (BvetC)

POM V/CD (S-IV)

#### Indications:

- Sedative-hypnotic.
- Little effect on reflexes, blood pressure and respiration.

**Presentations:** Crystalline powder.

**Dose:** 65-110 mg/kg IV (10%) or PO (10%) via stomach tube.

(Usual dose for a 500 kg horse is 50-60 g) ( $\pm$  1 gram/100 kg).

4.1.2.1

### Notes:

- Cheap and effective adjunct to anaesthetic induction with thiopentone (thiopental).
- Severe reactions/sloughing if extravascular.
- Irritant to mucous membranes at >5%.
- Unpleasant taste (restrict all other water for up to 24 hours before drink voluntarily).
- Delayed effect after administration due to required metabolism.
- Additive effect if used with other CNS drugs.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 4.1.3 Detomidine

Table 3.1

Level of sedation	Dosage (µg/kg)	Onset (minutes)	Duration (hours)
Light	10–20	3–5	0.5–1
Medium	20–40	2–5	0.5–1
Heavy	40–80	1–5	0.5–2

80

POM V

81

#### Indications:

- Sedation and analgesia, premedication.

**Presentations:** Solution for IV/IM injection 10 mg/mL (5 mL and 20 mL multidose vial).

#### Dose:

#### 4.1.3.1 Note:

- Use 20 mg/kg for anaesthetic regime with ketamine at 2.2 mg/kg administered 5 minutes later (i.e. when sedation is maximal).

**Standing sedation:** detomidine 10 mg/kg + butorphanol 0.025 mg/kg IV, e.g. 0.5 mL detomidine with 1.25 mL butorphanol solution.

#### 4.1.3.2 Notes:

- Hypotensive if used alone.
- Marked bradycardia.
- IM dose  $1.5\text{--}2 \times$  IV dose.
- Intractable horses can be sedated with sub-lingual high dose and be prepared to wait – effect may take some 40–90 minutes.
- **Beware when using with sympathomimetic amines.**
- **Do NOT use in last trimester of pregnancy.**
- **DO NOT USE WITH potentiated sulphonamides (sulfonamides) (possible fatal dysrhythmias).**
- Maximal effects obtained when horse is left quiet after administration.
- May be combined with butorphanol for good standing sedation.

81

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

4.1.4

### Romifidine

82

POM V

#### Indications:

- Sedative/intestinal analgesic with muscle relaxant effects.
- Premedication.

**Presentation:** 10 mg/mL (20 mL multidose vial) for injection.

**Dose:** 40-120 µg/kg.

Table 3.2

Sedation effect	Dose rate (µg/kg)	Dose volume (mL/100 kg)	Duration (hours)
Light sedation	40	0.4	0.5–1.0
Moderate sedation	80	0.8	0.5–1.5
Deep sedation	120	1.2	>3

82

4.1.4.1

#### Notes:

- Use 100 µg/kg for anaesthetic regime with ketamine at 2.2 mg/kg 5-10 minutes later.
- Always inject slow IV.
- Remember that a sedated horse can still kick with accuracy and this drug has no significant analgesic properties.
- To reduce possibility of unexpected defensive action (kicking etc.) use calculated dose with 20 mg/kg butorphanol IV. Can be mixed in syringe – better butorphanol immediately after romifidine.

**Per 100 kg: 0.6 mL romifidine + 0.2 mL butorphanol** gives good sedation for diagnostic procedures.

83

4.1.5

### Xylazine

POM V

#### Indications:

- Sedative/intestinal analgesic with muscle relaxant effects.
- Premedication.

#### Presentations:

- 20 mg/mL (20 mL multidose vial) for injection.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- 100 mg/mL (10 mL multidose vial) for injection.
- 500 mg dry powder (10 mL single dose vial) + diluent.

**Dose:** 0.5-1.1 mg/kg IV (slow).

4.1.5.1

### Notes:

- Marked local reaction/unreliable effect IM ( $2-3 \times$  IV dose).
- First- and second-degree heart block is common following administration.
- Bradycardia pronounced/reduced cardiac output cause hypotension, hyperglycaemia and sweating.
- Sedation lasts longer than analgesia.
- Somatic analgesia POOR (local +/- systemic analgesic).
- **Ensure correct solution used to calculate dose.**

**DO NOT USE AS PREMEDICANT FOR QUINALBARBITONE  
(SECOBARBITAL)/CINCHOCAINE EUTHENASIA.**

4.2

### (b) ANALGESICS

1. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs): These include drugs that inhibit formation of prostaglandins and thromboxanes from arachidonic acid with anti-inflammatory properties, that are not steroids. Classically these drugs have anti-inflammatory, analgesic and anti-pyretic effects.
2. Opioids: drugs that work in a similar manner to morphine (synthetic or non-synthetic). Opioids exert their effects by binding to special opioid receptors in the CNS and periphery. Classic properties: analgesia, sedation (sometimes).
3. NMDA: receptor blocker – ketamine. In sub-anaesthetic doses mostly analgesic properties; especially useful in chronic pain situations.
4.  $\alpha$ -2 agonists: work on  $\alpha$ -2 receptors all over the body. Have also analgesic properties, but because of sedative, cardiovascular and respiratory effects rarely used for analgesia only. Beware that analgesia only lasts for one-third of the time of the sedation and will be reversed with atipamezole.
5. Local anaesthetics: see p. 223.

4.2.1

### Butorphanol tartrate

POM V/CD (S-IV)

#### Indications:

- Relief of musculoskeletal and visceral pain (colic).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- With sedative/tranquilliser for standing sedation/restraint.

Presentation: 10/50 mL multidose bottle – 10 mg for injection.

**Dose:** 0.05-0.2 mg/kg IV/IM/SC. Lower doses are used when combined with alpha-2 agonists for sedation/restraint.

4.2.1.1

### Notes:

- DURATION OF ACTION approximately 45-60 minutes.
- Not as good analgesic properties as other opioids.
- Expensive.

83

### Side effects:

84

- Excitement and dysphoria ('box-walking' behaviour) have been described.
- Potent antitussive.

### Contraindications:

- Lower respiratory tract conditions associated with copious mucus production.
- Patients with head trauma/increased CNS pressure.

4.2.2

### Etorphine hydrochloride

POM V/CD (S-II)

### Indications:

Reversible neuroleptanalgesia (narcosis with analgesia) for restraint, minor surgical procedures/interventions e.g. castration, wound repair etc.

### Presentations:

10 mL multidose bottle – 2.45 mg/mL (2.25 mg/mL etorphine base) with 10 mg/mL acepromazine maleate BP (Vet) solution for injection marketed with diprenorphine (*Revivon*) (see below).

**Dose:** 0.5 mL/50 kg (minimum dose) IV or IM.

Effect lasts approximately 45 minutes (if longer period is essential administer additional half dose IV).

IM injection causes marked excitement and prolonged incoordination before induction/recumbency.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

4.2.2.1	<p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Equal volume of diprenorphine (Revivon) to total volume of Immobilon used given IV as soon as possible on completion of procedure. Recover with minimal disturbance and noise. Muscular tremors are common initially after administration (may diminish if left recumbent without stimulus for few minutes before surgery).</li><li>▪ Possible tranquillisation before recovery/after reversal.</li><li>▪ High risk in old/debilitated animals – precautionary procedures including airway maintenance (endotracheal intubation and oxygen administration advisable).</li><li>▪ Tachy/bradycardia, hypo/hypertension, and severe respiratory depression always occur in unpredictable orders/extent!</li><li>▪ Risk of severe respiratory depression in newborn if given to parturient mare (e.g. for Caesarean section).</li><li>▪ NOT for use if cardiac arrhythmias present or if history of endocarditis or any other cardio-pulmonary problem (including recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAOD/COPD)) or liver damage.</li></ul>	84
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Significant enterohepatic recycling may cause excitement, pacing, walking, incoordination for up to 12 hours after 'recovery' (close supervision is essential for this time) – if seen administer further half-dose Revivon. This can sometimes be prevented by using additional 50% dose of Revivon SC at time of reversal.</li><li>▪ Paraphimosis and priapism can be seen following its use.</li></ul>	85
4.2.2.1.1	<p><b>SAFETY of personnel paramount.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Prepare naloxone in syringe with needle and swab before loading syringes with Immobilon – this is a legal, moral and sensible requirement.</li><li>▪ Dispose of needles and syringes in appropriate fashion – one needle prick is probably enough to cause serious consequences (even death) in humans.</li><li>▪ There is little merit in this compound in equine practice and it is no longer available in the UK!</li></ul>	
4.2.3	<p><b>Methadone</b></p>	

POM V/CD(SII)

**Indications:**

- Relief of musculoskeletal pain.
- Useful with sedative tranquilliser for standing sedation.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Methadone hydrochloride, 1 mL ampoule (10 mg/mL/50 mg/mL).

**Dose:** 0.1-0.5 mg/kg IM/IV.

4.2.3.1

### Notes:

- DURATION OF ACTION: 4-6 hours.
- Can cause some excitement e.g. box walking, but less marked than with morphine.
- Careful use in horses with head trauma, increased CNS pressure.

**Must be kept in a separate, locked receptacle, and purchase and dispensing registered in a bound record book.**

4.2.4

### Morphine sulphate

POM V/CD(S-II)

#### Indications:

- Relief of severe musculoskeletal pain.
- Used in combination with sedatives (e.g. ACP) as neuroleptanalgesia.
- Can be used epidural or intra-articular for the relief of pain without loss of motor nerve innervation (NB preservative free).

85

#### Presentations:

86

Morphine hydrochloride, single dose vial – 10 mg/mL or 60 mg/2 mL.

Preservative-free formulation is in single dose vials containing 10 mg/mL, 2 mg/mL and 2.5 mg/5 mL.

**Dose:** 0.1-0.2 mg/kg IM/IV.

Epidural doses:

- 0.1 mg/kg made up to final volume 10 mL for 500 kg horse (with e.g. sterile 0.9% NaCl); analgesia at least to L1, 0.2 mg/kg analgesia up to Th9).
- Or: 0.05-0.1 mg/kg + detomidine 30 µg/kg.

Neuroleptanalgesia:

- Morphine 0.1-0.2 mg/kg + ACP 0.02 mg/kg IM/IV.

86

4.2.4.1

### Notes:

87

DURATION OF ACTION: 2-4 hours.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Very good analgesia.
- Preservative-free presentation should be used for epidural, intra-articular administration.
- Excitement/box walking normal in pain-free horses was described.
- Although morphine has been described as cause of postoperative ileus, recent studies showed NO proof of this fact and its analgesic and sedative properties outweigh this risk by far.

**Must be kept in a separate, locked receptacle, and purchase and dispensing registered in a bound record book.**

### 4.2.5 Pethidine

POM V/CD (S-II)

#### Indications:

- Relief of musculoskeletal and gastroenteric pain.
- Effective spasmolytic.
- Useful combination with acepromazine and/or xylazine for standing sedation.

#### Presentation:

Pethidine hydrochloride.

50 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 3.5-10 mg/kg (1 g/500 kg IM).

#### 4.2.5.1 Notes:

- DURATION OF ACTION: 30 minutes.
- DO NOT USE IV: causes histamine release! As quick to use IM injection (rapid distribution) as it is IV.
- Not as good analgesic as morphine/methadone (only one-tenth strength).
- May cause excitement/profuse sweating.

**Must be kept in a separate, locked receptacle, and purchase and dispensing registered in a bound record book.**

### 4.2.6 Xylazine

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### Indications:

- Sedative/intestinal analgesic with muscle-relaxant effects.
- Premedication prior to ketamine or thiopentone (thiopental) anaesthetic induction.
- Useful in recovery stages of anaesthesia if horse is excited/distressed.
- Sedative of choice for hepatoencephalopathy.
- Can be used for epidural analgesia without danger of motor paralysis (usually combined with local anaesthetics or morphine).

### Presentations:

20 mg/mL (20 mL multidose vial) for injection.

100 mg/mL (10 mL multidose vial) for injection.

500 mg dry powder (10 mL single dose vial) + diluent.

**Dose:** 0.5-1.1 mg/kg IV (slow).

4.2.6.1

### Notes:

- DURATION OF ACTION: up to 20 minutes.
- Marked local reaction and unreliable effect IM ( $2-3 \times$  IV dose).
- $1^\circ/2^\circ$  heart blocks common.
- Bradycardia pronounced/reduced cardiac output may cause hypotension.
- Hyperglycaemia and sweating.
- Sedation lasts longer than visceral analgesia.
- Somatic analgesia POOR, use local and/or systemic analgesic, e.g. butorphanol for painful procedures.
- Increased respiratory rate and profuse sweating if administered to a pyrexia horse.

Ensure correct solution used to calculate dose.

Do not use as premedicant to quinalbarbitone euthanasia.

87

### 4.3 (c) ANAESTHETIC AGENTS

#### 4.3.1 1. Volatile/gaseous agents

- Agents in current use include the gas nitrous oxide (N<sub>2</sub>O) and the volatile liquids isoflurane, halothane, sevoflurane, desflurane.
- To define a dose for an inhalational agent the term MAC is used: this is the minimal alveolar concentration necessary to keep 50% of the population asleep undergoing a supramaximal noxious stimulus (skin incision, for example).
- Apart from nitrous oxide, inhalational agents have NO ANALGESIC PROPERTIES – so other analgesic drugs need to be added to the protocol.

##### 4.3.1.1 Halothane

POM V

**Indications:**

Maintenance of anaesthesia.

Induction of anaesthesia in foals.

**Presentation:** Colourless volatile liquid with characteristic sweet smell.

**Dose:** MAC 0.9% (use somewhere between 1-2%, depending on the other drugs used).

Longest onset and offset of action of all the inhalational anaesthetics.

##### 4.3.1.1.1 Notes:

- Cardiovascular depression: dose-dependent, direct myocardial effects.
- Respiratory depression: dose-dependent, least respiratory depressant.
- Potentiates cardiac dysrhythmias in presence of catecholamines (e.g. adrenaline (epinephine)).
- Storage conditions are important – contains preservative (Thymol), which decomposes in UV light.

##### 4.3.1.2 Isoflurane

POM V

**Indications:** Maintenance of anaesthesia.

**Presentation:** Colourless volatile liquid with pungent unpleasant smell.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** MAC 1.3% (use somewhere between 2% and 2.5% depending on the other drugs used).

88

4.3.1.2.1

### Notes:

- Cardiovascular effects: causes dose-dependent vasodilation and thereby hypotension.
- Respiratory effects: dose-dependent; more pungent, can cause breath holding!
- Low solubility gives rapid induction and recovery (ideal agent for foals).

89

4.3.1.3

### Sevoflurane

POM V

**Indications:** Maintenance of anaesthesia.

Induction of anaesthesia in foals.

**Presentation:** Colourless, volatile liquid with pungent smell (but preferable to isoflurane) in a plastic bottle.

**Dose:** MAC 2.3% (use somewhere between 2% and 4% depending on the other drugs used).

4.3.1.3.1

### Notes:

- Cardiovascular effects: causes dose-dependent vasodilation and thereby hypotension.
- Respiratory effects: less pungent than isoflurane; dose-dependent depression.
- Good for induction as quick onset of action due to low solubility in the blood!
- Rapid recovery due to low solubility (quicker than with isoflurane, preferred for horses).
- At the moment more expensive than isoflurane and halothane.

4.3.1.4

### Desflurane

POM V

**Indication:** Maintenance of anaesthesia.

**Presentation:** Colourless, volatile liquid in a plastic bottle, very pungent smell.

**Dose:** MAC 7.23-7.9% (use somewhere between 8% and 9%).

89

4.3.1.4.1

### Notes:

- Cardiovascular effects: similar to isoflurane and sevoflurane, may also get sympathetic stimulation.

90

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Respiratory effects: very pungent – will cause breath holding, coughing when used for induction – use for maintenance ONLY, no mask inductions.
- Very low solubility – rapid onset, offset and change of action. Need to turn vaporiser up before refilling otherwise horse will wake up.
- Due to its physical properties desflurane needs a special vaporiser (very expensive).
- At the moment only in use for trials, universities.

4.3.1.5

### Nitrous oxide

POM V

#### Indications:

- Maintenance of general anaesthesia.
- Weak analgesic.
- Useful support for volatile agents.

**Presentation:** Colourless sweet-smelling gas in cylinders (BLUE).

**Dose:** **Never exceed** 50% mixture with oxygen. Use high-flow, semi-closed circle systems.

4.3.1.5.1

#### Notes:

- Care in heavy horses in dorsal recumbency (only safe if oxygenation can be monitored using arterial blood gas analysis or oximetry).
- Secondary gas effect useful at induction.
- Diffusion hypoxia – possible harmful effect.
- Do not use in colic or any other situation where closed gas-filled spaces may exist.
- Nitrous oxide has been linked to bone marrow depression and so extra care must be taken for human safety. Pregnant women should not come into contact with it.
- Greenhouse gas!
- The role of nitrous oxide use in equine anaesthesia is questionable, as its benefits do not outweigh the problems occurring with the use of this gas.

90

### 4.3.2 2. Intravenous anaesthetic drugs

#### 4.3.2.1 Etorphine hydrochloride

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Indications:** Reversible neuroleptanalgesia (narcosis with analgesia), restraint, minor surgical procedures/interventions e.g. castration, wound repair etc.

**Presentations:** 10 mL multidose bottle – 2.45 mg/mL (2.25 mg/mL etorphine base) with acepromazine maleate BP (Vet) 10 mg/mL solution for injection marketed with diprenorphine (*Revivon*) (see below).

**Dose:** 0.5 mL/50 kg (minimum dose) IV or IM.

Effect lasts approximately 45 minutes (if longer period is essential administer additional half dose IV).

IM injection causes marked excitement and prolonged incoordination before induction/recumbency.

##### 4.3.2.1.1

#### Notes:

- Equal volume of Revivon (diprenorphine) to total volume of Immobilon used given IV as soon as possible on completion of procedure. Recover with minimal disturbance and noise.
- Muscular tremors common after administration (may diminish if left recumbent without stimulus for few minutes before surgery).
- Possible tranquillisation before recovery/after reversal.
- High risk in old/debilitated animals – precautionary procedures including airway maintenance (endotracheal intubation and oxygen administration advisable).
- Tachy/bradycardia, hypo/hypertension and severe respiratory depression always occur in unpredictable orders/extent!
- Risk of severe respiratory depression in newborn if given to parturient mare (e.g. for Caesarean section).
- NOT for use if cardiac arrhythmias present or if history of endocarditis or any other cardio-pulmonary problem (including COPD) or liver damage.
- Significant enterohepatic recycling may cause excitement, pacing, walking, incoordination for up to 12 hours after 'recovery' (close supervision is essential for this time) – if seen administer further half-dose Revivon. This can sometimes be prevented by using additional 50% dose of Revivon SC at time of reversal.
- Paraphimosis and priapism can be seen following its use.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

4.3.2.1.2

### SAFETY of personnel paramount.

- Prepare naloxone in syringe with needle and swab before loading syringes with Immobilon – this is a legal and moral and sensible requirement.
- Dispose of needles and syringes in appropriate fashion – one needle prick is probably enough to cause serious consequences (even death) in humans. There is little merit in this compound!

92

4.3.2.2

### Ketamine

POM V

**Indications:** Short duration general anaesthesia with xylazine, romifidine or detomidine.

**Presentations:** 10 mL or 50 mL multidose vials, 100 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 2-2.2 mg/kg IV.

4.3.2.2.1

### Note:

**NEVER administer ketamine alone or first!** (Ensure pre-filled syringes are clearly labelled).

4.3.2.3

### Methohexitone

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Indications:** Anaesthetic induction.

**Presentations:** 2.5 g powder in 250 mL vial/250 mL diluent supplied – use 1% or 2.5% solution.

**Dose:** 5-10 mg/kg IV bolus.

1 g/180 kg with light premedication.

1 g/360 kg with heavy premedication.

4.3.2.3.1

### Notes:

- Rapid, ultra short-acting. Irritant if injected extravascularly – catheter preferred.
- Do not reconstitute with Hartman's/Ringer lactate. Use solutions within 24 hours.

92

4.3.2.4

### Propofol

POM V

**Indications:** Induction of anaesthesia in foals/small ponies.

93

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** White emulsion (10 mg/mL), single use 20 mL vials.

**Dose:** 2 mg/kg IV.

4.3.2.4.1

### Notes:

- Rapidly metabolised, short-acting.
- Expensive.
- Useful for small/young foals as induction agent/short procedures (e.g. entropion).
- Discard bottle after 24 hours of opening.

4.3.2.5

### Thiopentone (thiopental) sodium

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Indications:** Anaesthetic induction, short-duration procedures.

**Presentations:** Dry powder reconstituted to 2.5%, 5% or 10% solution – diluent provided.

**Dose:** 10-15 mg/kg (1 g/90 kg) with **light** premedication.

7-10 mg/kg (1 g/180 k) with **heavy** premedication.

4.3.2.5.1

### Notes:

- **Do not reconstitute with Hartman's or Ringer lactate.**
- Extremely alkaline – very irritant extravascularly, use of catheter obligatory. Immediate action if extravascular injection suspected (using copious amounts of saline +/- lidocaine (lignocaine) HCl).
- Always dilute solution to 50-60 mL and preferably use solutions of <10%.

4.4

## (d) MUSCLE RELAXANTS

4.4.1

### Atracurium

POM V

**Indications:** Peripherally acting skeletal muscle relaxant; useful for better surgical access in some procedures, eye surgery (eyeball stays in centre of orbit and does not move).

**Presentation:** 10 mg/mL, 2.5 mL, 5 mL, 25 mL.

**Dose:**



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- First dose: 0.1-0.25 mg/kg IV.
- Top up doses: ¼–½ initial dose IV.

93

4.4.1.1

### Notes:

94

- Because atracurium affects all muscles – IPPV MUST BE PERFORMED! Only consider using this drug, if special equipment is available.
- Undergoes spontaneous chemodegradation in the plasma at normal body temperature and pH by 'Hofmann elimination'.
- Reverse with ideally edrophonium 0.1 mg/kg or if not available with: neostigmine 0.04 mg/kg and atropine 0.01 mg/kg both IV.
- 'Depth' of muscle relaxation can be monitored using the 'train-of-four system'.

4.4.2

### Dantrolene sodium

POM V

#### Indications:

- Direct-acting skeletal muscle relaxant.
- Prevention or treatment of myopathy (postanaesthesia or exertional rhabdomyolysis).

**Presentation:** 100 mg caps for ORAL use.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO loading dose, 3-5 mg/kg PO q 1 h.

As prophylactic – full loading dose 60 minutes before surgery.

Use cautiously before surgery (not fully evaluated).

4.4.3

### Glyceryl guaicolate BP (GGE)

POM V

**Indications:** Spinally acting muscle relaxant. Use for induction in combination with other anaesthetic drug (ketamine, thiopentone (thiopental)) or maintenance as 'Triple-drip' (GGE + ketamine + alpha-2 agonist as constant infusion).

**Presentation:** White crystalline powder.

Home made – dissolve 50 g powder in 500 mL 5% dextrose or saline solution. Very difficult to dissolve. Helps to warm solution.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

'Ready made' 15% solution available (much more stable with little or no tendency to precipitate, e.g. Myolaxin).

**Dose:** 20-50 mg/kg IV slowly until desired effect is attained, (i.e. approx. half bodyweight (kg) in millilitres of 10% solution, as a guide).

94

4.4.3.1

### Notes:

- May precipitate out of solution, if very cold.
- Best to make up fresh.
- Very irritant extravascularly – if suspected infiltrate with large volumes of saline solution.
- **DO NOT USE ALONE FOR CASTING** – this drug has no analgesic/anaesthetic properties!
- It is also reported to be a useful expectorant (PO) (doubtful efficacy).

95

4.4.4

### Suxamethonium

POM V

**Indications:** Depolarising muscle relaxant. Can be useful adjunct to injectable euthanasia. Classically used as part of anaesthetic induction technique.

**Presentation:** White water-soluble powder reconstituted for injection.

**Dose:** 0.1-0.2 mg/kg IV.

4.4.4.1

### Notes:

- Muscle fasciculation seen early. Short action. Muscle fasciculation present early. Inactive in alkaline solution.
- **DO NOT mix with barbiturates in syringe!**
- **Additive to thiopentone (thiopental) for euthanasia in difficult circumstances (followed by large-volume pentobarbitone (200 mg/mL).**

4.5

### (e) OPIATE ANTAGONISTS

4.5.1

### Diprenorphine hydrochloride

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Indications:** Reversal of etorphine-induced narcosis.

**Presentations:** Blue aqueous solution for injection 3 mg/mL; 10.5 mL multidose vial.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** Volume equal to the dose volume of etorphine used, IV. Further 50% may be given SC.

4.5.1.1

### Notes:

- **NOT to be used for humans unless NO NARCAN is available** (this is a totally unacceptable circumstance in any case!) (It should only be used when clinical signs are seen).
- Initial dose for human is 0.1 mL IV/IM or preferably equal volume to the volume of etorphine injected. Repeat after 2 minutes. IT IS, ITSELF, EXTREMELY UNPLEASANT when used in humans, resulting in long-term hallucinations, dysphoria and nausea.
- No longer available in UK.

95

96

4.5.2

### Naloxone

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Indications:** Respiratory depression associated with potent opiates.

**Antidote against inadvertent human self-administration of etorphine (L.A. Immobilon) or other morphine-like drugs.**

**Presentations:** Single dose (1 mL) vials 0.4 mg/mL for injection.

**Dose:** Adult: administer whole vial IM/IV injection. May need to repeat since half-life is shorter (20 minutes) than etorphine.

If reversal of opioids (pure  $\mu$ -agonists) in animals: 0.04-1.0 mg/kg.

4.5.2.1

### Notes:

- In the event of accidental self-injection of etorphine or another morphine-based compound **call medical help immediately**. Administer IV every 2-3 min until symptoms are reversed and help arrives! If IV impossible use multi-site IM injections but do not panic!
- The substance is very unpleasant – but you have a chance of survival!

4.6

### (f) PARASYMPATHOMIMETICS

4.6.1

### Neostigmine

POM V

**Indications:**

- Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocker antagonist.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Stimulates motility and tone of the GI tract.
- Miotic effects on iris.
- Atropine poisoning/toxicity.

**Presentation:** 2.5 mg/mL (1:500) aqueous injection in 1 mL vials.

**Dose:** 0.02-0.04 mg/kg IV/SC.

Dosing intervals determined by response.

4.6.1.1

### Notes:

96

- Can give with 0.01 mg/kg atropine slow to effect in horses to counteract muscarinic effects (NB monitor ECG closely). Magnesium may inhibit action of anticholinesterase therapy.

97

4.6.2

### Edrophonium

POM V

**Indications:** Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocker antagonist.

**Presentations:** 2.5 mL vials, 10 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 0.1-0.5 mg/kg IV/SC.

Dosing intervals determined by response.

4.6.2.1

### Notes:

- Can use edrophonium alone in horses to reverse atracurium.

4.6.3

### Bethanecol

POM V

**Indications:** Oesophagitis, gastroduodenal ulcers, incontinence, gastrointestinal motility stimulant.

**Presentations:** 25 mg tablets.

**Dose:** 0.025-0.030 mg/kg every 4 hours for 24 hours SC, 0.35-0.45 mg/kg orally every 6-8 hours.

4.6.3.1

### Note:

- At higher doses diarrhoea and colic may occur.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 4.6.4 Physostigmine

POM V

**Indications:** Diagnosis of narcolepsy.

**Dose:** 0.06-0.08 mg/kg slow IV.

#### 4.6.4.1 Notes:

- This will precipitate a narcoleptic attack within 3-10 min after administration. Atropine sulphate 0.04-0.08 mg/kg reduces severity of attacks and can prevent them reoccurring.

97

### 4.7 (g) PARASYMPATHOLYTICS

98

#### 4.7.1 Atropine

POM V

**Indications:** Parasympatholytic (anticholinergic, mydriatic, cycloplegic). Relief of smooth muscle spasm, antidote to parasympathomimetic drugs (including organophosphate). For intraoperative bradydysrhythmias. In cardiopulmonary resuscitation. Bronchodilation. Glaucoma, relief of iris spasm.

**Presentations:** Clear aqueous solution, 10 mg/mL, 50 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 0.01-0.04 mg/kg IV/IM/SC.

0.015 mg/kg IV/IM/SC as treatment for acute bronchoconstriction.

#### 4.7.1.1 Notes:

- Side effects (may be prolonged) and include:
  1. Sinus tachycardia, ectopic complexes;
  2. Vision disturbances (mydriasis, photophobia, cycloplegia, possible but not marked increases in intra-ocular pressure) (mydriasis may cause panic – use darkened room);
  3. Abdominal distension, ileus.
  4. Urinary retention.
- Ophthalmic ointment or drops (1/2%) can cause systemic effects on gut motility in particular. Ophthalmic effects include reduction in intra-ocular pressure in glaucoma due to high unconventional drainage of aqueous in horses (beware of cause of glaucoma).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 4.7.2 Glycopyrolate

POM V

**Indications:** Counteract vagal reflex in emergency resuscitation.

**Presentation:** 600 µg in 3 mL.

**Dose:** 2 µ/kg IV.

#### 4.7.2.1 Notes:

- NB Onset of action slower than atropine (1-3 min) therefore less useful in an emergency. Duration of action is also longer (2-3 h cardiovascular effects).
- More gastrointestinal side effects than atropine.

98

### 4.7.3 Hyoscine

99

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-spasmodic. Relief of spasmodic colic; facilitation of rectal examination in horses that strain during the procedure.

**Presentations:** With metamizole; each mL contains 4 mg butylscopolamine bromide and 500 mg metamizole, 1 mL ampoules 20 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 80-120 mg IV.

#### 4.7.3.1 Notes:

- May cause a transient increase in heart rate post-administration.
- Metamizole is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory and administration of further anti-inflammatory drugs should only be done with caution.

### 4.8 (h) SYMPATHOMIMETICS

#### 4.8.1 Dobutamine

POM V

**Indications:** Hypotension particularly during general anaesthesia. It is an inotropic agent indicated for short-term support in patients with cardiac decompensation due to decreased contractility. Vascular effects are believed to be minimal in other species. At normal doses cardiac rates are also not significantly affected, but rates may increase at higher dosages.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentations:** Dry powder 250 mg/bottle or 250 mg solution for dilution.

**Dose:** Reconstitute with 1 litre 5% glucose or 0.9% saline to yield a solution having a concentration of 250 µg/mL.

Administer IV at 1 drop per second to effect.

4.8.1.1

### Notes:

- ECG monitoring for tachyarrhythmias essential.
- Drug interactions: oxytocic drugs may cause a severe hypertension when used with dobutamine. Dobutamine may be ineffective if β-blocking drugs, e.g. propranolol have recently been given.

4.8.2

### Dopamine

POM V

**Indications:** Correction of haemodynamic imbalances in shock.

Oliguric pre-renal renal failure.

**Presentations:** To prepare solution: add 250 mg to 1 litre of normal saline, or Hartman's to give concentration of 250 µg/mL. \*250 mL flexible packs containing 200/400/800 µg/mL.

99

**Dose:** Variable according to effect desired (2-5 µg/kg/min by continuous IV infusion) to promote urine output.

100

5-10 µg/kg/min for β<sub>1</sub> effect.

>10 µg/kg/min causes α, β and dopaminergic effects (vasoconstriction) that can be dangerous.

4.8.2.1

### Notes:

- Only used in intensive care (especially neonates).
- Severe necrosis/sloughing if extravascular (if suspected infiltrate site with 5-10 mg phentolamine in 10-15 mL normal saline).
- Monitor urine flow, cardiac rate/rhythm/blood pressure.
- Cease if severe arrhythmias such as premature ventricular contractions (PVCs) develop.
- Half-life in circulation 5-9 minutes.

4.8.3

### Ephedrine sulphate

POM V

**Indications:** Indirect and direct pressor effects.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentations:** Aqueous solution for injection (50 mg/mL) 10 mL multidose vial.

**Dose:** 0.15-0.2 mg/kg IV q 12 h.

4.8.3.1

### Notes:

- VERY EXPENSIVE.

4.8.4

### Epinephrine/adrenaline

POM V

#### Indications:

- Adrenergic effects ( $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ).
- Bronchodilator.
- Increased systolic blood pressure.
- First-line drug in cardiac resuscitation.
- Prolongs effect of local analgesics.
- Capillary haemostasis (local) e.g. in eyes/iris etc. – see Ophthalmic drugs.

**Presentation:** Clear, aqueous solution for injection. 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000) as adrenaline acid tartrate BP.

**Doses:** 0.1-0.2 mL/50 kg by IV/IC injection. 0.01-0.02 mg/kg IV.

0.2-0.4 mL/50 kg by IM or SC injection (5-6 mL/500 kg horse).

100

4.8.4.1

### Notes:

- Care with dose calculation. Best to dilute to 1 in 10 000 using water for injection.
- Ophthalmic drops (1% [Eppy, Smith and Nephew Ltd]) are available (see p. 225) and can have systemic effects.
- In emergency situation may consider administering 2-3  $\times$  dose via endotracheal tube via urinary catheter (ensure inject large volume air following so that drug reaches lung fields).
- This solution can be diluted to create a 0.5% solution for use in the equine dysautonomia (grass sickness) test (see p. 63).

101

4.8.5

### Isoprenaline

POM V



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### Indications:

- Non-specific  $\beta$  receptor agonist.
- Emergency relief of bronchospasm.
- Has been used as positive inotrope.

**Presentation:** Injectable 1 in 5000 (0.2 mg/mL) 1 mL vial.

**Dose:** Best used as IV infusion administered to effect.

4.8.5.1

### Notes:

- Causes dangerous tachycardia and arrhythmias especially under halothane anaesthesia. Superseded by new specific  $\beta_1$  agonist drugs.

4.8.6

## Noradrenaline (norepinephrine)

POM V

**Indications:** Predominantly  $\alpha$  adrenergic effects (slight  $\beta$  effects).

For hypotension associated with anaesthesia.

**Presentation:** 4 mg in 4 mL ampoule.

**Dose:** Dissolve 4 mg in 1 litre saline solution.

Administer as IV drip. Very short acting – administer according to effect.

4.8.6.1

### Notes:

- Potent vasoconstrictor.
- May cause decreased organ perfusion and increased myocardial work. Avoid prolonged infusions.
- Very short shelf life – dispose of after use.

101

4.8.7

## Phenylephrine

102

POM V

**Indications:**  $\alpha$ -adrenergic agonist. Useful in phenothiazine-induced hypotension. May be used during anaesthesia.

Valuable adjunct to therapy of some cases of nephrosplenic ligament entrapment (entrapment of the left colon in the nephrosplenic space).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** 1 mL ampoule 10 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 5-8 µg/kg IV will increase blood pressure in anaesthetised horses.

Most frequently used as a drip and administered to effect.

**Dose for treatment of nephrosplenic ligament entrapment:** 20-80 µg/kg dissolved in 500 mL 0.9% NaCl and given IV over 15 minutes followed by lunging. (Note that the heart rate must be carefully monitored during infusion.) This treatment relies upon categoric diagnosis and should not be used in suspected (i.e. unproven) cases.

4.8.7.1

### Notes:

- High dose can increase myocardial work and decrease organ perfusion. Do not use in cases of myocardial failure.

4.9

## (i) SYMPATHOLYTICS

4.9.1

### Propanolol

POM V

**Indications:** β-adrenoreceptor blocker (correction of supra-ventricular tachyarrhythmias).

**Presentation:** Aqueous injection (1 mg/mL), 1 mL glass vial.

**Dose:** 0.03-0.15 mg/kg IV slowly.

4.9.1.1

### Notes:

- Usually begin at low dose and titrate to effect. Can be used to correct serious tachydysrhythmias produced by β<sub>1</sub> agonist. Can be used to treat some cases of atrial fibrillation either as a total treatment or as an adjunct to other methods.

**NB: This drug is by definition a negative inotrope. Use with caution.**

102

4.10

## (j) ANTICONVULSANTS

103

The management of seizures in horses is critical both for safety of personnel and for the patient. Inevitably there are problems with the drug protocols that are used and so it is important to follow established guidelines.

4.10.1

### Protocol for anticonvulsive therapy in horses

(After Mayhew IG, 1989, Large Animal Neurology, Lea and Febiger, London.)

- Select one drug only.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Institute at recommended dose. Adjust until no untoward effects present.
- Administer oral drugs at least 1-2 hours before feeding (empty stomach).
- If side effects (e.g. drowsiness/collapse) without control of convulsions, reduce drug and add second at recommended dose.
- If seizures are controlled gradually taper dose of first drug (to discontinue after 1-2 weeks) provided no seizures develop.
- If seizures return as first drug is withdrawn return to controlling dose of both and continue for 3 months.
- Do not alter drugs until animal has been seizure-free for 4 weeks at least.
- Do not suddenly withdraw drugs – severe seizures may follow.
- Monitor blood concentrations of drugs if seizures difficult to control. Seizure control by maintaining blood levels of pentobarbitone of 5-15 µg/mL. Tolerance is a serious/difficult problem.
- If routine drugs fail to control seizures use other drugs with caution – more drugs make coordination more difficult and may induce severe seizures.
- Horses with convulsions are dangerous to themselves/peers and handlers.
- If convulsions are controlled for 3 months try to reduce doses – if seizures return debate outlook with owner. The need for long-term therapy makes prognosis very guarded (dangers and welfare).
- Beware of drug interactions e.g. chloramphenicol/tetracycline prolong the effects of phenytoin; ketamine is seizurogenic anyway!
- Low blood proteins may increase effect of protein-bound drugs at standard doses.
- Ivermectin is always contraindicated in convulsive horses (severe seizures may be seen within days).

### 4.10.2 Carbamazepine

POM V

**Indications:** Anticonvulsant with sodium channel-blocking effects. Used mainly for treatment and diagnostic confirmation of trigeminal neuralgia (headshaking syndrome). Little anticonvulsant effect due to short half-life.

**Presentation:** 400 mg tablets.

**Dose:** Initially 10 mg/kg q 6 h. Dose increased to 20 mg/kg q 12 and then to 40 mg/kg q 24 h. All efficacy tests to be performed within 2 hours of a dose.

103

#### 4.10.2.1 Notes:

- The drug is expensive and has more value in differentiating trigeminal neuralgia cases (part of headshaking syndrome) from post-herpetic neuralgia and other forms of the headshaking syndrome.

104

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Major difficulty with this drug is short half-life in horses (2 hours) compared with humans (27 hours).

### 4.10.3 Diazepam

POM V/CD (S-IV)

**Indications:** Anticonvulsant, sedative, muscle relaxant.

Useful sedative/muscle relaxant and premedicant in foals.

**Presentation:** Solution for injection 5 mg/mL in 10 mL single-dose vials.

**Dose:** Pre-anaesthetic: 0.05-0.4 mg/kg IV (average 0.22 mg/kg).

*Status epilepticus:* up to 1 mg/kg (slow IV).

#### 4.10.3.1 Notes:

- Unacceptable ataxia if given alone to adult horses.
- Use slow IV injection (<1 min/10 mg).
- Causes thrombophlebitis.
- Minimal cardiovascular effects.
- Do not dilute or mix with other agents (may be mixed with ketamine provided used immediately).
- May replace GGE in induction regimes (especially foals).

### 4.10.4 Midazolam

POM V/CD (S-IV)

**Indications:** As for diazepam (anticonvulsant activities).

**Presentation:** 10 mg in 2 mL vials.

**Dose:** As for diazepam. IV dose titrated against the response.

#### 4.10.4.1 Notes:

- Short-acting benzodiazepine. Not yet evaluated in foals.
- Can be mixed with other agents. Does not cause thrombophlebitis.

104

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

105

### 4.10.5 Pentobarbitone

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Indications:** Sedation or anaesthesia of convulsive foals.

**Presentation:** Aqueous solution for injection (60 mg/mL) in 100 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 15-20 mg/kg IV OR 2-10 mg/kg for acute anticonvulsive therapy, pnr.

#### 4.10.5.1 Notes:

- Irritant but less so than thiopentone (thiopental)! (Catheter is advisable/obligatory.)
- **Not for any form of routine anaesthesia nor for anaesthesia of adult horses** (slow induction – more excitement).

**Do not use euthanasia solutions (200 mg/mL) for anaesthesia under any circumstances.**

### 4.10.6 Phenytoin

POM V

**Indications:** Anticonvulsive therapy in foals.

**Presentations:** Aqueous solution for IV injection 50 mg/mL.

25 mg and 100 mg capsules for oral dosing.

**Dose:** 5-10 mg/kg initial dose followed by 1-5 mg/kg q 2-4 h (reducing after 12 hours to q 6-12 h IV/PO pnr).

#### 4.10.6.1 Notes:

- Reduce dosage according to effect. Prolonged high doses may cause hepatic failure.

### 4.10.7 Primidone

POM V

**Indications:** Anticonvulsive therapy in foals.

**Presentation:** 250 mg tablet for oral dosing.

**Dose:** 2 g PO for 50 kg foal as loading dose, then 1 g q 12 h.

4.10.7.1

Notes:

- Long-term use may result in tolerance and/or hepatopathy.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

107

### <sup>5</sup> Section 2 Drugs acting on the cardiovascular system

#### 5.1 (a) ANGIOTENSIN CONVERTING ENZYME (ACE) INHIBITORS

##### 5.1.1 Enalapril

POM V

**Indications:** Aortic regurgitation, congestive heart failure (CHF), other conditions associated with cardiac enlargement (e.g. aortic valve (AV) regurgitation, and management of ventricular premature contractions (VPCs)).

**Dose:** 0.5 mg/kg q 24 h.

##### 5.1.1.1 Notes:

- Has been suggested to prolong useful performance of horses with moderate to severe aortic regurgitation (AR) even without CHF. Usually only temporary improvement in CHF.

#### 5.2 (b) ANTI-ARRHYTHMIC DRUGS

##### 5.2.1 Bretylium

POM V

**Indications:** Refractory ventricular fibrillation.

**Presentations:** 50 mg/mL injection; 10 mL bottle.

**Dose:** 3-5 mg/kg IV.

##### 5.2.2 Digoxin

POM V

**Indications:** Atrial fibrillation, congestive heart failure, supraventricular arrhythmias.

See 'Cardiac glycosides'.

##### 5.2.3 Flecainide

**Indications:** Class IC antidysrhythmic agent – blocks fast sodium channels.

**Dose:** IV infusion to a mean total dose of 1.4 mg/kg. Oral dose 4-6 mg/kg.

107

5.2.3.1

**Notes:**

- Peak concentrations achieved rapidly; plasma half-life less variable between horses than quinidine sulphate. Lack of gastrointestinal effects or vagolytic actions are advantageous.

**Side effects:** **Proarrhythmic effects.** Possibly greater risk of ventricular tachycardia than with quinidine sulphate.

5.2.4

**Glycopyrrolate**

POM V

**Indications:** Vagal-induced bradycardia.

See 'Anticholinergics'.

5.2.5

**Hyoscine**

POM V

**Indications:** Vagal-induced bradycardia.

See 'Anticholinergics'.

5.2.6

**Lidocaine (lignocaine)**

POM V

**Indications:** Class IB antidysrhythmic agent. Ventricular tachycardia.

**Presentations:** 1 mg/mL and 2 mg/mL in glucose intravenous infusion.

**Dose:** 0.5 mg/kg IV q 5 minutes. 2-4 mg/kg total maximum dose, **OR** 20-50 µg/kg/min IV infusion.

**Side effects:** Excitement reactions common in conscious horses. Control neurologic reactions with diazepam.

5.2.6.1

**Notes:**

- Drug of choice to control ventricular tachycardia during anaesthesia. Most effective in presence of high potassium – consider supplementation. NOT effective for supraventricular tachycardia.

5.2.7

**Magnesium sulphate**

**Indications:** *Torsades des pointes*, refractory ventricular tachycardia.

**Dose:** 4 mg/kg q 2 min; 50 mg/kg maximum total dose.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

5.2.7.1

### Notes:

- NOT effective for supraventricular tachycardia. Significant danger so calculate dose carefully and administer slowly.

108

5.2.8

### Phenytoin

109

(See also Drugs Acting on the Nervous System.)

POM V

**Indications:** Ventricular tachycardia induced by digoxin.

**Dose:** 7.5 mg/kg IV or 10 mg/kg PO q 24 h.

5.2.8.1

### Notes:

- Similar cardiovascular effects to lidocaine (lignocaine).

5.2.9

### Procainamide

POM V

**Indications:** Class IA antidysrhythmic agent. Ventricular tachycardia (**drug of choice in the conscious horse**).

**Presentations:** Tablets 250 mg; injection 100 mg/mL; 10 mL.

**Dose:** 1 mg/kg/min IV; 20 mg/kg maximum total dose.

5.2.9.1

### Notes:

- Not vagolytic, hypotension less of a problem than with quinidine, compatible with digoxin.

5.2.10

### Propafenone

POM V

**Indications:** Ventricular tachycardia.

**Dose:** 0.5-1 mg/kg IV during 5 min.

5.2.10.1

### Notes:

- Little known about effects as yet.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 5.2.11 Propranolol

POM V

**Indications:**  $\beta$ -adreno-receptor blocker. Has been suggested for control of rapid ventricular response rates during quinidine sulphate conversion of atrial fibrillation.

**Presentations:** Aqueous injection (1 mg/mL) 1 mL glass vial; tablets for oral use, 10 mg, 40 mg, 80 mg, 160 mg.

**Dose:** 0.03-0.15 mg/kg q 12 h IV slowly (over 2-4 minutes).

**Intravenous:** Days 1/2 – 25 mg q 12 h.

Days 3/4 – 50 mg q 12 h.

Days 5/6 – 75 mg q 12 h.

109

**Oral:** Days 1/2 – 175 mg q 8 h.

110

Days 3/4 – 275 mg q 8 h.

Days 5/6 – 350 mg/kg q 8 h.

#### 5.2.11.1 Notes:

- Usually begin at low dose and titrate to effect. Can be used to correct serious tachydysrhythmias produced by  $\beta_1$  agonist drugs.

**Side effects:** May cause bronchial smooth muscle constriction. Hepatic impairment increases the  $t_{1/2}$ , therefore decrease dosing frequency. **Drug is by definition a negative inotrope. Use in atrial fibrillation still unproven – use with caution.**

### 5.2.12 Quinidine gluconate

**Indications:** Class IA anti-dysrhythmic agent. Acute onset atrial fibrillation, ventricular tachycardia.

**Dose:** 1.1-2.2 mg/kg IV q 10 min; maximum total dose 12 mg/kg.

**Side effects:** Hypotension, increased serum concentrations of both drugs when used with digoxin.

#### 5.2.12.1 Notes:

- Limited availability. Not available in UK.

### 5.2.13 Quinidine sulphate

No applicable category.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Treatment of supraventricular cardiac arrhythmias (**atrial fibrillation**, supraventricular tachycardia).

Negative inotrope (systemic hypotension). Increases ventricular rate.

**Presentation:** Powder for oral administration.

**Dose:** 22 mg/kg PO q 2 h until effects seen or a total of 132 mg/kg. If fail to convert continue at 22 mg/kg PO q 6 h. Some cases take over 350 g to convert.

5.2.13.1

### Normal regime for 500 kg horse

- **Day 1:** test dose for idiosyncratic reaction (5 g) (by stomach tube in solution). If safe proceed to:
- **Day 2:** 10 gram doses (PO) at 2-hour intervals. (Note: many cardiologists do not consider this to be necessary.)
- Careful cardiac monitoring by clinical appraisal and continuous ECG (halter monitors or telemetry).
- Continue until conversion or up to 6th dose (i.e. total 60 grams).
- If not converted several different options have been suggested:
  - (a) 24 hours without therapy then repeat regime as before.
  - (b) Continue with quinidine sulphate at 22 mg/kg every 6 hours.
  - (c) 24 hours without therapy then repeat regime and additional digoxin (0.01 mg/kg orally q 12 h) until conversion.

110

111

#### After conversion:

- Rest for 4-5 weeks – check ECG.
- Gentle work 4-5 weeks – check ECG.

#### If failure to convert:

- Assay serum levels of drug to ensure a serum concentration of 5 µg/mL. Estimations of  $t_{1/2}$  are helpful to identify required individual dosing intervals.
- Horses, which persistently fail to convert, are likely to never do so. Long history of atrial fibrillation or other cardiac disease (e.g. valvular regurgitation and atrial enlargement) increases risk of non-conversion and toxicity.

5.2.13.1.1

#### Notes:

- TEST DOSE of 5 mg/kg (5 grams) given to detect untoward effects (nasal congestion, laryngeal and pulmonary oedema, urticaria, laminitis, colic, diarrhoea, cardiac arrhythmia).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Early indications of toxicity by >25% lengthening of QRS complex.
- Always test electrolyte status before conversion (especially  $K^+$ ).
- If congestive heart failure (CHF) present digitalise first (qv). **If no CHF is present DO NOT digitalise unless needed during conversion.**

**ABSORBED THROUGH HUMAN SKIN! (GLOVES + AVOID CONTACT).**

### 5.3 (c) CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES

#### 5.3.1 Digoxin

POM V

**Indications:** Positive inotrope (calcium influx), negative chronotrope (increased refractory period, decrease in conductivity through the myocardium, autonomic nervous system effects).

Parasympathomimetic (slowing of sino-atrial node, delayed conduction of AV node). Congestive heart failure, atrial fibrillation/flutter, supraventricular arrhythmias.

**Presentations:** Oral: 62.5 µg, 125 µg and 250 µg tablets; IV: 250 µg/mL injection in 2 mL single dose vials.

**Dose:** 11 µ/kg PO q 12 h or 2.5-5.0 µ/kg q 12 h IV.

111

#### 5.3.1.1 Notes:

112

- Horses with atrial fibrillation and concurrent congestive heart failure (CHF) and/or tachycardia should be digitalised before administration of quinidine sulphate (but those with no CHF should NOT). The two drugs should not be given simultaneously in theory but evidence suggests that low doses of digoxin may stabilise the ventricular activity during administration of quinidine sulphate for conversion. Decrease dose in renal disease.

**Side effects:** Include sudden death, A-V block, arrhythmias, anorexia, diarrhoea, and depression. Blood levels should be monitored carefully, particularly if no effects seen. Serious toxicity has been reported. ALWAYS DIGITALISE WITH EXTREME CARE – use regular ECG and auscultation monitoring of cardiac activity.

### 5.4 (d) ANTICHOLINERGICS

#### 5.4.1 Atropine sulphate BP

POM V

**Indications:** Parasympatholytic (anticholinergic, mydriatic, cycloplegic). Relief of smooth muscle spasm, antidote to parasympathomimetic drugs (including organophosphate). For intraoperative bradydysrhythmias due to increased parasympathetic tone. Bronchodilation.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Aqueous solution 600 mg/mL, multi-dose bottle.

**Dose:** Cardiac effects: 0.01-0.2 mg/kg IV or SQ.

Bronchodilator effect: 5 mg IV (450 kg horse).

Organophosphate poisoning: 1 mg/kg (to effect mydriasis and cessation of salivation) q 2-6 h as needed.

0.22 mg/kg SC/IM.

5.4.1.1

### Notes:

- Side effects (may be prolonged) – Sinus tachycardia, ectopic complexes; vision disturbances, mydriasis, photophobia, cycloplegia, increased intra-ocular pressure (mydriasis may cause panic – use darkened room); abdominal distension; ileus. Urinary retention.

5.4.2

### Glycopyrrolate

POM V

**Indications:** Anticholinergic (anti-muscarinic) actions similar to atropine but does not cross into CNS (fewer side effects). Treatment of bradydysrhythmias due to increased parasympathetic tone. During head and neck or ocular surgery to block vagal responses.

**Presentation:** Aqueous injection (0.2 mg/mL); 1 mL, 3 mL vials (human preparation).

112

**Dose:** Cardiac effects: 5-10 µg/kg IV; Bronchodilator effects: 2-3 mg IM q 12 h (450 kg horse).

113

5.4.2.1

### Notes:

- More expensive than atropine. Supposedly more potent anti-sialagogue with fewer arrhythmogenic tendencies.
- Advantage over atropine in the horse not proven but does decrease CNS effects.
- Incompatible with chloramphenicol, dexamethasone, diazepam, thiopentone (thiopental).

5.4.3

### Hyoscine

POM V

**Indications:** Vagally induced bradycardia.

**Dose:** 0.14 mg/kg IV.

**Side effects:** Central excitation, mydriasis, GI disturbances.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 5.5 (e) VASODILATING AGENTS

#### 5.5.1 Isoxuprine

POM V

**Indications:** Vasodilator of peripheral capillaries especially in skeletal muscle. Indicated in treatment of navicular disease and myoischaemia/myopathies. May have anti-inflammatory and anti-coagulant properties.

**Presentation:** Oral powder 30 mg/g.

**Dose:** 0.6-0.7 mg/kg PO q 12 h for 30 days. Some authors recommend continuing treatment at the same dose indefinitely, others suggest tapering the dose (q 24 h for 7 days, then alternate days) or stopping treatment altogether (remission only maintained for up to 9 months).

##### 5.5.1.1 Notes:

- 0.66 mg/kg requires 15 × 20 mg tabs for 450 kg horse. Refractory cases repeat regimen at 1.32 mg/kg for 6 weeks – if no change then discontinue and review options and diagnosis. Less likely to respond with severe radiographic changes. Consider combining with NSAIDs in first 4 weeks of therapy.

**Side effects:** High doses may impair platelet aggregation and reduce blood viscosity.

**NOT FOR PREGNANT MARES or where haemorrhagic disorders have been identified.**

113

### 5.6 (f) SHOCK TREATMENTS

114

#### 5.6.1 Adrenaline/epinephrine

POM V

**Indications:** Adrenergic ( $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ) effects.

Bronchodilator. Increases systolic blood pressure.

First-line drug in cardiac resuscitation.

Prolongs effect of local analgesics when given in combination.

Local capillary haemostasis.

**Presentation:** Clear, aqueous solution for injection, 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000).

**Doses:** 0.1-0.2 mL/50 kg by IV/IC injection.

0.2-0.4 mL/50 kg by IM or SC injection.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

5.6.1.1

### Notes:

- Care with dose calculation. Best to dilute to 1 in 10 000 using water for injection.
- Ophthalmic drops available and can have systemic effects.

**Side effects:** Anxiety, restlessness, tachycardia, ventricular arrhythmias.

5.6.2

### Dobutamine

POM V

**Indications:** Positive inotrope. Hypotension particularly during general anaesthesia. Inotropic agent indicated for short-term support in patients with cardiac decompensation due to decreased contractility. Possible use to increase cardiac output and tissue perfusion during endotoxaemia. Vascular effects are believed to be minimal in other species. At normal doses cardiac rates are also not significantly affected, but rates may increase at higher dosages.

**Presentation:** Dry powder, 250 mg/bottle or 250 mg solution for dilution.

**Dose:** Reconstitute with 1 litre 5% glucose or 0.9% saline to yield a solution having a concentration of 250 µg/mL. Administer IV at 1-5 µg/kg/min.

5.6.2.1

### Notes:

- ECG monitoring for tachyarrhythmias essential.
- Drug interactions: oxytocic drugs may cause a severe hypertension when used with dobutamine.
- Dobutamine may be ineffective if β-blocking drugs e.g. propranolol have recently been given.

114

5.6.3

### Dopamine

115

POM V

**Indications:** Correction of haemodynamic imbalances in shock. Oliguric renal failure.

**Presentations:** To prepare solution: add 250 mg to 1 L of normal saline, or Hartman's to give concentration of 250 µg/mL. \*250 mL flexible packs containing 200/400/800 µg/mL.

**Dose:** Variable according to effect desired (2-5 mg/kg/min) to promote urine output.

5-10 µg/kg/min for β<sub>1</sub> effect.

>10 µg/kg/min causes α effect.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

5.6.3.1

### Notes:

- Only used in intensive care (especially neonates).
- Severe necrosis/sloughing if extravascular injection occurs (if suspected infiltrate site with 5-10 mg phentolamine in 10-15 mL normal saline). Monitor urine flow, cardiac rate/rhythm/blood pressure. In case of severe arrhythmias (e.g. ventricular premature contractions) discontinue administration.
- Half-life 5-9 minutes.

See also: **FLUID THERAPY, CORTICOSTEROIDS.**



### 6 Section 3 Drugs acting on the respiratory system

#### 6.1 (a) BRONCHODILATORS

##### 6.1.1 1. Sympathomimetics – receptor agonists.

Specific and non-specific agents ( $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  receptors).

Specific  $\beta_2$  agonists prevent side effects associated with  $\beta_1$  stimulation.

Very effective bronchodilators.

Decreased release of inflammatory mediators.

Enhanced ciliary activity and less viscous secretions.

Aerosolised preparations offer decreased systemic effects.

##### 6.1.2 2. Parasympatholytics.

Antagonism of the parasympathetic muscarinic receptors on airway smooth muscle.

Systemic preparations not used in respiratory disease due to potential for severe side effects (e.g. ileus).

Aerosolised preparations offer decreased systemic effects.

##### 6.1.3 3. Xanthine derivatives.

Bronchodilation via inhibition of phosphodiesterase and other mechanisms.

May increase tidal volume by stimulation of the medulla.

Less effective than  $\beta$  receptor agonists in chronic respiratory disease (action affected by airway remodelling).

CNS and myocardial stimulants and diuretics.

##### 6.1.4 Clenbuterol

POM V

**Indications:** Specific  $\beta_2$  agonist with sympathomimetic effects. Bronchodilation and increased mucociliary clearance. Acute and long-term therapy of recurrent airway obstruction (RAO, 'heaves') and inflammatory airway disease (IAD). Also used to induce uterine relaxation during parturition or to prevent early placental separation and delay or reduce uterine contraction during obstetric manipulations.

**Presentations:**

Granules for oral feed administration 0.016 mg/g (1 level measure/200 kg q 12 h).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Syrup for oral dosing/in feed 25 µg/mL (4 mL/125 kg q 12 h).

117

Aqueous solution for injection 30 µg/mL (2.7 mL/100 kg q 12 h by slow IV injection).

118

Powder in combination with TMP/S for oral administration 21.44 µg/g clenbuterol hydrochloride (1 level measure/250 kg q 12 h for up to 10 days).

**Dose:** 0.8 mg/kg PO/IV q 12 h.

6.1.4.1

### Notes:

- Intravenous dose useful for immediate relief of bronchospasm (effective for 12 hours, follow by oral preparation q 12 hours). Combination preparation with potentiated sulphonamides useful if bacterial infection present. Most used bronchodilator for long-term therapy of RAO; must be combined with strict environmental dust control and corticosteroid administration (systemic – short-term/inhaled – long-term).

**Side effects:** Sweating, tachycardia, transient muscle tremors and restlessness are more common with intravenous administration. Minimised by slow administration. Antagonises effects of PGF<sub>2</sub> α and oxytocin.

**Contraindications:** High doses may reduce uterine contractions therefore discontinue use in pregnant mares at expected delivery time. Withdrawal periods. Do not use in horses intended for human consumption.

6.1.5

### Etamphyline camsylate

POM V

**Indications:** Xanthine derivative (see above 'xanthine derivatives' for actions). Respiratory disease (relief of bronchospasm and pulmonary oedema). Cardiovascular collapse (myocardial stimulation and relief of pulmonary oedema). Respiratory stimulation of neonates (see 'Respiratory stimulants').

### Presentations:

Aqueous solution 140 mg/mL for injection IM/SC (10 mL/horse!).

White soluble powder for oral administration 300 mg/sachet (1 sachet/100 kg BW).

**Dose:** 3 mg/kg IM/SC/PO q 8 h. Reduce to lowest effective dose after 2 weeks.

6.1.5.1

### Notes:

- Diuretic properties are possibly insignificant. Can be given IV slow/diluted. Used as bronchodilator mostly superseded by specific 2 agonists.

**Side effects:** No data in pregnant animals, CNS stimulation that is readily countered if necessary by the use of a suitable hypnotic.

In overdoses hypokalaemia and convulsions may occur. Treat with intravenous infusion of potassium chloride and intravenous diazepam respectively.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Contraindications:** Jockey Club Rules state: use to be discontinued 7 days before racing.

118

### 6.1.6 Ipratropium bromide

119

POM V

**Indications:** Parasympatholytic. Conditions in which bronchospasm is a problem (RAO; IAD).

**Presentation:** Metered dose inhaler, 90 µg/puff.

**Dose:** 2-3 µg/kg q 6 h maximum; inhaled.

#### 6.1.6.1 Notes:

- Not effective if extensive airway remodelling has occurred.
- Minimal systemic absorption following inhalation.
- No adverse effect on mucociliary clearance. Effects are short lived.

### 6.1.7 Salbutamol

POM V

**Indications:** Short-acting specific  $\beta_2$  agonist.

Acute exacerbations of recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO) and short-term therapy of inflammatory airway disease (IAD).

Lung function testing to assess reversibility of the condition.

**Dose:** 2 µ/kg inhaled q 12 h.

#### 6.1.7.1 Notes:

- Rapid onset of action.
- Not suitable for long-term treatment of recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO) (short-acting).
- Regular use of  $\beta_2$  agonists in the absence of anti-inflammatory medication (corticosteroids) may mask progression of the disease (particularly further airway obstruction with mucus).

**Side effects:** Low incidence, excessive use (or in sensitive individuals) may result in systemic effects of trembling, anxiety and cardiac arrhythmias. Sometimes transient paradoxical bronchoconstriction occurs.

### 6.1.8 Salmeterol

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

**Indications:** Long-acting  $\beta_2$  agonist.

Long-term therapy of recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO).

**Dose:** 210  $\mu\text{g}$  q 12-24 h inhaled.

119

6.1.8.1

### Notes:

- Slow onset of action – not suitable for acute crisis.
- Duration of action normally 6-8 hours.
- May have other beneficial effects in management of recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO) (inhibition of smooth muscle proliferation; increased force of contraction of the diaphragm and intercostal muscles; mild anti-inflammatory action on neutrophils; epithelial protective agent and improved mucociliary function).
- Regular use of  $\beta_2$  agonists in the absence of anti-inflammatory medication may mask progression of the disease.
- Long-term therapy of RAO requires concurrent environmental management and corticosteroid therapy.

120

**Side effects:** Few side effects reported.

Excessive use (or in sensitive individuals) may result in systemic effects of trembling, anxiety and cardiac arrhythmias.

6.1.9

### Terbutaline sulphate

POM V/CD (S-IV)

**Indications:**  $\beta_2$ -receptor agonist – more-or-less specific for respiratory/bronchial receptors. Has largely been replaced by more specific and effective clenbuterol. May be useful in acute respiratory distress as nebulised preparation.

**Dose:** 0.025-0.13 mg/kg q 8 h PO.

**Presentation:** Syrup 0.3 mg/mL for oral use; respules 2.5 mg/mL for use with nebuliser/respirator.

6.1.9.1

### Notes:

- Not licensed for animal use.

6.1.10

Side effects: Higher doses may stimulate  $\beta_1$  receptors

Major side effects limit use in horses.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Sweating and CNS signs can develop.

Cardiac dysrhythmias may need treatment with  $\beta$ -blockers (e.g. propranolol).

### 6.1.11 Theophylline

**Indications:** xanthine derivative. Bronchodilation, mild diuretic, CNS stimulant. Supportive therapy for recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO), inflammatory airway disease (IAD) and congestive heart failure (with pulmonary oedema).

**Dose:** 12 mg/kg IV initial dose then 6 mg/kg IV q 12 h.

120

#### 6.1.11.1 Notes:

121

- IV solutions should be diluted in >100 mL of water/isotonic saline for injection. Administer very slowly. Not IM. Diuretic effect is weak therefore rarely used alone as diuretics.

**Side effects:** Excitement, tremors and visual disturbances may be induced.

Antagonistic effect with  $\beta$ -blockers, e.g. propranolol.

**Contraindications:** Pregnancy; myocardial disease.

### 6.2 (b) ANTIHISTAMINES

**Definition:** In the true sense these are chemicals that block the action of histamine at receptor sites. They may also stabilise mast cells and have antiserotonin properties. Many mediators other than histamine are responsible for hypersensitivity reactions. Antihistamines have limited use only.

#### 6.2.1 Chlorpheniramine (chlorphenamine) maleate

**Indications:** Histamine 1 receptor antagonist. Premedication for drugs that may induce anaphylactic reactions; pruritus in allergic skin disorders; compulsive scratching. Unlikely to be useful in respiratory disease in horses.

**Presentations:** Tablets 4 mg; syrup 400  $\mu$ g/mL.

**Dose:** 0.25 mg/kg q 12 h PO.

#### 6.2.1.1 Note:

- Limited success in horses.

**Side effects:** Minimal. Light sedation or behavioural changes.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 6.2.2 Cyproheptadine hydrochloride

**Indications:** Serotonin antagonist with anticholinergic and antihistaminic effects. Pituitary pars intermedia dysfunction (PPID/equine Cushing's disease syndrome).

Photic headshaking.

**Dose:**

PPID: adjunct to pergolide; if no response to pergolide (0.004-0.006 mg/kg) see below and endocrinological tests remain abnormal, addition of 0.3-0.5 mg/kg of cyproheptadine may improve the clinical status.

Headshaking: 0.3 mg/kg q 12 h for 1 week. If no response increase by 0.1 mg/kg every week thereafter for a further 3 weeks.

#### 6.2.2.1 Notes:

- Rarely used alone for PPID. Limited success in headshaking.

121

**Side effects:** Few reported adverse effects in horses; occasional drowsiness and even stupor at high doses. These are usually transient and are worst following the first administration. In humans, drowsiness, nausea, ataxia and anorexia are reported.

122

### 6.2.3 Doxylamine succinate

POM V

**Indications:** Ethanolamine derivative antihistamine. Completely inhibits histamine at H<sub>1</sub> receptors. For conditions in which antihistaminic therapy may be expected to alleviate some signs of disease (allergic respiratory disease/dermatitis).

**Presentations:** Tablets 100 mg PO injection, 11.36 mg/mL; 250 mL vial.

**Dose:** 0.55 mg/kg IV (slowly), IM, SC q 8-12 h.

2.2-4.4 mg/kg/day maintenance therapy PO divided q 6-8 h.

#### 6.2.3.1 Notes:

- Pharmacokinetic data unavailable in horses. T<sub>1/2</sub> 10 hours in humans (no information in horses).

**Side effects:** Substantial sedative/anticholinergic effects. May decrease gastrointestinal motility.

May enhance effect of epinephrine (adrenaline). May partially counteract anticoagulant effects of heparin or warfarin.

Overdose may cause CNS stimulation with excitement, seizures and ataxia. Supportive treatment.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Contraindications:** Individuals with known hypersensitivity to this compound or other antihistamines in the same class; horses for human consumption. Use with caution in horses with RAO if mucus secretion is a problem. Use with caution in animals with cardiac disease or decreased bladder emptying.

6.2.4

### Hydroxyzine hydrochloride

POM V

**Indications:** Prophylaxis and control of respiratory tract allergic conditions (RAO/SAD). Allergic dermatitis (insect hypersensitivity).

May be useful in some cases of headshaking if an allergic trigger factor is present.

**Presentation:** 25 mg tablets in foil wraps of 28 tablets.

**Dose:**

Dermatitis/respiratory: 1-1.5 mg/kg q 8 h IM or PO.

Headshaking: 1.4 mg/kg q 12 h PO.

122

6.2.4.1

#### Notes:

- Little evidence for efficacy in RAO/SAD. Most useful antihistamine for insect hypersensitivity (sweet itch) and other pruritic dermatosis. Less effective than corticosteroids in allergic dermatitis but fewer side effects. Treatment of urticaria is usually disappointing; remission in 3-4 days if going to be useful. Very few cases of headshaking will respond. Can be combined with carbamazepine in treatment of headshaking.

123

**Side effects:** Some sedative effects can be seen early in the treatment course. Usually this subsides.

6.2.5

### Pyrilamine maleate (mepyramine)

POM V

**Indications:** Ethylenediamine antihistamine. H<sub>1</sub> receptor antagonist. For conditions in which antihistaminic therapy may be expected to alleviate some signs of disease (allergic respiratory disease/dermatitis).

Suggested use in laminitis.

**Dose:** 0.88-1.32 mg/45 kg (2.3 mL of 20 mg/mL solution) slow IV/IM/SC q 6-12 h if necessary.

Allergic skin conditions may require 1 mg/kg q 12 h.

For foals: 0.44 mg/45 kg (1 mL of 20 mg/mL) by slow IV/IM/SC q 6-12 h if necessary.

**Side effects:** as above for doxylamine; CNS stimulation, GI disturbances, palpitation, CNS depression, anorexia. Supportive treatment.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

6.2.5.1

### Note:

Approved for use in horses not intended for food use only.

6.2.6

### Sodium cromoglycate (sodium cromoglicate)

POM V

**Indications:** Mast cell inhibitor (stabilises membranes, blocks degranulation and decreases amount of histamine in mast cells). Prophylaxis and control of respiratory tract allergic conditions (recurrent airway obstructive disease [RAO]; summer pasture associated allergic airway disease [SPOAD]).

**Dose:** Single ampoule administered via nebuliser (mask), q 24 h for 1-4 days.

6.2.6.1

### Notes:

- Most extensively used and studied mast cell inhibitor in horses to date. Single course (4 days) expected to provide prophylaxis for 3-20 days. (Not predictable). MUST be accompanied by full range of management/supportive measures. THIS IS NOT A TREATMENT FOR RAO/SPOAD – it is a prophylactic compound and is not effective in acute attack. Sometimes resented by horses (possibly bad taste).

123

6.2.7

### Nedocromil sodium

124

Has been recently used in horses. Longer duration of action and possibly more potent than the above.

**Dose:** Suggested dose is 17.5 mg q 12-24 h.

**Presentation:** Nebuliser solution; 4 mL glass/plastic ampoule containing 80 mg sodium cromoglycate (sodium cromoglicate).

**Side effects:** May cause cough.

**Contraindications:** Manufacturer recommends that it is not administered in first trimester of pregnancy.

6.3

### (c) ANTITUSSIVES

Coughing is a protective mechanism and aids in elimination of excessive bronchial secretions. Antitussives should not be used if the cough is productive. They are rarely used as therapy in horses but may be useful to aid diagnostic respiratory tract procedures, e.g. bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL).

6.3.1

### Butorphanol tartrate

POM V/CD (S-IV)

**Indications:** Mixed opioid agonist–antagonist.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Effective antitussive useful for control of coughing during diagnostic procedures of the respiratory tract (e.g. bronchoalveolar lavage).

Analgesia and sedation (see 'Opioids' – 'Drugs acting on the CNS').

**Presentations:** 10 mg/mL for injection; 10 mL multidose bottle.

**Dose:**

For sedation with detomidine: 12 µg/kg detomidine hydrochloride (0.1 mL/100 kg *Domosedan*<sup>TM</sup>) followed within 5 minutes by 25 mg/kg butorphanol (0.25 mL/100 kg *Torbugesic*<sup>TM</sup>) intravenously. Clinical experience has shown that a total dose of 0.5 mL detomidine and 100 µg butorphanol affords effective safe sedation in horses above 200 kg bodyweight.

For sedation with romifidine: 40-120 mg/kg romifidine (0.4-1.2 mL *Sedivet*<sup>TM</sup>/100 kg) followed by 20 mg/kg butorphanol (0.2 mL *Torbugesic*<sup>TM</sup>/100 kg) intravenously.

6.3.1.1

**Notes:**

- Analgesia is produced until a certain point is reached – increasing the dose does not produce further analgesia. Increasing doses do not progressively depress respiration in a dose-dependent fashion.

**Side effects:** Mild to severe ataxia may occur. Decreased GI motility.

**Contraindications:**

*Torbugesic/Domosedan:* Liver disease; pregnant mares; pre-existing cardiac dysrhythmia or bradycardia; horses for human consumption. **Do not use intravenous trimethoprim sulpha antibiotics by injection before/after sedation with detomidine.**

124

125

*Torbugesic/Sedivet:* Liver disease; last month of pregnancy; horses for human consumption.

6.3.2

**Codeine phosphate BP**

POM V/CD (S-V)

**Indications:** Opioid analgesic. Diarrhoea. Suppression of non-productive cough.

**Presentation:** Codeine phosphate (non-proprietary): tablets 60 mg.

**Dose:** 0.2-2 g/day.

6.3.2.1

**Notes:**

- Little analgesic activity. Symptomatic treatment only.

**Side effects:** Constipation.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Contraindications:** Known hepatic disease; respiratory conditions with excess secretion; CNS depression.

### 6.3.3 Diphenhydramine

POM V

**Indications:** Suppression of coughing.

**Presentation:** Linctus for oral dosing.

**Dose:** 25-30 mL PO q 8 h.

**Side effects and contraindications:** Mild sedation may follow. **Do NOT use if animal is to be ridden.**

### 6.4 (d) MUCOLYTICS

Mucolytics reduce mucus viscosity and allow more effective mucociliary clearance.

#### 6.4.1 Acetylcysteine

**Indications:** Mucolytic used for control and treatment of respiratory conditions associated with excess mucus (e.g. of recurrent airway obstructive disease RAO), inflammatory airway disease (IAD), sinusitis).

**Presentations:** Acetylcysteine (non-proprietary) – oral powder (10 mg/g); aqueous solution for injection (3 mg/mL).

**Dose:** 0.1-0.3 mg/kg oral daily for up to 5 days or longer.

1.5 mg/kg IM/IV q 12 h.

Enema: (4% solution); 8 g acetylcysteine, 20 g baking soda ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ), 200 mL water.

125

#### 6.4.1.1 Notes:

- Potential dose may be useful initially followed by oral use. May safely be administered over prolonged courses.

126

#### 6.4.2 Bromhexine HCl

POM V

**Indications:** Assists control and treatment of respiratory tract infections and hypersensitivity conditions where there is excess mucus (e.g. sinusitis, bronchitis).

**Presentations:** Oral powder (10 mg/g); aqueous solution for injection (3 mg/mL).

**Dose:** 0.1-0.3 mg/kg oral/IM daily for up to 5 days or longer.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

6.4.2.1

### Notes:

- Parenteral dose may be useful initially followed by oral use. May safely be administered over prolonged courses. May be mixed with sulphonamides/potentiated sulphonamides for oral use.

**Contraindications:** Minimal. Not in horses for human consumption.

6.4.3

### Dembrexine

POM V

**Indications:** Assists control and treatment of respiratory tract infections and hypersensitivity conditions where there is excess mucus (e.g. sinusitis, bronchitis).

**Presentation:** Powder 5 mg/gram active ingredient. Multidose 420 g tub.

**Dose:** 0.3 mg/kg in feed q 12 h for 12-14 days.

6.4.3.1

### Notes:

- Very safe. Useful adjunct to management of upper and lower respiratory tract infections – hastens return to normal function. Do not exceed 28 days' treatment (reassess diagnosis and management). Concurrent antibiotics may be indicated. May be mixed with sulphonamides/potentiated sulphonamides and/or clenbuterol for oral use.

**Contraindications:** No data in pregnant mares.

6.5

### (e) RESPIRATORY STIMULANTS

These are primarily used to stimulate apnoeic neonates. They may be used with caution to reverse respiratory depression associated with general anaesthesia, sedative or hypnotic drugs – but they can paradoxically worsen hypoxia or induce seizures. Ensure adequate airway and ventilation first.

126

6.5.1

### Crotethamide/cropropamide

127

POM V

**Indications:** Respiratory stimulation in newborn animals. Stimulation of respiration following anaesthesia, sedatives or hypnotic drugs.

**Presentations:** Aqueous solution for oral administration; 75 mg crotethamide and 75 mg cropropamide.

**Dose:** Up to 5 mL/foal PO.

Deposit on one side of tongue, can repeat in 30 seconds if no response. Do not repeat more than twice.

**Side effects:** May be more likely than doxapram to induce seizures.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Contraindications:** Inadequate airway/ventilation.

### 6.5.2 Doxapram hydrochloride

POM V

**Indications:** Respiratory stimulation in newborn animals. Stimulation of respiration following anaesthesia, sedatives or hypnotic drugs.

**Presentations:** Drops for sublingual use; vials for topical sublingual or parenteral use.

**Dose:**

Neonates: 0.5-1.0 mg/kg IV/SC/IM or sublingual 40-100 mg equivalent to 80-200 drops (2-5 mL).

Adults: 0.5-1.0 mg/kg IV.

#### 6.5.2.1 Notes:

- Adjust dose to effect, adequate but not excessive doses should be used.

**Side effects:** Convulsions. Excessive doses may produce hyperventilation (possibility of induced brain damage).

**Contraindications:** Convulsions, renal or hepatic disease, hypocalcaemia.

### 6.5.3 Etamphyline camsylate

POM V

**Indications:** Xanthine derivative (p. 131, 'xanthine derivatives' for actions). Respiratory disease (relief of bronchospasm and pulmonary oedema). Cardiovascular collapse (myocardial stimulation and relief of pulmonary oedema). Respiratory stimulation – neonates and drug-induced respiratory depression. Non-specific CNS stimulant. Alters the respiratory centre sensitivity to carbon dioxide.

**Presentations:** Aqueous solution 140 mg/mL for injection IM/SC. Adults = 10 mL/500 kg horse; foals = 5 mL/50 kg foal.

**Dose:** Adults: 3 mg/kg IM/SC q 8 h.

Neonatal resuscitation: 700 mg IV.

127

#### 6.5.3.1 Notes:

- Diuretic properties low. Can be given IV slow/diluted. Useful in foals if no response to mechanical stimulation – ensure oxygenation first.

128

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

**Side effects:** No data in pregnant animals. CNS stimulation – treat if necessary by the use of a suitable hypnotic. In overdoses hypokalaemia and convulsions may occur – treat with intravenous infusion of potassium chloride and intravenous diazepam respectively.

**Contraindications:** Jockey Club Rules state: use discontinued 7 days before racing.

### 6.6 (f) CORTICOSTEROIDS

Most effective therapy for control of recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO). Decrease smooth muscle contraction and epithelial damage, inhibit inflammatory cells and their mediators, potentiate bronchodilatory effect of catecholamines, decrease mucus production. Maximum clinical effect seen within 2-7 days. Combine with bronchodilators to provide symptomatic relief (especially in the acute crisis). Inhaled and systemic preparations used. Inhaled forms achieve high local concentrations and minimise systemic side effects. Prolonged use of high doses of systemic drugs should be avoided. Remember the more potent the anti-inflammatory effect the greater potential for side effects. The preparations commonly used in RAO are outlined below. For information regarding side effects and further indications see 'Hormones/steroids' (p. 147) and 'NSAIDS – Adrenal corticoids' (p. 152).

#### 6.6.1 Systemic

1. **Dexamethasone:** Most useful in a severe attack. 0.05-0.1 mg/kg IV q 24 h followed by decremental doses and alternate day doses IM. Suggested maximum of 3-5 days to avoid systemic effects. **Check formulation before injection – confirm route compatibility.**
2. **Isoflupredone:** Same efficacy as dexamethasone in RAO. 10-14 mg IM for 5 days then alternate days and taper to low dose over 10-20 days.
3. **Triamcinolone acetate:** Long acting (at least 5 weeks clinical efficacy). Do not use unless short-acting preparations are absolutely not an option due to potential for side effects.
4. **Prednisolone:** Less potent/less side effects. Useful for longer-term management if inhaled preparations not an option. 1 mg/kg q 24 h in feed in the morning – decremental doses over 4-6 weeks to minimum effective dose.

**NB Prednisone has no clinical efficacy in horses (it is poorly absorbed from the equine gut).**

#### 6.6.2 Inhaled

Drugs of choice for long-term therapy. Concurrent use of a bronchodilator may enhance delivery and will provide symptomatic relief.

1. **Beclomethasone (beclometasone) dipropionate:** Available as a measured dose inhalant (MDI). Improvement seen in 3-4 days. 3500 µg/horse q 12 h (µg/puff depends on formulation).
2. **Fluticasone propionate:** Available as an MDI. 2000 µg/horse q 12 h (µg/puff depends on formulation).

128

129

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 6.6.3 Aerosolised steroid drugs

Aerosols are finely suspended solid or liquid particles in a gas. At present corticosteroids and bronchodilators are used clinically in aerosol form in the horse. For all aerosolised drugs the delivered pulmonary concentration depends on the formulation of the product, the delivery device, correct operator use, patient co-operation and the disease process (degree of airway obstruction). Aerosols are available in three forms:

1. **Dry powder inhalants:** Pulmonary drug delivery decreased in conditions of high relative humidity (>95%). Compatible delivery devices are:
  - 'Equipoudre' (Agritronics Int).
  - 'Equine Aeromask' with adaptor (Trudell Medical International).
2. **Metered dose inhalers (MDI):** Drug in prepared canister designed to release a specific dose on each activation. Main advantage of consistent dose release. Most now propelled by hydrofluoroalkane-134a (HFA) an environmentally friendly product which has largely replaced the old CFC-driven preparations. The delivered dose of each drug depends on its propellant type (check manufacturer's instructions). Compatible delivery devices are:
  - 'Equine haler' (Equine Healthcare APS), spacer device, hand held, fits over one nostril, use with MDIs only, drug wastage at external nares, most likely to be well tolerated.
  - 'Equine Aeromask' (Trudell Medical International) – versatile (MDIs, nebulisers and dry powders), fits over the entire muzzle, drug wastage at external nares and upper respiratory tract, compliance may be poor in some horses.
  - 'Equine aerosol drug delivery system' (3M animal products) – intranasal hand-held device, only supplied with albuterol sulphate as single-use canister (*Torpex<sup>TM</sup>*; Boehringer-Ingelheim), Not appropriate for MDIs, very efficient pulmonary drug delivery, more invasive to use therefore may be decreased compliance in some horses.

#### 6.6.3.0.0.0.1 Note:

Careful technique is required with all the devices to minimise drug wastage.

3. **Nebuliser solutions:** Less widely used than the other two forms. Require special nebuliser unit or can be used with 'Equine Aeromask'. Useful for delivery of some human asthmatic drugs. Disadvantage of potential for environmental contamination of delivered solution.

129

## 6.7 (g) ANTIBIOTICS

130

Table 3.3

Condition	Predisposing factors	Commonly involved organisms	Suggested empirical antibiotic therapy	Samples for culture and sensitivity
Bacterial pneumonia	Stress, viral infection, transport	Gram +ve: <i>Strep. zooepidemicus</i> (opportunistic, most commonly involved in early stages, prolonged condition may have involvement of Gram – ve organisms and anaerobes as for pleuropneumonia)	Benzyl sodium penicillin and gentamicin. Third-generation cephalosporin good alternative. (Anaerobic infection should be suspected if there is brown nasal discharge and foul odour – include metronidazole in therapy)	Tracheal aspirate
Pleuropneumonia	General anaesthesia, head held in upright position for prolonged periods, long-distance travel, thoracic trauma	Gram +ve: <i>Strep. zooepidemicus</i> Gram – ve: <i>E.coli</i> ; <i>Klebsiella</i> ; <i>Pasteurella</i> , anaerobes e.g. <i>Bacteroides</i>	Benzyl sodium penicillin, gentamicin, and metronidazole	Pleural fluid and tracheal aspirate. (Sample fluid from both sides of the chest as bacterial populations may differ)

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

131

### 7 Section 4 Drugs acting on the urinary tract

#### 7.1 (a) DIURETICS

Increase urinary excretion of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water. Classified according to their site of action in the renal nephron. **Carbonic anhydrase (CA) inhibitors**, **osmotic agents** and **xanthines** act on the proximal convoluted tubule. **Loop diuretics** act on the ascending loop of Henlé. **Thiazides** act on the early distal convoluted tubule.  **$\text{K}^+$  sparing diuretics** act on the late distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct.

##### 7.1.1 Furosemide (frusemide)

POM V

**Actions:** Loop diuretic. Increased venous capacitance.

**Indications:** Oedematous conditions, congestive heart failure, oliguric renal failure, cerebral oedema, exercise-induced pulmonary haemorrhage.

**Presentations:** Aqueous 5% solution for injection (50 mg/mL), 10 mL multidose vial.

**Dose:** 0.5-1.0 mg/kg IV q 12-24 h pnr.

##### 7.1.1.1 Notes:

- Potent diuretic. Rapid onset (increased  $\text{Na}^+$ /water excretion without significant loss of  $\text{K}^+$  over short courses). Majority of drug excreted unchanged in the urine within 4 hours. Monitor electrolytes over treatment course. Effects on exercise-induced pulmonary haemorrhage limited/equivocal (1-2 hours pre-racing, permissible in certain countries/states only). Oliguric renal failure – use if horse remains oliguric after 12-24 hours of appropriate fluid and electrolyte replacement, administer at 1 mg/kg IV q 2 h. If urine is not voided after the 2nd dose mannitol (1 mg/kg as a 10-20% solution) can be added.

**Side effects:** Prolonged use may cause significant hypokalaemia – arrhythmia, increased susceptibility to cardiac glycoside toxicity. Consider potassium supplementation during use especially if concurrent anorexia. Hypovolaemia (in excessive use). Electrolyte alterations in the endolymph of the inner ear may exacerbate effects of ototoxic drugs (e.g. aminoglycoside antibiotics).

**Contraindications:** Glomerulonephritis, urinary obstruction, electrolyte deficiency syndromes.

131

##### 7.1.2 Mannitol

132

POM V

**Actions:** Osmotic diuretic (unabsorbed solute in proximal tubule causes diuresis). Saluretic effect low (ability to promote  $\text{Na}^+$ , and  $\text{Cl}^-$  loss). Increased renal medullary blood flow.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Reduction of intracranial (CSF) and intra-ocular pressure. Adjunct to furosemide (frusemide) in oliguric renal failure (see above).

**Presentations:** Mannitol: 25% solution (250 mg/mL) in 50 mL single dose vial.

**Dose:** 0.25-2.0 g/kg slow IV (drip) as 20% solution (never stronger).

7.1.2.1

### Notes:

- Check for crystals (warm solution) – always use in-line filter. Monitor electrolytes throughout usage especially in oliguric renal failure.

**Side effects:** Extravascular injection causes thrombophlebitis.

**Contraindications:** Congestive heart failure, pulmonary oedema. (Initial expansion of ECF because minimal  $\text{Na}^+/\text{Cl}^-$  loss accompanies water loss. Oedema may be exacerbated leading to decompensation.) Do NOT mix with other electrolyte solutions unless very diluted (precipitates)!

7.2

## (b) OTHER DRUGS

7.2.1

### Ammonium chloride

**Indications:** Urinary acidification in attempt to dissolve urinary calculi especially of the sabulous types. Enhances renal excretion of some drugs, e.g. quinidine sulphate and effect of urinary antiseptics and antibiotics which work better in acid solution e.g. tetracycline and penicillin G (c.f. aminoglycosides work best in alkaline solution).

**Dose:** 4-15 g q 24 h PO.

7.2.1.1

### Notes:

- Do not use commercially available enteric-coated tablets (unchanged in gut!). Palatability is questionable (smell of ammonia not liked!). Monitor electrolytes.

**Contraindications:** Hepatic failure/compromise, renal failure.

7.2.2

### Bethanecol chloride

POM V

**Actions:** Muscarinic agonist.

**Indications:** Primarily used to stimulate bladder contractions in paralytic bladder syndromes e.g. sorghum poisoning, idiopathic bladder paralysis.

Also used as oesophageal and intestinal prokinetic.

132

133

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentations:** Tablets 10 mg, 25 mg, and 100 mg.

**Dose:** 0.05 mg/kg q 24 h oral or subcutaneous; 0.11-0.22 mg/kg IV (start at lower dose first and use very cautiously).

**Contraindications:** Urinary obstruction.

### 7.3 (c) ANTIBIOTICS

General principles of antibiotic use for urinary tract infection (UTI):

- **Lower UTI:** continue therapy for at least 1 week.
- **Upper UTI:** Continue therapy for at least 2 to 6 weeks.
- Collect midstream urine sample for culture/sensitivity before initiation of therapy; 2 to 4 days into treatment and 1 to 2 weeks after treatment has been discontinued.
- If the UTI recurs and the same organism is isolated, suspect primary underlying disorder as focus of infection e.g. urolithiasis.

Table 3.4

<b>Trimethoprim/sulphonamide</b>	Usually good efficacy. Consider the metabolism of the sulphonamide. e.g. <b>Sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine):</b> is excreted largely unchanged in the urine therefore is a good choice.
<b>Penicillin and ampicillin</b>	Upper or lower urinary tract infections caused by susceptible <i>Corynebacterium</i> spp., <i>Streptococcus</i> spp. and <i>Staphylococcus</i> spp. Ampicillin is highly concentrated in urine and therefore may be effective even if <i>in vitro</i> resistance reported. In horses with severely compromised renal function potentiated penicillins (e.g. ticarcillin) may be an alternative to aminoglycosides.
<b>Gentamicin/amikacin</b>	Nephrotoxic. Reserve for highly resistant organisms or acute life-threatening Gram -ve infections.
<b>Cephalosporins</b>	Concentrated in urine. Broad-spectrum.
<b>Fluoroquinolones</b>	Enrofloxacin useful in resistant cases.

### 8 Section 5 Drugs acting on the gastrointestinal tract

#### 8.1 (a) ANTACIDS/ANTI-ULCER DRUGS

##### 8.1.1 Cimetidine

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Used to treat/prevent gastric and duodenal ulcers in adults and foals. Histamine ( $H_2$ ) receptor antagonist (competitively inhibits histamine so reducing acid output from stomach). Adjunct therapy for metabolic alkalosis.

Interesting immunomodulation effect (reverses suppressor T-cell mediated immune suppression) – used for treatment of melanoma.

Weak anti-androgenic activity.

**Presentations:** Tablet for oral use, 400 mg.

Syrup for oral use, 40 mg/mL.

Injection, 100 mg/mL (2 mL vials).

**Dose:** 8-10 mg/kg IV q 6-8 h.

20-25 mg/kg PO q 6-8 h.

##### 8.1.1.1 Notes:

- Poor gut absorption so higher oral doses. Reduced hepatic clearance of warfarin,  $\beta$ -blockers, quinidine sulphate, metronidazole, diazepam. Stagger dose (2 hours) when used with sucralfate – often impractical and effect on activity of sucralfate is only marginally improved (still a strong acid medium!). Clinical improvement may occur without lesion healing so follow up gastroscopy/withdrawal from performance or stressors recommended in addition. Important to appreciate parietal cells can secrete acid via other mechanisms, so histamine inhibition not gold standard.

**Side effects:** Rare; diarrhoea and or dizziness reported in humans.

##### 8.1.2 Omeprazole

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Omeprazole is a substituted benzimidazole, acting as a proton pump inhibitor resulting in complete suppression of gastric acid secretion by specific inhibition of the  $H^+/K^+$  ATPase enzyme system at the secretory surface of the parietal cells.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

136

**Gold standard** for treatment of equine gastric ulceration syndromes (adults and foals).

**Presentation:** Oral capsules, 10 mg, 20 mg, 40 mg.

Oral paste in syringes, 400 mg/unit.

**Dose:** 4 mg/kg q 24 h PO healing dose.

2 mg/kg q 24 h PO maintenance/prevention dose.

8.1.2.1

### Notes:

- Expensive. Dosing required daily. Capsules are difficult to handle – need to be broken open before administration (by drench) – inconvenient. Paste formulation easy to use. IV preparation available in some countries (0.5 mg/kg).

**Side effects:** May delay the elimination of warfarin, no other interactions reported in the horse. Avoid direct contact with human skin and eyes as may cause hypersensitivity. Zero days withdrawal period.

**Contraindications:** Not recommended in pregnant or lactating mares.

8.1.3

### Ranitidine

POM V

**Actions and indications:** As for **cimetidine** (above) but no proven effect on melanoma. Reported to be more potent than cimetidine, but omeprazole recognised as gold standard.

**Presentations:** Tablet oral, 150 mg, 300 mg.

Syrup for oral use, 15 mg/mL.

Solution for injection 25 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 6.6 mg/kg PO q 8 h.

1-2 mg/kg IV q 8 h.

8.1.3.1

### Notes:

**More expensive than cimetidine – less frequent dosing necessary.**

**Side effects:** Rare; allergic reactions reported in humans.

8.1.4

### Sucralfate

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Actions and indications:** Complex of aluminium hydroxide and sulphated sucrose. In acid medium forms non-absorbable ion (binds to protein exudate creating 'bandage' over ulcers). Stimulates increased prostaglandin E1 synthesis and mucus secretion. Gastrointestinal ulceration.

**Presentation:** Suspension, oral 200 mg/mL.

Tablet, oral, 1 g.

136

**Dose:** Adults: 20-40 mg/kg PO q 8 h.

137

Foals: 10-20 mg/kg PO q 6 h.

8.1.4.1

### Notes:

- Should be given on empty stomach (>1 hour before feed). Availability of H<sub>2</sub> blockers (qv) may be impaired if given at same time. Also requires acid environment so DO not give at same time as H<sub>2</sub> blockers or antacids (not strictly necessary), however may be most effective if used in conjunction with these drugs.

**Side effects:** Rare; allergic reactions reported in humans.

**Contraindications:** Large quantities required for effective treatment of adults, questionable choice of treatment in the face of ready availability of omeprazole.

8.2

## (b) INTESTINAL STIMULANTS

8.2.1

### Cisapride

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Cisapride is a substituted benzamide acting as an indirect cholinergic agent to enhance release of acetylcholine leading to increased calcium flux and enhanced gastroduodenal coordination. Prophylaxis/treatment of ileus. Treatment of certain types of grass sickness (only selected chronic cases).

**Presentations:** Solution for injection 5 mg/mL.

10 mg tablets of cisapride monohydrate.

**Dose:** 0.1 mg/kg IM q 8 h (continue until motility returns).

0.8 mg/kg PO q 8 h.

8.2.1.1

### Notes:

- GI prokinetic with cholinergic action. Possible role in the treatment of pelvic flexure impaction and gastric ulceration. Much speculation exists concerning the use of prokinetics in treating motility disorders. At best the drugs are only moderately effective in helping to restore normal motility in certain cases.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Side effects:** Reports of cardiac arrhythmias have led this drug to be withdrawn in the USA.

**Contraindications:** Oral preparation contraindicated in horses in postoperative ileus producing positive volumes of reflux.

137

### 8.2.2 Erythromycin lactobionate

138

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Erythromycin is a macrolide antibiotic, which at lower levels, acts as a motilin agonist, mimicking the effects of endogenous motilin. Erythromycin also acts via 5-HT receptors to release acetylcholine and promote gastroduodenal coordination. Used for prophylaxis/treatment of ileus.

**Presentation:** 500 mg and 1 g vials for preparation as IV infusion.

**Dose:** 0.5-1 mg/kg IV (as infusion in 1 L saline given over 1 hour) q 6 h, until motility returns. Higher doses can disrupt propulsive activity.

#### 8.2.2.1 Notes:

- Remains to be evaluated as prokinetic agent in horses (**see notes for cisapride**). Cases treated with this drug as an antibacterial agent may develop diarrhoea which is presumed to be due to the prokinetic effects.

**Side effects:** Abdominal pain, antibiotic-induced diarrhoea.

### 8.2.3 Lidocaine (lignocaine) hydrochloride

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Suppresses activity of afferent neurones in the bowel wall, in turn suppressing sympathetic reflex inhibition of gut motility. Anti-inflammatory properties, also can directly stimulate enteric smooth muscle. Analgesic effects may play a role in anecdotal clinical improvement in equines. Prophylaxis/treatment of ileus. Prokinetic.

138

**Presentation:** Solution for injection 1%w/v, 2%w/v.

139

**Dose:** 1.3 mg/kg IV infusion in polyionic fluids over 15 minutes as a loading dose.

0.05 mg/kg/min IV infusion in polyionic fluids as continuous infusion until motility returns.

#### 8.2.3.1 Notes:

- Lidocaine (lignocaine) has been shown to shorten the duration of ileus in humans, however the efficacy in equines is still uncertain. Anecdotally one of the more promising prokinetic agents, but the jury is still out (see above)!

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Side effects:** Muscle fasciculations, ataxia and possibly seizures. These signs are more likely if the initial bolus is administered too rapidly.

**Contraindications:** Lidocaine (lignocaine) should not be used simultaneously with cimetidine or metronidazole.

### 8.2.4 Metoclopramide

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Metoclopramide is a substituted benzamide which acts as a dopamine receptor antagonist, adrenergic blocker and a 5HT<sub>4</sub> agonist. Prophylaxis/treatment of ileus. Prokinetic drug.

**Presentations:** Solution for injection 5 mg/mL – 2 mL glass ampoule.

10 mg tablets of metoclopramide hydrochloride BP.

**Dose:** 0.25 mg/kg/hour over 1 hour only, q 6 h (dilute in 500 mL saline).

0.04 mg/kg continuous infusion.

#### 8.2.4.1 Notes:

- GI prokinetic with central and peripheral anti-dopaminic effects as well as direct and indirect stimulatory effects on cholinergic receptors. May cause transient reversible excitement at higher doses.

**Side effects:** Excitement (this can be profound), restlessness, sweating, colic.

### 8.3 (c) INTESTINAL SEDATIVES/ANTISPASMODICS

#### 8.3.1 Butorphanol tartrate

POM V/CD (S-IV)

**Actions and indications:** Butorphanol is a mixed agonist-antagonist that provides superior visceral analgesia compared with NSAIDs. Relief of musculoskeletal and visceral pain (colic).

With sedative/tranquilliser for standing sedation/restraint. Effective antitussive useful for control of coughing due to respiratory tract procedures (e.g. broncho-alveolar lavage).

**Presentation:** 50 mL multidose bottle – 10 mg/mL for injection.

**Dose:** 0.1 mg/kg IV/IM.

0.01-0.02 mg/kg IV in conjunction with an alpha-2 agonist.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

8.3.1.1

### Notes:

- Unlikely to cause excitement after intravenous injection, but to minimise this risk the drug is best used in conjunction with alpha-2 adrenergic agonists. Should provide up to 4 hours of intestinal sedation/analgesia unless pain is very severe.

**Side effects:** Minimal, CNS excitation, decreased GI motility.

8.3.2

### Hyoscine-butyl bromide

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Intestinal antispasmodic and **also analgesic** as a result of dipyrone component. Used for treatment of spasmodic colic and obstructive colic and as an aid to rectal examination by reducing straining. Aids relief of oesophageal intraluminal obstructions (choke).

**Dose:** 0.5 mg/kg IV (20-30 mL for 500 kg horse).

139

8.3.2.1

### Notes:

- Dipyrone is a non-steroidal analgesic. Failure of colic to respond may indicate more severe problems (investigate further). **NOT FOR IM injection (marked local reaction)**. Extravascular injection may cause thrombophlebitis.

140

**Contraindications:** Repeated doses are not indicated!

**Presentation:** Sterile aqueous solution for injection, 100 mL multidose vials (4 mg/mL hyoscine + 500 mg/mL dipyrone).

8.3.3

### Morphine sulphate

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Actions and indications:** Morphine is a pure opioid agonist. Provides relief of severe musculoskeletal pain (especially long bone fractures). Used in sedative 'cocktails'. Can be used epidurally or intra-articularly for the relief of pain without loss of nerve innervation.

**Presentation:** Single dose vial – 10 mg/mL or 60 mg/mL preservative free.

**Dose:** 0.02-0.1 mg/kg IM/IV q 8-16 h.

Epidural morphine diluted with saline (total dose 2 mg in 30 mL saline).

8.3.3.1

### Notes:

- Excitement/box walking normal in pain-free horses.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- **Must be kept in a separate, locked receptacle, and purchase and dispensing registered in a bound record book.**
- Also major component of tincture of morphine and chloroform (chlorodyne) BP and morphine and kaolin mixtures for diarrhoea treatment.

**Side effects:** Excitement/box walking is common in pain-free horses. Has also been implicated in impaction colic as a result of reduced GI motility.

**Contraindications:** As an analgesic in colic, due to the side effects.

### 8.3.4 Pethidine

POM V/CD (S-II)

**Actions and indications:** Relief of musculoskeletal and gastroenteric pain.

Effective spasmolytic.

Useful in combination with acepromazine and/or xylazine for standing sedation.

**Presentation:** Multidose vial – 50 mg/mL for injection.

**Dose:** 2 mg/kg IM.

140

### 8.3.4.1 Notes:

141

- May cause excitement/profuse sweating if IV – better IM (rapid distribution). Remember regulations regarding purchase, storage and use; see above!

**Side effects:** See above.

**Contraindications:** See above regarding IV injection. Overdosage may also cause CNS stimulation and/or convulsions. Do not use where there may be renal impairment, or in combination with detomidine. Do not use in pregnant mares or in animals intended for slaughter for human consumption.

### 8.3.5 Xylazine

POM V

**Actions and indications:** Alpha-2 agonist with sedative, analgesic and muscle relaxant effects. Premedication prior to general anaesthesia with ketamine/thiopentone (thiopental) etc. Often used in combination with butorphanol to enhance analgesia (see above).

**Presentation:** 20 mg/mL (20 mL multidose vial) for injection.

100 mg/mL (10 mL multidose vial) for injection.

500 mg dry powder (10 mL single dose vial) – diluent supplied.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** 0.5-1.1 mg/kg IV (slow).

2.2-3.0 mg/kg IM.

8.3.5.1

### Notes:

- Marked local reaction and unreliable effect IM (2-3 × IV dose required for same effect).
- First- or second-degree heart blocks common. Bradycardia pronounced/reduced cardiac output may cause hypotension. Hyperglycaemia and sweating. Sedation lasts longer than analgesia, and persists for approximately 20 minutes.
- Somatic analgesia POOR, use local and/or systemic analgesic e.g. butorphanol for painful procedures.
- **Ensure correct solution used to calculate dose.**

**Side effects:** Bradycardia, cardiac arrhythmias, polyuria, hypotension.

**Contraindications:** Do not use during last month of pregnancy due to risk of inducing parturition. Use with caution during the first trimester. Not to be used in horses intended for human consumption.

141

8.4

## (d) LAXATIVES/CATHARTICS

142

8.4.1

### Note:

Non-strangulating intestinal obstructions are common in horses. The commonest is by far a pelvic flexure impaction. Whilst administration of large volumes of liquid paraffin (5 litres or more) have been recommended the latest information suggests that better, more reliable and safer break down of the impacted ingesta can be achieved by oral (stomach tube administration) of 6-12 litres of normal saline. The addition of a quantity of sodium sulphate (up to 150 g) can result in considerable retention of water within the lumen of the gut. This is usually highly effective in treating pelvic flexure impaction.

8.4.2

## Acetylcysteine

No applicable category.

**Actions and indications:** Strongly mucolytic at pH > 7.5. Management of retained meconium/meconium impaction (primary or secondary).

**Presentations:** Pure powder.

Acetylcysteine enema (4%).

The required 4% solution can be made up as follows:

- 8 g acetylcysteine.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- 20 g baking soda (NaHCO<sub>3</sub>).
- 200 mL water.

**Dose:** Single 200 mL dose administered intrarectally repeated after 60 minutes as required.

8.4.2.1

### Notes:

- This is a highly effective procedure that should be used wherever the condition exists.
- The solution is administered slowly UNDER GRAVITY FLOW at room temperature or 37°C, via a Foley catheter into rectum and the procedure is repeated after 1 hour. The procedure is very effective and is especially useful in the colt foals with secondary 'high meconium impaction in the terminal rectum due to a congenital narrowing of the pelvic inlet.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Madigan JE, Goetzman BW (1990) Use of acetyl-cysteine solution enema for meconium retention in the neonatal foal. Proceedings of the American Association of Equine Practitioners pp 117-118.

142

8.4.3

### Danthrone (dihydroxyanthraquinone)

143

POM V

**Indications:** Purgative, laxative.

**Presentation:** Insoluble powder for suspension in water.

**Dose:** 15-30 g/450 kg.

8.4.3.1

### Notes:

- Acts on large and small colon after absorption and metabolism. Effects are often severe. **Do NOT exceed dose.**

**Contraindications:** History of diarrhoea. Strangulating or non-strangulating obstructions.

8.4.4

### Diocetyl sodium sulfosuccinate

PML

**Indications:** Intestinal impaction, fermentative colic.

**Presentation:** Water- and oil-based solution for oral use only.

**Dose:** 10-20 mg/kg by stomach tube as a 5% solution q 48 h.

8.4.4.1

### Note:

Surfactant laxative. **Not recommended for use with liquid paraffin.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 8.4.5 Liquid paraffin BP

GSL

**Actions and indications:** Liquid paraffin acts as a faecal softener and lubricant. Indicated for impaction of the intestines, particularly pelvic flexure impaction, meconium impaction in foals.

**Presentation:** Oily liquid.

**Dose:** 2-6 litres by stomach tube/pump q 12-24 hours to effect.

100-150 mL foals q 24 h.

#### 8.4.5.1 Notes:

- Administration facilitated by mixing with warm water, to a total volume of 6-8 litres for a 500 kg horse.
- **NOT practical to dose effective amounts by drenching; nasogastric tube essential to avoid inhalation (often fatal).** If the liquid paraffin has appeared at the anus without significant volumes of faeces, fluid therapy may be indicated.

143

**Contraindications:** Do not use in horses with positive volumes of reflux on passing a nasogastric tube. Do not use if surgical colic suspected!

144

### 8.4.6 Magnesium sulphate BP (Epsom salt)

GSL

**Actions and indications:** Magnesium sulphate acts as an ionic cathartic to actively draw water into the bowel lumen. Used as treatment for intestinal impaction.

**Presentation:** Crystals/powder (100%).

**Dose:** 1 g/kg via nasogastric tube q 12-24 hours to effect.

#### 8.4.6.1 Notes:

- Osmotic laxative. Effects often severe.
- Do not administer for more than 3 days because of severe enteritis and possible magnesium intoxication.

**Side effects:** Magnesium toxicity rare but possible with repeated administration.

### 8.4.7 Sodium phosphate/biphosphate

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Meconium retention, small colon/rectal impaction.

**Presentation:** Suppositories or plastic packs with extension nozzle.

**Dose:** pnr.

8.4.7.1

### Notes:

- Safe, reliable, effective. Multiple enemas (of any type) may cause mucosal irritation/oedema. Recommended for treatment of meconium impaction in foals. Not big enough for adults.

8.4.8

### Sodium sulphate BP (Glauber's salt)

GSL

**Indications:** Intestinal impaction, purgation.

**Presentation:** Crystals/powder.

**Dose:** 1 g/kg by stomach tube or in feed (palatable) q 12 h.

8.4.8.1

### Notes:

- Very safe – severe diarrhoea sometimes results.

144

8.4.9

### Psyllium hydrophilic mucilloid

145

GSL

**Action and indications:** Psyllium is a bulk-forming laxative which causes the fluid and ion content of the faeces to increase by absorbing water. It is considered to be particularly useful for treating sand impactions.

**Presentation:** Flakes/powder.

**Dose:** 1 g/kg PO q 8-24 h.

Psyllium can be administered long term at 1 g/kg q 24 h.

8.4.9.1

### Notes:

- The efficacy of psyllium hydrophilic mucilloid in treating sand impactions has recently been questioned.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 8.5 (e) ANTIDIARRHOEALS

#### 8.5.1 Codeine phosphate BP

POM V/CD (S-V)

**Indications:** Diarrhoea, cough suppression.

**Presentation:** Tablets oral 60 mg.

**Dose:** 0.2-2 g/day.

##### 8.5.1.1 Notes:

- Symptomatic treatment only, and very few doses usually required. Overuse can cause impaction!

#### 8.5.2 Chloroform and morphine (tincture of)

POM V/CD (S-V)

**Indications:** Diarrhoea, cough suppression.

**Presentation:** Volatile liquid containing 12.5 mL chloroform, 3 mL ether, 12.5 mL ethyl alcohol, 0.3 g morphine sulphate and treacle/molasses (made up to 100 mL).

**Dose:** 30-60 mL diluted in water by drench q 4 h.

##### 8.5.2.1 Notes:

- Symptomatic treatment of diarrhoea/coughing only.

#### 8.5.3 Kaolin (light)

No applicable category.

145

**Indications:** Intestinal absorbent – symptomatic treatment of diarrhoea. Useful as lining agent (with liquid paraffin) for intestinal inflammation (not affected by gastric secretions).

146

**Presentation:** Mixture of kaolin.

**Dose:** 50-200 g/day pnr.

##### 8.5.3.1 Notes:

- Symptomatic treatment only. Sometimes used with morphine sulphate (kaolin and morphine).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Only useful for foals – do not attempt to control diarrhoea in adult horses with this – very messy and poor efficacy.

### 9 Section 6 Hormones/steroids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

#### 9.1 (a) SEX STEROIDS (DRUGS USED TO MANIPULATE EQUINE REPRODUCTION)

##### 9.1.1 Oestrogens

Prepare the female reproductive tract for fertilisation and developing the secretory tissue of the mammary gland. Cause behavioural signs of oestrus. Anabolic activity.

##### 9.1.2 Oestradiol (estradiol)

POM V

**Indications:** Short-term oestrogen therapy. Sub-oestrus.

**Presentations:** Oily solution for injection 5 mg/mL, 10 mL multidose vial.

**Dose:** 10-15 mg single total dose IM.

##### 9.1.2.1 Notes:

- Virilising or excessive oestrus effects may be seen: **USE WITH CAUTION.**
- May cause local reaction at site of injection.
- Due to be withdrawn in Ec from 2005.

##### 9.1.2.2 Progestogens

These drugs are used to prepare and maintain the female reproductive tract for implantation and pregnancy. They inhibit oestrus and ovulation.

##### 9.1.3 Altrenogest

POM V

**Indications:** Inductions of cyclic ovarian activity in mares with some follicular activity, either early in the season or in response to poor cyclicity at other stages. Treatment of lactation anoestrus in absence of corpus luteum. Suppression of oestrus and oestrus behaviour in normally cycling mares. Management and manipulation of oestrus cycle.

**Presentation:** Vegetable oil solution for oral use 2.2 mg/mL, multidose container with built in dose-regulating cup (1 mL/50 kg bodyweight).

**Actions:** Synthetic progestogen.

**Dose:** 0.044 mg/kg PO.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Courses of 15 days or more used to suppress/regulate oestrus.

147

9.1.3.1

### Notes:

**DO NOT use in pregnant mares/stallions.** Mixing with feed should be immediately before administration. May alter behaviour – possibly useful in some cases of headshaking. **Women of child-bearing age should not handle the product. Protective measures (gloves, sleeves etc.) should be used when handling concentrate or feed.**

148

9.1.3.2

### Androgens

Responsible for physical and psychological male sexual characteristics.

9.1.4

### Testosterone

POM V

**Indications:** Long-term androgen therapy (up to 60 days). Ageing and debility. Possible improved libido in stallion.

**Presentations:** Oily solution for injection (depot formulation). Testosterone decanoate 20 mg, testosterone isocaproate 12 mg, testosterone phenylpropionate 12 mg, testosterone propionate 6 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 300-500 mg **total dose IM.**

9.1.4.1

### Notes:

Virilism may occur. Purpose-made trochar/canula insertion apparatus useful. **USE WITH EXTREME CAUTION** – long courses probably detrimental to spermatogenesis.

9.1.4.2

### Gonadotrophins

9.1.5

### Human chorionic gonadotrophin (luteinising hormone/LH)

POM V

**Indications:** Glycoprotein excreted in the urine of pregnant women.

Stimulation of ovulation and formation of corpus luteum (predicted timing of ovulation).

Suboestrus (follicles >2 cm), post-partum lactation failure, nymphomania, prolonged oestrus. Used as part of test for cryptorchidism (see cryptorchidism test, p. 52).

Poor libido in stallions.

**Actions:** Similar effect to LH.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Single-dose vials, 1500 iu, white soluble powder + solvent.

**Dose:** 1500-3000 iu IV or IM injection 24 hours before mating or AI.

9.1.5.1	<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ IM/SC injections may be associated with abscess formation or clostridial myositis.</li></ul>	148
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Rare anaphylaxis after IV.</li><li>▪ When used for lactational failure oxytocin should be given simultaneously.</li></ul>	149

### 9.1.6 Pregnant mare serum gonadotrophin (FSH)

POM V

**Indications:** PROBABLY NO EFFECT IN MARES. May be indicated for embryo/ovum transfer procedures but effects very dubious/uncertain. Recent research shows that superovulation is possible with very high repeated doses.

### 9.1.6.1 Gonadotrophin-releasing hormones

Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone (GnRH) causes release of LH and FSH from the anterior pituitary gland. Increased LH concentration can induce ovulation in horses. Used in transition from winter anoestrus to normal cyclic activity and to induce ovulation after mating.

### 9.1.7 Buserelin

POM V

**Indications:** Infertility of ovarian origin. Improvement of conception rates.

**Presentation:** Aqueous solution for injection 0.004 mg/mL.

**Dose:** To induce ovulation of a mature follicle; 10 mL total dose single IM (IV or SC injection may be used). Administered on first day of maximum follicle size, 6 hours before service. Repeat 24 hours if ovulation has not taken place.

9.1.7.1	<b>Note:</b> <p>Synthetic Gn-RH analogue.</p>
---------	---

### 9.1.8 Deslorelin

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Infertility of hypothalamic origin. Induction of ovulation within 48 h in oestrus mares with follicle diameter >30 mm.

**Presentation:** Subcutaneous biocompatible implant 2.1 mg deslorelin acetate.

### 9.1.8.1 Note:

- Synthetic analogue of gonadorelin (synthetic GnRH). 100 × more potent than GnRH.

### 9.1.8.2 Posterior pituitary hormones

### 9.1.9 Oxytocin

POM V

**Indications:** Stimulation of smooth muscle in uterus and mammary gland. Induction of parturition. Treatment of retained placenta. Post-partum haemorrhage and increase speed of uterine involution.

149

Uterine prolapse.

150

Stimulation of lactation.

**Presentation:** Sterile aqueous solution for injection 10 iu/mL multidose 25 mL bottle.

**Dose:**

25-100 iu SC/IM/IV.

50 iu in 500 mL saline as IV infusion over 30 min for placental retention.

2-10 iu (total dose) in 5 to 10 mL saline by slow IV injection for parturition induction (parturition in 30-90 min).

2-10 iu by slow intravenous injection for uterine prolapse.

### 9.1.9.1 Notes:

- Sweating, colic may be seen.
- Not to be used in obstructive dystocia.
- ONLY to be used for induction of parturition when milk calcium concentration  $\geq 10$  mmol/L.

### 9.1.9.2 Prostaglandins

These drugs are either analogues or synthetic forms of prostaglandin F<sub>2α</sub>. They cause regression of the corpus luteum (CL). The CL is refractory to prostaglandins for up to 5 days post-ovulation in mares. Used to destroy persistent corpora lutea (treatment of prolonged dioestrus), induce oestrus for therapy or diagnostic purposes, return to oestrus early for covering and induction of abortion (before 35 days).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**NB:** Absorbed through human skin. Should not be handled by women of child-bearing age/pregnant women. Accidental skin contact should be washed immediately with cold water. May also cause bronchospasm.

**DO NOT USE WITH NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS**

### 9.1.10 Alfaprostol

POM V

**Indications:** Luteolytic control of oestrous cycle including termination of persistent dioestrus, control of sub-oestrus and induction of abortion.

**Presentation:** Sterile aqueous solution for injection, 40 mL vials 2 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 2-10 mg **total dose IM.**

#### 9.1.10.1 Notes:

- Sweating, colic, tachycardia, polypnoea. Spontaneous resolution after 5-10 min.

150

### 9.1.11 Cloprostenol

151

POM V

**Indications:** Luteolytic control of oestrous cycle including termination of persistent dioestrus, control of sub-oestrus and induction of abortion.

**Presentations:** Sterile aqueous solution for injection, 10 mL or 20 mL multidose vials, 0.25 mg/mL.

**Dose:**

Horses: 250-500 µg total dose IM.

Ponies and donkeys: 125-250 µg **total dose IM.**

#### 9.1.11.1 Notes:

- Sweating, colic, tachycardia, polypnoea. Spontaneous resolution after 5-10 min.

### 9.1.12 Dinoprost promethamine

POM V

**Indications:** Luteolytic control of oestrous cycle, treatment of sub-oestrous, abortion induction (before 35 days) termination of persistent dioestrus.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Aqueous solution for injection 5 mg/mL, 10 mL and 30 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 5 mg total dose IM.

### 9.1.12.1 Notes:

- Side effects include sweating, colic (usually disappear spontaneously after 10-15 min).

### 9.1.12.2 Myometrial relaxants

### 9.1.13 Clenbuterol

(see p. 117)

### 9.1.14 Spasmolytics: Hyoscine-*n*-butyl bromide

(see p. 139)

## 9.2 (b) ANABOLIC STEROIDS

**Synthetic derivatives of testosterone.** They promote nitrogen retention in metabolic disease. Retention of sodium, calcium, potassium, chloride, sulphate and phosphate also occur with most. Other effects include stimulation of appetite, increased erythrocyte production, increased skeletal muscle mass, retention of intracellular water, premature closure of growth plates and increased skin thickness. Some androgenic activity is present in most of these drugs and so hormonal effects on both male, neutered male and female horses can be expected.

151

### 9.2.1 Nandrolone phenylpropionate

152

POM V

**Indications:** Anabolic stimulation, metabolic enhancement, metabolic and endocrine-related anaemia, supportive management of chronic renal failure.

**Actions:** Clinical efficacy of anabolic steroids is unproven. In anaemia effects due partly to increased erythropoietin production and partly from direct stimulation of bone marrow.

**Presentations:** None licensed for use in horses. Various forms available, e.g. oily solution for IM injection. 25 mg/mL, 10 mL vial.

**Dose:** 1 mg/kg IM. Repeated at 2-3 week intervals.

### 9.2.1.1 Notes:

- Administration to geldings at full dose may induce severe virilisation with behavioural problems (use half doses at 10-day intervals). Most horses respond in 2-3 injections. Contraindicated in all neoplastic conditions.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 9.3 (c) ADRENAL CORTICOIDS

Corticosteroids are reported to be potentially dangerous in inducing or exacerbating laminitis and are therefore specifically CONTRAINDICATED IN THE TREATMENT OF LAMINITIS and related conditions.

**The clinician is warned that due deliberation should be given before any horse is subjected to systemic or oral corticosteroid therapy.**

However, the therapeutic value of these compounds in the treatment of disease is undisputed and the assessed risk to a particular horse should be carefully weighed-up. Many clinicians consider that the risk of corticosteroids is much lower than is commonly appreciated and that it is only those animals with a marked tendency towards laminitis and those with disease conditions which might predispose to laminitis in which the drugs should not be used without extreme care and careful discussion of the potential effects with the owner.

Aside from the contraindications associated with laminitis and the general suppression of immune responses (and consequent effects on infectious processes) one of the strongest contraindications is in corneal ulceration.

- Corneal ulceration should never be treated with corticosteroids of any nature.
- Where anti-inflammatory effects are required in the presence of corneal ulceration alternative non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may be indicated.

However, as soon as corneal epithelium has definitely covered the corneal defect corticosteroids have a dramatic effect in reducing the extent of subsequent fibrosis and scar/leukoma formation.

152

#### 9.3.1 General properties of corticosteroids

153

##### 9.3.1.1 1. Duration and relative potency of common corticosteroid drugs

Table 3.5

Drug	Equivalent anti-inflammatory dose (mg)	Anti-inflammatory potency (relative)	Mineralo-corticoid potency (relative)	Approx. half life <i>in vivo</i> (min)	Duration of effect (IV/PO)
Hydrocortisone	20	1	2	60	<12 h
Betamethasone	0.6	25	0	>300	>48 h
Dexamethasone	0.75	30	0	120	>48 h
Methylprednisolone	4	5	0	100	12–24 h
Prednisolone	5	4	1	120	12–24 h
Prednisone	5	4	1	60	12–24 h
Triamcinolone	4	5	0		12–24*

\* Lasts for weeks if given IM.

##### 9.3.1.2 2. General physiological properties

- Cardiovascular system:

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Reduces capillary permeability; enhances vasoconstriction (hence value in shock) but needs very high doses.

- Nervous system:

Lower seizure threshold; reduce response to pyrogens; stimulates appetite.

- Endocrine system:

Suppress ACTH/TSH/FSH/prolactin/LH release from pituitary.

Reduced conversion of  $T_3$  to  $T_4$ .

Reduces ADH production – diuresis.

- Musculoskeletal system:

Inhibit osteoblast function (endocrine function).

Muscular weakness, atrophy, osteoporosis.

Inhibited bone growth.

Increased Ca excretion and inhibition of vitamin D absorption.

- Metabolic effects: Stimulate gluconeogenesis; mobilisation of fats (increased triglycerides and cholesterol).

153

- Immune system (high dose only): Suppression of T-lymphocytes, lymphokines, acute phase proteins. Reduced neutrophil chemotaxis. Decreased mast cell degranulation.

154

- Haematopoietic system: Increase circulating platelets, neutrophils and RBCs. Platelet aggregation inhibited. Reduced lymphocytes, eosinophils, monocytes.

- Gastrointestinal system: Increased secretion of gastric acid/pepsin/trypsin; decreased mucosal cell proliferation/repair; increased absorption of iron/calcium but decreased fat absorption.

- Integumentary system: Thinning of skin and hair loss.

9.3.2

### Beclomethasone (beclometasone)

POM V

**Indications:** Maintenance therapy of non-infectious airway inflammatory diseases including inflammatory airway disease (IAD) and recurrent obstructive airway disease (RAO/COPD) and summer pasture associated airway obstructive disease (SPAOD), nasal hypersensitivity, headshaking syndromes associated with nasal irritations.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Actions:** 2nd generation inhaled corticosteroid. Increased lipophilicity gives longer duration of action and less systemic absorption. Inhibits the production of inflammatory mediators, decreases goblet cell hyperplasia and decreases airway hyper-reactivity. Approximate onset of action 24 hours.

**Presentations:** MDI, HFA formulation, 40-80 µg/puff, administration by suitable inhaler (e.g. Equine Aeromask).

**Dose:** 500-1200 micrograms (of HFA formulation) by inhaler q 12-24 h.

9.3.2.1

### Notes:

- Maintenance inhaled corticosteroids essential for successful management of RAO. Expensive. Systemic corticosteroids may be needed in an acute attack in conjunction with bronchodilators. Do not use beclomethasone (beclometasone) parenterally! Interactions/precautions as for dexamethasone (below). Horses receiving other steroids by other routes may require lower dose. Older chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) formulation metered dose inhaler (MDI) largely replaced by hydrofluoroalkane (HFA). The HFA formulation produces finer drug particles resulting in a  $2 \times$  to  $10 \times$  increase in pulmonary drug deposition compared to the CFC preparations.

9.3.3

### Betamethasone

POM V

**Indications:** Shock, inflammatory and hypersensitivity reactions/pruritus, immune-mediated conditions.

**Presentations:**

White aqueous suspension, 2 mg/mL betamethasone for IM injection only, 50 mL multidose vial.

154

Clear, colourless aqueous solution for IV or IM use, 50 mL multidose vial.

155

Oral preparations also available but unlicensed for horses.

**Dose:** 0.04-0.08 mg/kg IV/IM (check formulation with respect to its nature (suspension or solution)).

9.3.3.1

### Notes:

- Single dose usually well-tolerated, but severe side effects may be seen in long-term use. Symptoms of Cushing's disease with significant alterations in carbohydrate, fat, protein and mineral metabolism may be seen. Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal suppression occurs during therapy – withdraw treatment gradually.
- Do not administer to pregnant animals.
- Delayed wound healing and increased susceptibility to infection – use antibiotic cover if risk of or pre-existing infection.
- Viral infections may be exacerbated.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Contraindicated as part of topical or systemic therapy where infectious agent involved, laminitis and where corneal ulcers are present.

- Drug interactions with amphotericin B, and  $K^+$  depleting diuretics.

**Do not use suspension IV.**

### 9.3.4 Dexamethasone

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of inflammatory/hypersensitivity/allergic conditions including acute airway obstruction, insect-induced hypersensitivity (sweet itch), urticaria, insect stings and zootoxicosis reactions.

Specific treatment of purpura haemorrhagica/immune-mediated vasculitis and other immune-mediated conditions such as immune-mediated thrombocytopenia/anaemia and autoimmune skin conditions of the pemphigus and Lupus groups.

**Presentations:** Many preparations for oral and systemic use, e.g. solution containing dexamethasone sodium phosphate 2 mg/mL and benzyl alcohol as preservative, for IV or IM injection, 50 mL multidose vial.

**Dose:** 0.1-0.5 mg/kg IV/IM (higher doses for shock and hypersensitivity conditions, lower dose range for inflammatory conditions).

#### 9.3.4.1 Notes:

As above for betamethasone. Alcoholic form physiologically available immediately.

**CHECK FORMULATION BEFORE INJECTION – CONFIRM ROUTE COMPATIBILITY.**

155

### 9.3.5 Flumethasone (flumetasone)

156

POM V

**Indications:** Myositis, dermatoses, allergies, inflammatory and immune-mediated conditions.

**Dose:** 0.5 mg/kg q 24 h IV/IM prn.

#### 9.3.5.1 Notes:

See general notes for corticosteroids and dexamethasone above.

### 9.3.6 Fluticasone propionate

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Maintenance therapy of inflammatory airway disease (IAD), recurrent airway obstructive disease (RAO/COPD) and summer pasture associated airway obstruction (SPAOD), nasal hypersensitivity, headshaking syndromes associated with nasal irritations.

**Actions:** As for beclomethasone (beclometasone).

**Presentations:** Metered dose inhaler (MDI) delivering 44, 110, 220 µg/puff. Administration by suitable inhaler (e.g. Equine Aeromask).

**Dose:** 2200 µg q 12-24 h.

9.3.6.1

### Notes:

- As for beclomethasone (beclometasone). Most potent inhaled corticosteroid with longest pulmonary residence time and least adrenal suppression.

9.3.7

### Isoflupredone

POM V

**Indications:** Myositis, dermatoses, allergies, inflammatory and immune-mediated conditions.

**Dose:** For heaves 10 to 14 mg IM for 5 days then taper dose over 10-20 days.

9.3.7.1

### Notes:

- See general notes for corticosteroids and dexamethasone above. Hypokalaemia may occur.

9.3.8

### Methylprednisolone

POM V

**Indications:** Shock, anti-inflammatory therapy (joints and bursae), inflammatory and immune-mediated conditions.

156

**Presentation:** Suspension for injection containing methylprednisolone acetate 4.0%, 5 mL vials.

157

### Dose:

2-4 mg/kg IM prn (>10 × this dose for shock!).

For synovial structures check manufacturer's instructions.

9.3.8.1

### Notes:

- Side effects as for dexamethasone.
- Soluble form IV for rapid effect (12-24 h).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Duration of effect variable average 3-4 weeks.
- Effect in treatment of sweet itch and small airway disease dubious.
- Few applications for this drug other than intra-articular or bursal injections. Has high risk of infection when given into synovial cavities or into bursae so strict asepsis must be observed during the procedure.
- Care when injecting multiple joints, as dose is cumulative.

### 9.3.9 Prednisolone

POM V

**Indications:**

Anti-inflammatory, anti-allergic therapy.

Immune-mediated conditions.

Temporary treatment of malabsorption/intestinal lymphosarcoma.

**Presentation:** 25 mg tablets.

**Dose:** 1-2 mg/kg PO q 12 h taper dose according to effect.

#### 9.3.9.1 Notes:

Interactions and side effects as for dexamethasone. Short duration of effect therefore decreased potential for side effects and most suitable for maintenance therapy.

### 9.3.10 Triamcinolone

POM V

**Indications:** Dermatoses, inflammatory conditions.

Useful as intralesional injection (very small doses) in allergic collagen necrosis disorder of the skin (collagen granuloma).

Commonly used as intra-articular steroid.

**Dose:** 0.02-0.1 mg/kg IM.

157

#### 9.3.10.1 Note:

- Interactions and side effects as for dexamethasone above.

158

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

**SERIOUS RISK OF LAMINITIS** – probably the most risky corticosteroid. Recent research suggests however that this risk may be overstated but as yet there is no definitive advice. In general it should probably be avoided except in low doses in defined conditions.

### 9.4 (d) NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS (NSAIDs)

#### 9.4.1 Acetylsalicylic acid

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-pyretic, analgesic, anti-inflammatory.

**Presentations:** Aspirin – 325 mg tablet; white powder.

\*Topical solution used as local non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.

**Dose:** 100 mg/kg q 8 h PO.

\*Topical solution is applied directly to shaved/clipped skin q 12 h prn.

##### 9.4.1.1 Notes:

Potent anti-thrombotic. Platelet aggregation and therefore bleeding times may be prolonged.

#### 9.4.2 Carprofen

POM V

**Indications:** Prostaglandin sparing anti-pyretic, analgesic, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug. Musculoskeletal pain, laminitis and soft tissue injury. Reduction/control of perioperative pain.

**Presentations:** Solution for IV injection (50 mg/mL).

White free-flowing granules for oral use (8.7% w/w).

**Dose:** 0.7 mg/kg IV or PO q 24 h.

\*1 sachet/300 kg bodyweight.

##### 9.4.2.1 Notes:

- Significant reduction in prostaglandin inhibition.
- Minimal interference with cyclo-oxygenase and so less ulcerogenic than most other NSAIDs.
- Prolonged action (15-24 hours).
- Safe.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Palatable in oral form.

158

### 9.4.3 Dimethyl sulphoxide (dimethyl sulfoxide)

159

POM V

**Indications:** Topical/IV anti-inflammatory. Decreases intracranial pressure.

Used as a carrier – aids skin penetration of other drugs e.g. corticosteroids.

**Presentations:** 90% (900 mg/mL) solution in non-sterile analytical reagent bottles. Premixed in bottles with steroids for topical application to skin (applicator or paint brush supplied).

**Dose:** 0.25-1.0 g/kg very slow IV as diluted (20%) solution in normal saline. High doses are used to control intracranial pressure (110 mL of concentrate in 1 litre saline as drip for 500 kg horse).

Topical: apply 3-4 times daily to shaved area.

#### 9.4.3.1 Notes:

- Handle with care. Rapid skin penetration. Wear gloves – skin penetration is suggested by a strong taste in the mouth shortly after contact.
- May show diuretic effect when given IV.
- If given fast IV may cause significant haemolysis.

### 9.4.4 Dipyrone

POM V

**Indications:** Pyrazoline analgesic, anti-pyretic, anti-inflammatory.

**Presentation:** Multidose vials most often with other drugs in mixtures.

**Dose:** 22 mg/kg IV.

#### 9.4.4.1 Notes:

- Localised tissue reaction if given extravascularly. Good anti-pyretic, anti-spasmodic and anti-thrombotic. Poor anti-inflammatory.
- Do NOT use with phenothiazine ataractics (hypothermia). May cause blood dyscrasia, hepatitis, nephropathy, colic, diarrhoea.
- DO NOT OVERDOSE.
- NOT IM.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 9.4.5 Eltenac

POM V

**Indications:** Postoperative swelling. Anti-inflammatory, anti-pyretic, anti-oedematous activity.

**Presentations:** Clear colourless solution for injection containing 50 mg eltenac, 1 mg sodium bisulphite and 150 mg propylene glycol per mL.

**Dose:** 0.5 mg/kg IV q 24 h for up to 5 days.

159

### 9.4.5.1 Notes:

**Do not give IM.** Not in horses intended for human consumption. Not in animals less than 6 weeks of age.

160

### 9.4.6 Flunixin meglumine

POM V

**Indications:** Analgesia, anti-pyresis. Strong anti-inflammatory effect. Strong anti-endotoxic effects.

**Presentations:**

Solution for injection (50 mg/mL) 50 mL multidose vials.

Sachets (10 g) containing 250 mg flunixin for oral administration.

Paste (10 g) containing 500 mg flunixin for oral dosing.

**Dose:** 1.1 mg/kg IV or IM q 24 h.

1.1 mg/kg oral q 24 h.

0.25-0.55 mg/kg q 8 h for endotoxaemia.

### 9.4.6.1 Notes:

- Should not be used with other NSAIDs (the potential toxic effects are additive). Use with great care in colic, masks cardiovascular side effects of endotoxaemia.
- Anti-endotoxin effects best at 0.25-0.55 mg/kg q 12 h/q 8 h.

### 9.4.7 Isopyrin

POM V

**Indications:** Analgesia, anti-pyresis, anti-inflammatory effect.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Solution 240 mg isopyrin + 130 mg phenylbutazone Na/mL.

**Dose:** 4.2 mg/kg phenylbutazone and 7.8 mg/kg isopyrin IV q 24 h.

9.4.7.1

### Notes:

- The dose-dependent kinetics of phenylbutazone mean that its half-life is extended by mixing with another pyrazolone. This explains the recommendation for daily dosing only.

9.4.8

### Ketoprofen

POM V

**Indications:** Analgesia, anti-pyresis and anti-inflammatory action.

**Presentations:** Aqueous 1% and 10% solutions, 5 mg and 20 mg tablets.

160

**Dose:** 2.2 mg/kg of the 10% solution IV q 24 h, for up to 5 days for musculo-skeletal pain. 2.2 mg/kg of the 10% solution IV as a single dose for analgesia in cases of abdominal pain.

161

9.4.8.1

### Notes:

- Do not use in horses intended for human consumption.
- Do not use in pregnant mares.
- Do not administer concurrently with phenylbutazone or flunixin meglumine.
- Only licensed postoperatively.
- This is probably the worst NSAID for causing clotting problems.
- Avoid contact with skin or eyes.

9.4.9

### Meclofenamic acid

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-inflammatory, analgesic, anti-pyretic.

**Presentation:** 10 g sachets white granules for oral use in feed.

**Dose:** 2.2 mg/kg q 24 h PO for up to 7 days.

9.4.9.1

### Note:

- Manufacturers advise maximum of seven days.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 9.4.10 Meloxicam

POM V

**Uses:** Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug used for alleviation of inflammation and pain relief in acute and chronic soft tissue and orthopaedic disorders.

**Dose and formulation:** 0.6 mg/kg.

Oral suspension containing 15 mg/mL q 24 h for maximum of 14 days (dosing syringe with weight calibration supplied).

Solution for intravenous injection containing 20 mg/mL (50 mL and 100 mL multi-dose bottles).

#### 9.4.10.1 Notes:

- Single intravenous dose is conveniently maintained with the oral formulation after 24 hours.
- Contraindicated in:
  - Foals under 6 weeks of age.
  - Lactating mares.

161

- Horses with existing or suspected gastro-enteric, hepatic or renal disease and horses with haemorrhagic diathesis.
- Dehydrated or toxic animals with poor circulation.
- Not to be used concurrently with other non-steroidal drugs or corticosteroids.
- Withdrawal prior to competition at least 10-14 days (no definitive withdrawal period has been established).
- Urticaria and diarrhoea are occasional side effects.

162

### 9.4.11 Naproxen

POM V

**Indications:** Relief of inflammation and pain associated with muscle and soft tissues. Marked analgesic and anti-pyretic effects (prostaglandin inhibitor).

**Presentation:** Single-dose sachets (4 grams active substance in granule form) for oral use.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO q 12 h in feed for 14 days (pnr).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

9.4.11.1

### Note:

**NOT to be used in pregnancy.** Safe under other circumstances.

9.4.12

## Phenylbutazone

POM V

**Indications:** Analgesia, anti-pyresis and anti-inflammatory activity.

**Presentations:** Oral, white powder/individual sachets (1 g, 0.5 g) or oral paste in dose graduated (kg) syringe; parenteral: solution 200 mg/mL with isopyrin.

**Dose:** Solution: 4.4 mg/kg IV.

Oral:

DAY 1: 4.4 mg/kg q 12 h.

DAYS 2-5: 2.2 mg/kg q 12 h.

THEN: 2.2 mg/kg q 24 h or q 48 h pnr.

9.4.12.1

### Note:

**Do NOT use IM.** As with all NSAIDs (excluding aspirin), phenylbutazone is strongly protein-bound. Care should be exercised if concurrent use with other protein-bound agents.

The drug has a strong ulcerogenic property and should not be used on young foals or on nursing mares unless suitable anti-ulcer medications and management practices are used at the same time.

162

9.4.13

## Ramifenazone

163

POM V

**Indications:** Analgesia, anti-pyresis and anti-inflammatory activity.

**Presentations:** Clear aqueous solution for injection presented in amber glass vials. Each mL contains 240 mg ramifenazone, 121.4 mg phenylbutazone.

**Dose:** 3.5 mL/100 kg slow IV.

9.4.13.1

### Notes:

**Administer slow IV (over at least 1 minute).** Not in animals less than 6 weeks of age. UK preparation discontinued.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 9.4.14 Vedaprofen

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-inflammatory for musculoskeletal pain. Can be used pre- and postoperatively.

**Presentation:** Oral gel 100 mg vedaprofen in 130 mg propylene glycol.

**Dose:** Oral.

DAY 1: 2 mg/kg.

DAYS 2-5: 1 mg/kg for up to 5 days.

#### 9.4.14.1 Notes:

Do not give to horses with oral lesions. Avoid use in hypovolaemic, hypotensive animals. Do not give to horses <6 months of age.

### 9.5 (e) PITUITARY SUPPRESSION DRUGS

Used for the treatment of pituitary pars intermedia dysfunction (PPID) (equine Cushing's disease). In PPID abnormal *pars intermedia* cells produce excessive amounts of pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC) and other POMC-derived peptides in addition to adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH). Debate continues as to the pathogenesis of PPID. It may be that abnormality of the *pars intermedia* occurs as a spontaneous pituitary disease or that there is loss of dopaminergic innervation, i.e. a primary hypothalamic disorder. (Aminergic neurones arising in the hypothalamus regulate melanotrophs in the pars intermedia. Dopamine is the primary neurotransmitter of these secretory neurones and it tonically inhibits release of hormones from melanotrophs.)

#### 9.5.1 Bromocriptine mesylate

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of PPID. Treatment/suppression of hyperprolactin-induced lactation.

**Presentation:** Bromocriptine (non-proprietary); 5 mg tablets.

163

**Action:** Dopamine agonist.

164

**Dose:**

*PPID:* 10 mg total dose q 24 h for 3-12 weeks (gradual reduction after significant effect is obtained).

Calculated dose of 0.09-0.25 mg/kg q 12 h can be used.

*Lactation suppression:* 30 mg daily for 5 days (no gradual reduction).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

9.5.1.1

### Notes:

- Oral bioavailability poor.
- Equivocal efficacy in treatment of pituitary adenoma.
- Milk suppression effective.
- May cause anorexia.

9.5.2

### Cyproheptadine

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of pituitary pars intermedia dysfunction (PPID). May be useful in some cases of idiopathic headshaking (trigeminal-summation or post herpetic neuralgia) (in conjunction with carbamazepine).

**Actions:** Serotonin antagonist with additional anticholinergic and antihistaminic effects. (Serotonin has been shown to be a potent secretagogue of ACTH in isolated rat *pars intermedia* tissue.)

**Presentation:** White half-scored tablets containing 4 mg cyproheptadine for oral administration.

#### Dose:

Week 1: 0.3 mg/kg q 12-24 h.

Week 2: 0.4 mg/kg q 12-24 h.

Week 3-4: 0.5 mg/kg q 12-24 h.

Week 5-6: 0.6 mg/kg q 12-24 h.

9.5.2.1

### Notes:

- Temporary and equivocal response. 6-8 weeks before clinical improvement. Takes 8-12 weeks to reduce plasma cortisol measurably. Clinical signs often improve before this (reduced polydipsia/hair coat restoration).

**Not to be used in animals with inflammatory airway disease (IAD/RAO). May cause sedation and ataxia at higher doses.**

9.5.3

### Pergolide mesylate

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of PPID.

164

**Actions:** Dopamine agonist.

165

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** 50/250 microgram tablets for oral administration.

**Dose:** Low-dose regimen: 0.002 mg/kg, PO q 24 h (1 mg/day for a 500 kg horse).

High-dose regimen: 0.006-0.01 mg/kg, PO q 24 h (3-5 mg/day for a 500 kg horse).

9.5.3.1

### Notes:

- Initially concerns with expense of this drug are now less of an issue. Appears to be most effective treatment at present. Improvement of clinical signs best measure of response, as normalisation of hyperglycaemia and endocrine tests may be slow.
- Attempt to reduce dose to low-dose regimen after effect is gained (cost considerations) but some fail to maintain response.
- Side effects of anorexia (and secondary hyperlipaemia), diarrhoea and colic may be seen with higher doses.
- Pergolide is an ergot alkaloid and may have some vasoconstrictive effects, which has led to concerns over exacerbation of laminitis – no confirmed problems.
- Suggested protocol is 0.002 mg/kg, PO, q 24 h. If no improvement noted within 4 to 8 weeks increase daily dose by 0.002 mg/kg monthly up to a total dose of 0.01 mg/kg. Alternatively if unsatisfactory response to 0.004 to 0.006 mg/kg pergolide and endocrine tests remain abnormal, 0.3 to 0.5 mg/kg of cyproheptadine can be added to pergolide therapy.

9.5.4

### Trilostane

**Indications:** Trials suggest efficacy in treatment of pituitary pars intermedia dysfunction (PPID).

**Actions:** Specific adrenal gland suppression. Competitive 3-beta hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase inhibitor (enzyme required for synthesis of cortisol from cholesterol in the adrenal medulla).

**Presentation:** Hard gelatin capsules 60 mg, 120 mg – no reports of use with this preparation in horses. Licensed for dogs.

**Dose:** 0.4 to 1 mg/kg suggested dose PO q 24 h.

9.5.4.1

### Notes:

- Clinical improvement reported in lethargy, laminitis, polyuria/polydipsia and weight distribution while having little effect on hirsutism. Approximately 3 months for full clinical effect. Monitor with DST/TRH endocrine test. No reported side effects. Further trials are necessary. May be useful particularly for recurrent, intractable laminitis associated with PPID.

165

### 9.6 (f) OTHERS

#### 9.6.1 Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)

POM V

**Indications:** Stimulation of adrenal activity in premature/dysmature foals. Diagnosis of pituitary-adrenal axis disorders.

**Actions:** ACTH causes release of cortisol from the adrenal cortex. Endogenous ACTH released from the anterior pituitary. Negative feedback by cortisol.

**Presentations:** Aqueous solution: 250 µg/mL, 1 mL single-use vials; gel/depot.

**Dose:**

*Aqueous:* 250 µg total dose for 50 kg foal IM single dose.

*Gel/depot:* 250-400 total dose for 50 kg foal IM q 12 h.

##### 9.6.1.1 Notes:

Single doses may be effective in foals. Long-acting form may be used to identify primary or secondary adrenocortical deficiency.

#### 9.6.2 Insulin PTZ

POM V

**Indications:** Specific therapy for insulin-responsive diabetes mellitus. Treatment of hyperlipaemia in ponies.

**Actions:** *Hyperlipaemia* – Insulin helps prevent development of hyperlipaemia by inhibiting tissue hormone-sensitive lipase (enzyme causing lipolysis of adipose tissue). Also stimulates gluconeogenesis in the liver and activates lipoprotein lipase (enzyme causing uptake of fatty acid from very low density lipopolysaccharides (VLDL) in the blood by adipose tissue).

**Presentations:** Protamine zinc insulin (bovine, highly purified) 100 units/mL, 10 mL vial. (Long-acting insulin, onset in small animals 4-6 h; peak action 14-24 h; duration 32-36 h.)

**Dose:** Titration in diabetes mellitus.

Hyperlipaemia: 0.4 iu/kg SC or IM q 24 h.

##### 9.6.2.1 Notes:

- Hyperlipaemia: Treatment of lipaemia/hyperlipaemia should be carried out in conjunction with oral (or IV) glucose therapy at 0.25 g/kg PO q 12 h.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- May have poor efficacy due to relative insulin insensitivity.
- Diabetes mellitus: Few if any horses showing clinical signs of diabetes mellitus such as hyperglycaemia, glycosuria, PU-PD, weight loss etc., are true diabetics – almost all will be pituitary pars intermedia dysfunction (PPID) cases and some may be hyperlipaemia cases.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

167

### 10 Section 7 Anti-infective drugs

#### 10.1 (a) ANTIVIRAL DRUGS

##### 10.1.1 Idoxuridine

**Indications:** Type 1 and Type 2 superficial herpes viral keratitis.

**Presentation:** 0.1% or 0.5% eye ointment (available from St Paul's Eye Hospital, Royal Liverpool Infirmary Pharmacy, Liverpool).

**Dose:** apply every 2-4 hours until epithelial defect closed, then every 4-6 hours for further 3-4 days.

##### 10.1.1.1 Notes:

- Epitheliotoxic, may retard closure of epithelial defects. Do not use in pregnant mares.

##### 10.1.2 Acyclovir

**POM V**

**Indications:** Type 2 superficial herpes viral keratitis.

**Presentation:** Eye ointment, acyclovir 3%; 4.5 g.

Do not use cutaneous form for eyes!

**Dose:** apply every 3-4 hours.

##### 10.1.2.1 Note:

- Unpredictable efficacy but generally effective.

##### 10.1.3 Ganciclovir

**POM V**

**Indications:** Acute herpetic keratitis.

**Presentation:** Eye drops, 0.15% in gel basis.

**Dose:** Apply every 2-4 hours until epithelial defects closed, then every 4-6 hours for further 4-7 days. Usual duration of treatment is 14-21 days.

167

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

168

10.1.3.1

### Notes:

- May cause ocular irritation and secondary punctate ulceration (check status of cornea before medication).

10.1.4

### Trifluridine

**Indications:** Type 1 and Type 2 superficial herpes viral keratitis.

**Presentation:** Eye drops 1%.

**Dose:** Apply every 2-4 hours until epithelial defect closed, then every 4-6 hours for further 3-4 days.

10.1.4.1

### Note:

- Only available in UK on request from Moorfields Eye Hospital, 162 City Road, London, EC1V 2PD.

10.1.5

### Vidarabine

**Indications:** Superficial viral keratitis due to equine herpes virus infection.

**Presentation:** Eye ointment 3%.

**Dose:** Apply every 3 hours until epithelial defect closed, then every 12 hours for 7 days (human).

10.1.5.1

### Note:

- Human drug, efficacy in horses not known, anecdotally good.

10.1.6

### Interferon-alpha

**Indications:** Prevention or alleviation of viral respiratory disease.

**Presentation:** Injectable.

**Dose:** 0.1 iu/kg PO sid.

10.1.6.1

### Note:

- Human drug, equivocal results in horses.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 10.2 (b) ANTIBIOTICS

#### 10.2.1 Note:

Every precaution should be taken to ensure the use of swabs, cultures and sensitivity testing of bacteria. Resistance *in vitro* does not always mean that the compound is of no value but due note must be taken of such results. Sensitivity *in vivo*, likewise may not result in sensitivity *in vitro*. Tissue availability of the compound may alter the effects significantly. Doses should be accurately calculated from the bodyweight of the patient and courses should be completed to avoid resistance as far as possible.

168

169

Commercial preparations containing more than one antibiotic agent may require dosage adjustment for one or other of the drugs included. It may be impossible to give the correct dosage of both or all the agents.

#### 10.2.2 Antibiotic resistance

Antibiotic selection in horses is different to that in many other species for a number of reasons. The sensitivity of hindgut fermenters, such as horses, to antibiotic-induced colitis means that a significant proportion of antibiotics available for use in animals cannot be used safely in horses. Limited markets and lengthy and costly development periods further limit the development of equine-specific preparations by drug companies. Furthermore, extrapolated doses of human antibiotic preparations applied to horses is often prohibitively expensive, inappropriate and sometimes dangerous (e.g. risk of colitis). Licensing laws, which regard the horse as a food-producing animals in some parts of Europe, make using these human products potentially illegal.

Further, antibiotic resistance is an increasing problem facing all medical practice. This is not a new problem; veterinarians frequently encounter resistant organisms, and are trained to select the most appropriate antibiotic type as necessary. Recent interest in public awareness and concern over antibiotic resistance, for example methicillin-resistant strains of *S. aureus* (MRSA) outbreaks in human hospitals are becoming major issues to equine practitioners. Although the highly resistant organisms encountered in human hospitals are not thought to be a problem in veterinary hospitals, MRSA has already been reported in an outbreak at an equine hospital in the USA. The irresponsible use of antibiotics by veterinarians is perceived by the medical profession as a source of public concern. Clearly social and political pressures on the veterinary profession have resulted in some changes, however, great care should be taken to demonstrate that the profession does have a responsible attitude to antibiotic use. This not only safeguards the immediate welfare of animals, but perhaps more importantly safeguards the future use and effectiveness of veterinary antibiotics.

#### 10.2.3 Choice of antibiotic

Before selecting an antibiotic the clinician **MUST** first consider two factors:

1. **The specific needs of the patient.** For example, neonatal foals have different pharmacodynamics from adults in many respects and some of the drugs have known toxicity to one or other organ/system. Also, for example enrofloxacin has specific harmful effects on growth plates that make this drug contraindicated in foals. Tetracycline may cause flexor laxity in foals or diarrhoea in adults and so due attention should be paid to the case itself. Likewise, hepatic failure may have a profound effect on metabolism of drugs in all ages of horse. Known individual allergies to antibacterials should mean that those drugs are specifically contraindicated. Most current antibiotics in equine practice have a relatively

169

170

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

wide margin between therapeutic and toxic effects and so toxicity is not usually regarded as a significant factor in most cases. However, there are individual drugs that have significant toxicity.

2. **The likely organism.** This has a profound influence on the choice of drug! There are many reports of 'common organisms' in the various disease processes and their likely sensitivities and so these data should be used to guide selection. The final choice will usually, in theory at least, be determined by specific culture and sensitivity. Unfortunately these are all too seldom performed.

### 10.2.4 Antibacterial policy

Polices should be directed at 'best practice'. This will result in minimal opportunities for resistance and toxicity and maximal return in efficacy. In general:

- Viral infections should not be treated with antibiotics.
- Samples should be taken to establish the nature and sensitivity of the bacteria involved.
- Doses should be carefully calculated according to the weight (or surface area) of the patient and should be maintained at the correct interval for a suitable duration. Inadequate doses predispose resistance and in some infections a higher than normal dose may be indicated – but this may result in significant toxicity.
- The route of administration is also important and must be considered carefully.
- Lack of response should trigger a complete reassessment of the case to establish if this is due to an error of diagnosis, an error of selection of drug or development of a resistance complication.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 3.6 Suggested antibiotic drugs for use in horses. Note: The list is not complete but covers some of the more common drugs available in the UK.

Drug	Route	Dose (mg/kg)	Interval (h)	Comments
Amikacin	IM/IV/SC	15–25 (25 mg/kg in foals)	24	Therapeutic concentration monitoring ideal.
Amoxicillin (amoxycillin) (3H <sub>2</sub> O)	IM/SC	Injectable	12	Reactions sometimes severe.
	PO	Oral 30–50	8–12	NOT LA forms.
	PO/IM	Foals 10–30	12	
Ampicillin	IV/IM	10–80	6–8	Useful pleural cavity irrigation. Not LA forms.
Ceftiofur	IV	2	12–24	EXPENSIVE BUT GOOD ACTIVITY/PENETRATION.
Chloramphenicol (succinate)	IV	25	12	Resistance problems risk of aplastic anaemia etc.?
Enrofloxacin	PO	7.5	24	Contraindicated in horses less than 3 years of age (high risk of cartilage disorders)
	PO	4	12	
	IV	5	24	
Gentamicin sulphate	IV/IM*	6.6 (11 mg/kg in foals less than 7 days old)	24	Nephrotoxicity. Therapeutic concentration monitoring ideal especially in foals.
Kanamycin sulphate	IM	10	12	No veterinary formulation – availability?
Neomycin	IM	5	24	With penicillin. IV forms not available in UK.
Oxytetracycline	IV (slow)	5–7	12	Diarrhoea risk. Not LA forms or IM.
Penicillin-Na G	IV/IM	15–25 000 iu	6	K salts not to be given IV.
Procaine penicillin G	IM	20 000 iu	24	Useful routine antibiotic cover.
Streptomycin sulphate	IM/IV	8–12	4	Probably useless in horses!
Ticarcillin/clavulanate	IV	50–75	6	Expensive. Very effective for foals (septicaemia).
Ticarcillin	IV	50–75	6	Expensive. Effective for foals (septicaemia).
Trimethoprim-sulphadoxine	IV/IM* PO	15–20 (total)	12	Oral forms useful. Broad-spectrum effects. Minimal toxicity.

### 10.2.5 Amikacin

POM V

**Indications:** Aminoglycoside infections due to Gram +ve organisms (except penicillinase producers) and most Gram –ve organisms especially if gentamicin resistance.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** 50/250 mg amikacin base/mL solution for IM injection, 2 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:**

15-25 mg/kg q 24 h IM.

Foals: 20-25 mg/kg q 24 h slow IV/IM.

Subconjunctival 75-100 mg.

Intra-articular 125 mg.

Intrauterine: 2 grams in 200 mL normal saline q 72 h  $\times$  3.

10.2.5.1 **Notes:**

- This class of antibiotic exhibits concentration-dependent bactericidal activity and a postantibiotic effect. The longer interval between dosing provides a drug-free period, which allows reversal of adaptive resistance.
- No formulation in UK licensed for horses. Higher dosage regimens for respiratory infections.
- Very useful for septicaemic foals where higher dose rates are due to a larger volume of distribution.
- Also useful for intrauterine use in mares (no significant systemic absorption from uterus).
- Useful for intra-articular use (probable antibiotic of choice for most infective joint disorders).
- Foals' blood concentrations should be monitored.
- Nephrotoxicity problems similar to other aminoglycosides.

10.2.6 **Ampicillin**

POM V

**Indications:** Beta lactam infections due to Gram +ve organisms (except penicillinase producers) and most Gram -ve organisms (poor for *E. coli*).

Not for Mycobacteria, *Proteus* (except *P. mirabilis*), *Pseudomonas*, *Rickettsia*, *Mycoplasma*.

**Presentations:** 500 mg, 2 g powder for reconstitution single-dose vials; 150 mg/mL suspension IM injection 50/100 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 7-10 mg/kg sodium salt (IV/IM) q 12 h.

7.5 mg/kg trihydrate salt (IM) q 24 h.

172

10.2.6.1

## Notes:

- Higher dose for serious infections, low for urinary tract infections.
- Soluble salt only stable for 1-2 hours after reconstitution.
- Bioavailability high orally but impractical in all but foals.
- Useful adjunct to metronidazole for pleural irrigation in infective pleuritis.

**Long-acting forms are contraindicated (SEVERE LOCAL REACTIONS/ANAPHYLAXIS).**

10.2.7

## Azithromycin

POM V

**Indications:** new macrolide antibiotic, similar properties and spectrum of activity to erythromycin, no published reports but clinical experience indicates safe for use in foals. Effective for Gram-positive organisms, *Chlamydia*, *Mycoplasma*, *Listeria*, *Rhodococcus*, *Corynebacteria*. Indicated for treatment of proliferative enteritis due to *Lawsonia intracellularis*.

**Presentations:** Capsules containing azithromycin dihydrate 250/500 mg. Azithromycin dihydrate powder equivalent to 300 mg, 600 mg, 900 mg, or 1200 mg azithromycin per bottle. After reconstitution, each 5 mL of suspension contains 100 mg or 200 mg of azithromycin.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg q 24 h, after 5 days, q 48 h.

10.2.7.1

## Note:

- No UK veterinary preparations.
- Only practical for use in foals.

10.2.8

## Cefepime

POM V

**Indications:** Fourth-generation cephalosporin, increased spectrum of activity compared to ceftiofur, potentially useful against resistant strains of *E. coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, and *P. aeruginosa*.

**Presentation:** Solution for injection equivalent to 500 mg, 1 g and 2 g per vial.

**Dose:** 11 mg/kg IV q 8 h for foals.

6 mg/kg IV q 8 h for adult horses.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

10.2.8.1

### Notes:

- No veterinary preparations available. When used orally can cause colic.

173

10.2.9

### Ceftiofur

174

POM V

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum, bactericidal third-generation cephalosporin antibiotic. CNS, joint, eye, urinary and peritoneal infections. Good effect in respiratory disease especially *Streptococcus equi/zooepidemicus* and *Pasteurella* infections showing penicillin resistance. Limited spectrum against Gram +ve and extended spectrum against Gram –ve.

#### **Presentations:**

1 g vial containing powder (+ 20 mL diluent).

4 g vial containing powder (+ 80 mL diluent).

Ophthalmic ointment (see ophthalmic drugs).

**Dose:** 1-5 mg/kg IV q 6 h, 1-5 mg/kg IM q 24 h.

Usual adult dose: 2.2 mg/kg q 12 h.

Usual foal dose: 5 mg/kg q 6 h, can give up to 10 mg/kg.

10.2.9.1

### Notes:

- Good tissue penetration with rapid metabolism (metabolites are still active) – concentrates in tissue compartments. Excreted via urine and faeces. 10-day courses are usually required.
- If given IM maximum of 10 mL should be placed in any one site.
- Diarrhoea has occurred after IV injections of long courses at high doses.
- Not licensed for IV use.

10.2.10

### Chloramphenicol

POM V

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum, bacteriostatic. Suspected/**confirmed** chloramphenicol-sensitive salmonellosis (plasmid-borne resistance widespread). Active against rickettsial and chlamydial infections, most anaerobes, most Gram +ve aerobes, non-enteric aerobes. CNS infections as readily crosses lipid barriers. Corneal ulceration (topical).

#### **Presentations:**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

150/250 mg/mL solution for slow IV (IM) injection.

1 g as sodium succinate powder for reconstitution.

Ophthalmic ointment (see ophthalmic drugs).

**Dose:** 25-50 mg/kg q 8/12 h IV (succinate preferred).

### 10.2.10.1 Notes:

- Not licensed for use in horses or food-producing animals. Rapid metabolism in horses.
- Prolonged courses may result in reversible aplastic anaemia in horses although has been used for many years in safety. Significant interactions with penicillin and rifampicin. Possibly over-rated as antibiotic for corneal/conjunctival infections (consider gentamicin first) but does penetrate into anterior chamber.

**Use with extreme caution – avoid skin contact.**

174

175

### 10.2.11 Cefuroxime

POM V

**Indications:** Second-generation cephalosporin. Gram +ve cocci (not enterococci), many gram –ve including *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Salmonella*. Not *Pseudomonas* or anaerobes. Good penetration other than CNS. Relatively non-toxic.

**Presentations:** 125, 250, 599 mg tablets.

Oral suspension to reconstitute with water.

**Dose:** 25-50 mg/kg PO q 8 h.

### 10.2.11.1 Notes:

- Extremely expensive (foals only?).
- Human drug.

### 10.2.12 Ceftriaxone

POM V

**Indications:** Third-generation cephalosporin. Broad-spectrum, gram +ve, gram –ve, some anaerobes. Excellent penetration into most body tissues, pleural fluid, peritoneal fluid, bile, bronchial mucosa, bone, myometrium, inflamed and healthy blood CSF barrier. Relatively non-toxic.

**Presentations:** 1, 2 or 10 g vials for injection.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** 25 mg/kg PO q 12 h.

### 10.2.12.1 Notes:

- Human drug.
- Quite expensive (foals only?).

### 10.2.13 Doxycycline

POM V

**Indications:** Bacteriostatic tetracycline. Broad-spectrum, not *Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter* or *Enterococcus*.

Used for treatment of *Neorickettsia risticii* (Potomac horse fever) and other equine *Neorickettsia* (oxytetracycline is the first-line treatment for this condition). Mycoplasmal respiratory infections.

175

**Presentation:** 100 mg oral tablet/capsule.

176

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO q 12 h. for 5 days. Dissolve tablets in water and supply by stomach tube or syringed into mouth.

### 10.2.13.1 Notes:

- NOT for parenteral use – fatal cardiac arrhythmias, collapse, death. Rapid absorption and longer effect than oxytetracycline.
- Ophthalmic solutions have a useful anticollagenase activity in addition, but are not generally available. Concentrations are critical (weak solutions must be used!) but are not yet established for horses.

### 10.2.14 Enrofloxacin

POM V

**Indications:** bactericidal, broad-spectrum quinolone includes Gram –ve aerobes and staphylococci, but no activity against anaerobes hence antibiotic-associated diarrhoea rare. Used for pleuropneumonia due to aerobes, and first-line choice for salmonellosis.

**Presentations:** 25 mg/mL solution for SLOW IV injection.

2.5% and 10% oral solution.

**Dose:** 5 mg/kg IV q 24 h; 7.5 mg/kg orally q 24 h or 4 mg/kg PO q 12 h.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.2.14.1 Notes:

- Not licensed for use in horses. Contraindicated in horses less than 3 years of age (high risk of cartilage disorders).

### 10.2.15 Erythromycin

POM V

**Indications:** Macrolide-static or -cidal activity according to dose rate/susceptibility. Effective for Gram +ve organisms, *Chlamydia*, *Mycoplasma*, *Listeria*, *Rhodococcus*, *Corynebacteria*. Indicated for treatment of proliferative enteritis due to *Lawsonia intracellularis* infection due to intracellular action.

**Presentations:** Erythromycin estolate 250 mg caps, 500 mg tabs, 250 mg/5 mL oral suspension. Powder for reconstitution 300 mg/g; 78 g and 165 mg/g; 70 g water-miscible solution for injection 200 mg/mL in 50 mL multidose vial.

**Dose:** Erythromycin estolate 25 mg/kg PO q 8 h.

Erythromycin phosphate 37.5 mg/kg PO q 12 h.

Erythromycin injectable 2 mg/kg IM q 6 h for ileus.

176

### 10.2.15.1 Notes:

- Avoid if hepatic function not normal.
- Estolate and phosphate salts best PO.
- Specifically indicated in treatment of *Rhodococcus equi* infection in foals.
- Erythromycin lactobionate PO acts as intestinal prokinetic (q.v.).

**AVOID PARENTERAL FORMS (human preparations) – severe local reactions especially IM.**

177

### 10.2.16 Gentamicin

POM V

**Indications:** Infections due to most Gram –ve and some Gram +ve organisms. Particularly *Ps. aeruginosa*, *R. equi*. Bactericidal. Intrauterine infections (use infusion).

**Presentation:** 20/40 mg/mL single dose (2 mL) vials.

50 mg/mL; 50 mL.

**Dose:** 3 mg/kg q 8 h slow IV (2-3 min) or 6.6 mg/kg IV q 24 h.

2.2 mg/kg q 8 h IV prophylactic for abdominal surgery (+ penicillin G).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Foals up to 7 days old, 11 mg/kg sid.

### 10.2.16.1 Notes:

- 6.6 mg/kg q 24 h is as effective or better than repeated lower doses – more convenient.
- Good joint/eye penetration.
- Foals of up to 4 months may show severe nephrotoxicity. Monitor renal function before and during therapy.

### 10.2.16.1.1 DO NOT USE WITH OTHER NEPHROTOXIC DRUGS.

- Poor oral absorption. Rapid resistance.
- Therapeutic concentration monitoring ideal, especially in foals. Do not use with loop diuretics.

### 10.2.17 Imipenem-cilastatin sodium

POM V

**Indications:** A carbapenem. Very broad-spectrum. Almost all gram +ve and gram –ve, including *Pseudomonas*, *Listeria*, *Enterococcus*. Not anaerobes. Good penetration except CNS. Toxic effects can include hepatocellular jaundice, auto-immune-mediated haemolytic anaemia, diarrhoea, fits, nausea, pruritis, rash, pseudomembranous colitis (all in humans).

177

**Presentation:** Powder for reconstitution and injection. To store make up with 1% lignocaine (lidocaine) solution; lasts 4 h at room temperature, 24 h in refrigerator.

178

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg IM q 8-12 h.

### 10.2.17.1 Notes:

- Human drug.
- Expensive (foals only?).

### 10.2.18 Kanamycin

POM V

**Indications:** Aminoglycoside gram –ve bacterial infections. Foal septicaemia.

**Presentation:** 1 g powder for reconstitution to 250 mg/mL for IM/IV injection.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg IM/IV/SC q 12 h.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.2.18.1 Notes:

- Not licensed for use in horses in UK.
- Low-risk nephrotoxicity (but typical problems of aminoglycosides).
- Do not use if pregnant or lactating.

### 10.2.19 Marbofloxacin/fluoroquinolone

POM V

**Indications:** As for enrofloxacin; bactericidal, broad-spectrum includes Gram –ve aerobes but little activity against anaerobes hence antibiotic-associated diarrhoea rare.

Used for pleuropneumonia due to aerobes, and first-line choice for salmonellosis.

**Presentation:** 100 mg/mL solution, various sizes; 80 mg tablets.

**Dose:** 2 mg/kg slow IV or orally q 24 h.

### 10.2.19.1 Notes:

- Not licensed for use in horses in UK.
- Avoid use in foals due to cartilage damage.

### 10.2.20 Metronidazole

POM V

**Indications:** Nitroimidazole specifically for treatment of anaerobes, narrow spectrum including protozoa and Gram +ve and Gram –ve anaerobes. May have intestinal anti-inflammatory activity. Used for clostridial enteritis, peritonitis. Soaked swabs may control local anaerobic infections e.g. feet/wounds.

178

80% oral systemic availability.

179

**Presentations:** 200/400/500 mg tablets. 5 mg/mL; 50 mL solution for injection, IV infusion, oral solution or topical application.

Powder for reconstitution 450 mg/mL; 80 mL. Oral paste 500 mg/g.

**Dose:** 20 mg/kg slow IV infusion q 24 h for 3-5 days or 15 mg/kg IV loading dose then 7.5 mg/kg IV q 6 h, inject over 1 h.

15 mg/kg q 8 h orally for 3-5 days or 30 mg/kg PR q 8 h.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.2.20.1 Notes:

Solutions not specifically prepared for IV injection should be filtered as administered by slow IV injection (or not administered at all by this route).

May cause diarrhoea in some horses especially if intestinal function is already impaired, e.g. after colic surgery.

### 10.2.21 Neomycin

POM V

**Indications:** Aminoglycoside used to reduce ammonia-producing organisms in large intestine in cases of hepatic encephalopathy. Gram -ve infections (especially enteric organisms). Decreases microbes in colon prior to colon surgery.

Ophthalmic infections.

**Presentations:** 60 mg/unit dose; 120 mL oral doser; or 70 mg/unit dose; 210 mL oral dose.

700 mg/g soluble powder; 500 g.

Ophthalmic cream (see ophthalmic drugs below).

**Dose:** 5-7.5 mg/kg IM q 12-24 h. Treat for 3-4 days. For hepatic encephalopathy 50-100 mg/kg orally once daily. Foal doses see individual product.

### 10.2.21.1 Notes:

- No products licensed in UK for use in horses. Toxic effects as for gentamicin. Not as effective as other aminoglycosides against *Pseudomonas*, *Klebsiella* and *E. coli*.
- Useful for *Rhodococcus equi* infection if rifampicin resistance.
- May be given PO in foals. Intramuscular courses longer than 7 days cause local/severe myositis.

### 10.2.22 Nitrofurantoin

POM V

**Indications:** Nitrofurans broad-spectrum bactericidal effect. Active against *Salmonella* spp., coliforms, *Mycoplasma* spp., *Coccidia* spp., and some other protozoa. Urinary tract bacterial infections.

**Presentation:** 50 and 100 mg tablets.

**Dose:** 20 mg/kg.

179

180

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.2.22.1 Note:

- Not licensed in UK for use in horses.

**Occasional urticarial skin reactions (stop course).**

### 10.2.23 Oxytetracycline

POM V

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum bacteriostatic tetracycline. Urinary and respiratory tract bacterial infections.

Useful effect in the treatment of contracted tendon syndromes in young foals. First-line treatment of *Neorickettsia* infections (e.g. *Neorickettsia risticii*/ Potomac horse fever).

**Presentation:** Solution for injection containing 50 mg oxytetracycline/mL. For SLOW IV administration.

**Dose:** 6.6 mg/kg IV (IM) q 12 h for 5 days.

### 10.2.23.1 Notes:

**Tetracyclines have been associated with some fatal cases of diarrhoea especially in adults – this risk may be small but it does exist and due note should be taken before embarking on this drug in adult horses.** The drug is actually used widely and there are very few reports of any problems. Stronger formulations (10%) and long-acting solutions should not be used in horses under any conditions.

- IM injection may cause large local reactions (which may abscessate).
- Contraindicated in stressed animals (e.g. surgery, trauma, anaesthesia) – dysbacteriosis of large colon and diarrhoea.
- However, the drug is well tolerated by foals. Septicaemia and joint infections are treatable.
- Some evidence that foals with contracted tendons can improve following administration of a single (or two) large doses of the drug.
- Antagonistic effect with bactericidal drugs.

### 10.2.24 Penicillin (benzathine, G-K, G-Na, G-procaine)

POM V

**Indications:** Beta lactam infections due to penicillin-sensitive Gram +ve bacteria.

**Presentations:** See [Table 3.7](#)

**Dose:** See [Table 3.7](#).

180

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 3.7

181

Name	Route	Conc	Presentations	Dose (/kg)	Interval
Na benzyl-	IM (IV) <sup>†</sup>	3 g (5 meg units)	Powder-vials Single dose 6 mL water	10 mg	8 h
Procaine-	IM	300 mg/mL	100/30 mL multidose	10 mg/kg (1500–2000 iu)	24 h
Benzathine	IM	112.5 mg/mL + 150 mg/mL procaine	10 mL multidose	15–30 mg (1500–2000 iu)	3–4 days

Check if Na or K salt – do not inject K salt IV – very dangerous!

\* Note: many formulations are in iu/mL.

**Note that international units (iu) do not convert directly to mg!**

### 10.2.24.1 Notes:

- Intravenous Na<sup>+</sup> or K<sup>+</sup> benzathine penicillin occasionally is associated with sudden death and/or abrupt cardiac arrhythmias. These drugs should not be administered **during anaesthesia or in combination with other drugs likely to affect cardiac rhythm.**
- Na<sup>+</sup> salts are absorbed more slowly when given IM. **Avoid concurrent bacteriostatic agents.**
- Always check formulation for suitable route of administration.
- **DO NOT mix with other drugs.**
- Allergies possible (anaphylactic reactions – if these are encountered DO NOT use cephalosporin either).
- Anaphylactic shock requires emergency treatment with adrenaline (epinephrine) (see p. 114).
- There are no effective oral preparations for horses.

**Warning: Check contents/permitted route before use (many products are cocktails of drugs!). Mixtures of different drugs may make accurate dosage of all components difficult!**

181

### 10.2.25 Rifampicin

182

POM V

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum antibiotic. Particularly indicated for *Rhodococcus equi* (with erythromycin). Treatment of tuberculosis.

**Presentation:** 150 + 300 mg capsule, oral.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO q 12 h. Infusion given at 20 mg/kg over 3–4 hours.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.2.25.1 Notes:

- Rapid resistance – never use as single drug; use with erythromycin (qv) (synergistic effect). Excellent lipid solubility and cell/tissue-penetrating properties. Good penetration of caseous and purulent material.
- May cause red discoloration in urine. Very safe even over long courses.
- Prolonged courses usually required – monitor progress by chest X-rays and blood chemistry.
- Expensive.

### 10.2.26 Spectinomycin

POM V

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum bacteriostatic. Active against Gram +ve and Gram –ve organisms. Minimal activity against anaerobes. Used for treatment of respiratory and enteric infections.

**Presentations:** Clear solution 100 mg/mL for injection (100 mL multidose vials).

50 mg/unit dose; 100 unit oral doser.

**Dose:** 20 mg/kg IM q 8 h.

5-10 mg/kg trihydrate salt (IM) q 12-24 h.

### 10.2.26.1 Note:

- No products licensed for use in horse in UK.

**SEVERE LOCAL REACTIONS.**

### 10.2.27 Streptomycin

POM V

**Indications:** Streptomycin-sensitive bacterial infections (Gram –ve mostly), staphylococcal infections.

**Presentation:** Solution for IM 250 mg/mL injection (as 100 mL multidose vials).

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg IM (IV) q 24 h.

182

### 10.2.27.1 Notes:

- Largely useless in horses – dose requirements and frequency make this an inappropriate drug.
- Mixtures with penicillin are usually particularly useless – dose far too low!

183

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Slight theoretical risk nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity.

### 10.2.28 Ticarcillin

POM V

**Indications:** Beta lactam broad-spectrum, bactericidal. Particularly active against J-haemolytic *Streptococci* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Bacteroides fragilis*.

Intrauterine flush, joint infections and neonatal septicaemia.

**Presentation:** 1 g, 5 g dry powder for reconstitution.

**Dose:**

40-80 mg/kg q 8 h.

For foals: 50 mg/kg q 6 h IM/SC/IV.

Foal constant rate infusion: 50 mg/kg loading dose, then 8.3 mg/kg/hour.

Uterine flush: 6 g dissolved in 100-500 mL saline q 24 h × 3 (during oestrus).

#### 10.2.28.1 Note:

- Expensive. No veterinary product licence in UK. Good tissue penetration. Potentiation with clavulanic acid is effective but rapid resistance can develop to either form. Some good reports of use in septicaemia in foals – but some disappointing.

### 10.3 (c) SULPHONAMIDES

#### 10.3.1 Sulphadimidine (sulfadimidine)

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of bacterial infections of upper respiratory tract.

**Presentations:** 25 g white crystalline powder for oral administration. 333 mg/mL solution for injection.

**Dose:** 100 mg/kg PO in feed q 12 h 5-7 days.

#### 10.3.1.1 Notes:

- Ensure good water intake.
- Prolonged courses – use 50 mg/kg and administer B complex vitamins parenterally.
- No preparations licensed for horses.

183



### 10.3.1.2 Potentiated sulphonamides

POM V

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum antibacterial (most Gram –ve, some Gram +ve). Protozoal encephalomyelitis (with pyrimethamine).

### 10.3.2 Sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine) with trimethoprim

**Presentations:**

Sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine) 200/400 mg/mL + trimethoprim 40/80 mg/mL solution for IM or IV injection; 50 and 100 mL multidose vials.

Single-dose sachets (37.5/50 g) (one sachet/500 kg) oral.

Oral pastes: Sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine) 1.25-1.3 g/unit + trimethoprim 250-260 mg/unit; 37.5-45 g metered dose applicators.

**Dose:** 30 mg/kg q 24 h orally or 15-24 mg/kg by slow IV or by IM injection q 24 h (equivalent to **4 and 20 mg/kg trimethoprim/sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine)** respectively).

### 10.3.3 Sulphadoxine with trimethoprim

**Presentation:** sulphadoxine 200 mg/mL + trimethoprim 40 mg/mL solution for IV and IM injection; 100 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 15 mg/kg slow IV injection or IM injection.

#### 10.3.3.1 Notes:

- Dose of 30 mg/kg PO q 12 h is commonly found to be more effective. **CARE GIVING IV INJECTIONS – MUST BE VERY SLOW.** Increased pulmonary penetration when used in combination with clenbuterol. Takes time to be effective therefore no significant benefit parenteral versus oral administration, and latter much safer. Consider injection route in cases of choke lasting more than 24 hours.
- *Ps. aeruginosa* resistant. Oral courses effective over long periods without apparent toxic effects. Check formulation and permitted route before administration. Better absorption after starvation (possibly best administered on empty stomach – difficult to manage).
- Do not administer detomidine, xylazine, romifidine or halothane to horses receiving TMS medication (risk of death from heart failure).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.4 (d) COMPOUND ANTIBACTERIALS

Mixing antibiotics cannot generally be recommended however several mixtures are so commonly used together that they are sold as an individual product. The use of penicillin and aminoglycoside is well documented due to their complementary bactericidal activity against Gram-positive and -negative organisms respectively. It should be noted however that although therapeutic levels of procaine penicillin are maintained for 24 hours, levels of aminoglycoside fall to below minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) within 12 hours. They still remain useful in equine practice.

184

#### 10.4.1 Penicillin + neomycin

185

POM V

**Indications:** infections due to sensitive Gram +ve and Gram -ve organisms.

**Presentations:** 100 mg/mL neomycin sulphate + 200 mg/mL procaine benzylpenicillin; 100 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 0.05 mL/kg q 24 h by IM injection.

##### 10.4.1.1 Note:

**Not IV administration.** Causes local pain and reaction after 4-5 days.

#### 10.4.2 Penicillin + streptomycin

POM V

**Indications:** Infections due to sensitive Gram +ve and Gram -ve organisms.

**Presentations:** 250 mg/mL dihydrostreptomycin sulphate + 200 mg/mL procaine benzylpenicillin; 100 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 0.04 mL/kg q 24 h by IM injection.

##### 10.4.2.1 Note:

**Not IV administration.** Causes local pain and reaction after 4-5 days.

### 10.5 (e) ANTIFUNGAL AGENTS

#### 10.5.1 Amphotericin B

POM V

**Indications:** Active against yeasts and fungi. Deep or systemic mycoses. Histoplasmosis, blastomycosis.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** 50 mg/mL injection single-dose vials, supplied as powder for reconstitution.

**Dose:** 100 mg test dose. 0.2 mg/kg increasing to 0.5-1.0 mg/kg over 2 days. Given as very dilute IV solution (0.1 mg/mL in 5% dextrose saline drip).

10.5.1.1

### Notes:

- Very light sensitive (protect from light at all times).
- Nephrotoxicity common if prolonged course. May be given alternate days to reduce toxic effects. Monitor renal function. Dilute to avoid cardiac toxicity. May be given with corticosteroids to reduce adverse effects during administration.

185

10.5.2

### Griseofulvin

186

POM V

**Indications:** Systemic treatment of dermatomycoses.

**Presentations:** Fine beige powder containing 7.5% griseofulvin. 1 kg and 3.5 kg packs with 20 g and 100 g dispensing cups included. Paste in graduated dosing syringe for oral use 1.5 g/unit dose; 70 g metered-dose applicator.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO q 24 h for 7-14 days.

10.5.2.1

### Notes:

**NOT TO BE USED during pregnancy, wear impervious gloves to handle.** Reduced effect if concurrent phenylbutazone. Effect slow to develop. No action against systemic mycoses due to *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, blastomycoses, etc. Generally need longer dosing periods than manufacturer's recommendation.

**Should not be handled by women of childbearing age.**

10.5.3

### Ketoconazole

POM V

**Indications:** Fungistatic. Systemic treatment of dermatomycoses. Also topical treatment of fungal infections (*Aspergillus* spp. require high doses).

**Presentations:** 200 mg tablets.

Suspension of 20 mg/mL; 100 mL bottle.

**Dose:** 30 mg/kg PO q 24 h.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.5.3.1 Note:

- No products licensed for horses in UK. Not for use in pregnant animals. Can reduce testosterone synthesis in breeding males. Possible hepatotoxicity. Not to be used with H<sub>2</sub>-blockers, anticholinergics or antacids (increase stomach pH – inhibits absorption of conazoles).

### 10.5.4 Miconazole

POM V

**Indications:** Topical treatment of dermatomycoses.

**Presentations:** Shampoo containing chlorhexidine gluconate 2%, miconazole nitrate 2%; 250 mL bottle.

**Dose:** Shampoo twice weekly until symptoms subside and negative dermatophyte culture.

#### 10.5.4.1 Notes:

- Remove crusts before use.

186

### 10.5.5 Natamycin

187

POM V

**Indications:** Topical and environmental treatment of dermatomycoses.

**Presentation:** Dry powder for re-suspension containing 2 g/10 g powder.

**Dose:** 2 litres and 10 litres water used to suspend 2 g and 10 g bottles respectively = natamycin 0.01%. Sponge onto skin or spray. Wood, leather and metal can be sprayed. Repeated after 4-5 days.

#### 10.5.5.1 Notes:

- Read instructions on suspension carefully first. Water quality important and method of suspension significant. Apply by spray – use facemask for personal protection. 10 litre suspension (10 g) effective for two horses or one horse and stable (apply with spray not aerosol generator).

### 10.6 (f) ANTIPROTOZOAL DRUGS

#### 10.6.1 Diminazene aceturate

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of babesiosis due to *B. equi* and *B. caballi*. Treatment of trypanosomiasis (including Dourine [*T. equiperdum*] and Surra [*T. brucei*]).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Powder (1.05 g) in sachets for reconstitution (12.5 mL water) as non-sterile 7% solution for injection. Availability limited to endemic areas.

**Dose:** 3.5 mg/kg deep IM single dose only for treatment of *Trypanosoma brucei* infection.

### 10.6.1.1 Notes:

- Severe local reactions including abscessation, sloughing etc are common. Anaphylactic reactions have resulted in peracute death. Very low therapeutic index. Consider any other alternative first (including imidocarb, trypan blue or phenamidine).

### 10.6.2 Imidocarb

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of babesiosis due to *B. equi* and *B. caballi*. Also some effect in treatment of trypanosomiasis.

**Presentation:** 12% solution for injection, 100 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** 2 mg/kg deep IM q 24 h on two consecutive days.

### 10.6.2.1 Notes:

- Severe local reactions are common (with subsequent abscess formation) – consider brisket site and vary site for subsequent injections.

187

### 10.6.3 Isometamidium

188

POM V

**Indications:** Infections due to *T. brucei*, *T. vivax* and *T. congolense*.

**Dose:** 0.25-2 mg/kg IM injection.

### 10.6.3.1 Note:

- Drugs have been used for many years and resistance is commonly encountered.

### 10.6.4 Metronidazole

POM V

**Indications:** specifically for treatment of anaerobes, narrow spectrum including protozoa and Gram +ve and –ve anaerobes. May have intestinal anti-inflammatory activity. Used for clostridial enteritis, peritonitis. Soaked swabs may control local anaerobic infections, e.g. feet/wounds.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

80% oral systemic availability.

**Presentations:** 200/400/500 mg tablets. 5 mg/mL; 50 mL solution for injection, IV infusion, oral solution or topical application.

Powder for reconstitution 450 mg/mL; 80 mL. Oral paste 500 mg/g.

**Dose:** 20 mg/kg slow IV infusion q 24 h for 3-5 days.

15 mg/kg q 8 h orally for 3-5 days.

### 10.6.4.1 Notes:

- Solutions not specifically prepared for IV injection should be filtered as administered by slow IV injection (or not administered at all by this route).
- May cause diarrhoea in some horses especially if intestinal function is already impaired e.g. after colic surgery.

### 10.6.5 Pyrimethamine

POM V

**Indications:** Toxoplasmosis. Equine protozoal myeloencephalitis (EPM) (with sulphonamides).

**Presentation:** 25 mg tablets.

**Dose:** 0.1-0.2 mg/kg PO q 24 h (with trimethoprim-sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine) at 15 mg/kg q 12 h. Doses of 1 mg/kg have been used.

### 10.6.5.1 Notes:

- Prolonged courses possible (over 2-3 months). If used with sulphonamides may cause leucopaenia, thrombocytopaenia and anaemia. Synergistic with sulphonamides in activity against toxoplasma.

188

### 10.6.6 Quinapyramine

POM V

**Indications:** Infections due to *T. equiperdum*. Also for *T. brucei*, *T. vivax* and *T. congolense* when treated in addition with homidium chloride at 1 mg/kg.

**Dose:** 3 mg/kg, divide dose between sites due to severe local reaction.

### 10.6.6.1 Notes:

- Drugs have been used for many years and resistance is commonly encountered, *T. equiperdum* infections should not be treated due to risk of developing carrier status.

189

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.6.7 Suramin

POM V

**Indications:** Infections due to *T. evansi* and *T. equiperdum*.

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg slow IV, second treatment 1 week later.

#### 10.6.7.1 Notes:

- Drugs have been used for many years and resistance is commonly encountered.

### 10.7 (g) ANTHELMINTICS

#### 10.7.1 Note:

Regular worm egg counts should be used to monitor the effects of anthelmintic programs and the occurrence of resistance. Routine worming programs should be adjusted to suit the circumstances and the efficiency of clean pasture management. Full therapeutic doses should be used at all times.

### 10.7.2 Febantel

PML

**Indications:** Broad-spectrum anthelmintic.

Possible effects on tapeworms?

**Presentations:** Drench (2.5%) and pellets (1.0%) for oral administration.

**Dose:** 6 mg/kg PO q 6 weeks.

#### 10.7.2.1 Note:

- Treatment of equine tapeworms with this has not been established.

189

Table 3.8 Some of the common currently available anthelmintics for horses in the UK. The list is not complete and mention is not to be taken as endorsement of the product

Drug	Presentation	Dose rate (mg/kg)	Activity/comments
Piperazine	Salt for admin via tube/in feed	200–250	<i>P. equorum</i> good effect Cyathostomes (adult)
Thiabendazole* (tiabendazole)	Paste/powder	44–50 440	Adult strongyles Larvicidal at high doses
Mebendazole*	Paste/granules	5–10	Broad-spectrum Not larvicidal
Fenbendazole*	Paste/granules	7.5 50 30 q 48 h	Broad-spectrum Strongyloides Larvicidal at high doses/frequencies
Oxibendazole	Oral paste	10–15	Broad-spectrum Strongyles, <i>P. equorum</i> good
Pyrantel	Paste/granules	19 40	Adults Strongyles/cyathostomes only <i>A. perfoliata</i> tapeworms
Ivermectin	Paste	0.2	Larvicidal Broad-spectrum NB: injectable forms very dangerous (can be given by mouth) Can cause drug eruptions used IV
Moxidectin	Oral paste	0.4	Broad-spectrum as for ivermectin More persistent than ivermectin so resistance more likely to develop

\* Benzimidazole resistance is widespread – cross resistance in the group is also possible.

## 10.7.3 Fenbendazole

POM V

**Indications:** Anthelmintic treatment and control programs for all types of helminth parasites of horses.

**Presentations:**

Paste in dosing syringe (graduated kg).

10 g sachets (granules [22%]) for in-feed administration.

Drench for oral administration (10%).

Double-dose formulation for 5-day course to treat larval cyathostomosis/strongylosis.

**Dose:**



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 3.9

	Dose
Routine worming	7.5 mg/kg
<i>Cyathostome</i> spp.	30 mg/kg
Migrating <i>Strongyle</i> larvae	60 mg/kg once, or 7.5 mg/kg daily for 5 days, or 50 mg/kg for 3 days
<i>D. arnfieldi</i>	15 mg/kg
<i>Parascaris equorum</i>	10 mg/kg
<i>Strongyloides westeri</i>	50 mg/kg
Verminous arteritis	50 mg/kg q 24 h × 3

### 10.7.3.1 Notes:

- Resistance known to occur (monitor worm egg counts) – only affects *Cyathostome* spp. (small strongyles).
- Suitable larvicidal formulation available in suspension form for daily administration of 2 × dose for 5 days.
- Larvicidal activity at 2 × standard dose daily × 5 days. Very safe.

### 10.7.4 Haloxon

PML

**Indications:** Gastrointestinal roundworms and bots.

**Presentation:** Powder containing haloxon 620 mg/g; 20 g.

**Dose:** 50-70 mg/kg.

191

### 10.7.4.1 Notes:

- Organophosphorus product. **Pregnant mares and foals <3 months old should NOT be treated.**
- Rare side effects of trembling, sweating, colic, salivation etc. **DO NOT treat with atropine unless severe! DO NOT exercise for 48 hours.**
- Environmental hazards to fish, birds and wildlife.

192

### 10.7.5 Ivermectin

PML

**Indications:** Treatment/control of all major helminth parasites including lungworm. Treatment of hypobiotic larvae, lice and mange. Treatment of cutaneous and gastric habronemiasis, thelaziasis. Treatment and control of bots. Effective against microfilaria (*Onchocerca* etc.).

**Presentations:** Paste for oral administration in graduated syringe (kg) (1.87% w/w).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Contents of syringe treats 600 kg.

**Dose:** 0.2 mg/kg PO lasts 6-8 weeks.

### 10.7.5.1 Notes:

- Parenteral administration may cause severe life-threatening reactions. IV use has been reported to be safe but not licensed – this route is not recommended. Injectable form may be given PO at 200 mg/kg. 'Pour-on' forms may be effective against lice/mites but can cause moderate/severe skin reactions.
- NOT effective against equine tapeworms (*Anoplocephala* spp.).
- Environmental considerations – dispose of dung carefully (extremely dangerous to fish/aquatic life).

### 10.7.6 Levamisole

PML

**Indications:** Treatment/control of adult strongyles. Possible immune stimulatory properties (intractable infections and immune compromise).

**Presentations:** 7.5% solution for SC injection, oral drench (1.5% w/v).

**Dose:** Anthelmintic at 6.5 mg/kg PO prn.

Immunostimulant 6.5 mg/kg orally q 24 h for 14 days.

5.5 mg/kg IM injection.

### 10.7.6.1 Notes:

- Anthelmintic effects poor and not licensed for horses (useful in treatment of lungworm in donkeys).

192

### 10.7.7 Mebendazole

193

PML

**Indications:** Treatment of helminthiasis (strongyles and cyathostomes), mature and larval *Parascaris equorum*, adult *Oxyuris equi*, *Dictyocaulus arnfieldi* at special dose rate.

**Presentations:** Graduated (kg) syringes – 4 g micronised mebendazole in 20 g paste.

Sachets containing 20 g mebendazole for in-feed use.

**Dose:** 8.8 mg/kg. Repeat every 6 weeks.

15-20 mg/kg daily for 5 days for *Dictyocaulus arnfieldi*.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

10.7.7.1

### Notes:

- Safe for pregnant mares and foals. May cause mild diarrhoea if overdosed. Pregnant donkeys should NOT receive the higher dose regime.
- NOT for use in horses intended for human consumption.
- Resistance patterns not yet clear.

10.7.8

### Metriphonate

PML

**Indications:** Organophosphorus product. Treatment of *Gastrophilus* sp. (bots), mature and larval *Parascaris equorum*, adult *Oxyuris equi*.

**Presentation:** Single-dose graduated (kg) syringes (2.1 g) for oral dosing.

**Dose:** 35 mg/kg PO.

10.7.8.1

### Notes:

- Administer 20 min before feeding. **DO NOT exceed calculated dose.** Ensure administration onto top of tongue (NOT into pouches of cheeks or under tongue). May cause local reaction.
- **Pregnant mares and foals <3 months old should NOT be treated.**
- Rare side effects of trembling, sweating, colic, salivation etc. **DO NOT treat with atropine unless severe! DO NOT exercise for 48 hours.**
- Environmental hazards to fish, birds and wildlife.

10.7.9

### Moxidectin

POM V

**Indications:** Broad spectrum of activity and wide safety margin. 13-week duration of action (may favour resistant organisms). Treatment/control of all major helminth parasites including lungworm. Treatment of hypobiotic larvae, lice and mange. Treatment of cutaneous and gastric habronemiasis, thelaziasis. Treatment and control of bots. Effective against microfilaria (*Onchocerca* etc.).

**Presentation:** Graduated syringe for oral administration up to 600 kg horse.

**Dose:** 0.4 mg/kg.

193

194

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.7.9.1 Notes:

- Contraindicated in foals younger than 4 months of age due to possible neurological reactions including coma and death due to high lipophilicity.

### 10.7.10 Oxfendazole

PML

**Indications:** Treatment/prophylaxis of ascarids, strongyles, *Oxyuris equi*, and adult *T. axei*.

**Presentations:** Oral paste in graduated (kg) syringe (18.5% w/w).

Pellets for in-feed administration (6.8% w/v).

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO prn.

### 10.7.10.1 Notes:

- Possible cross-resistance with fenbendazole or specific resistance. Safe.

### 10.7.11 Oxibendazole

PML

**Indications:** Routine anthelmintic treatment and control.

**Presentation:** Oral paste in graduated (kg) syringes (8 g as 30% w/w).

**Dose:** 10 mg/kg PO for roundworms.

15 mg/kg PO for *Strongyloides westeri*.

### 10.7.11.1 Notes:

- Possible cross-resistance or specific resistance with fenbendazole but so far not established.

### 10.7.12 Piperazine BP

GSL

**Indications:** Treatment *Parascaris equorum* + adult strongyles.

**Presentations:** Powder for oral dosing.

Paste in graduated (kg) syringe; oral.

**Dose:** 88 mg/kg (adipate/citrate). Maximum 30 g for foal, 60 g for yearlings, 80 g adults.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Repeat at 10-week intervals for *Parascaris equorum* in young horses.

194

### 10.7.12.1 Notes:

195

- No specific equine preparations. Risk of photosensitisation.
- No effect on migrating larvae. Large doses best given by stomach tube.
- If used in heavy parascaris infestations can cause rupture or obstruction of small intestine due to rapid death/detachment of worms.
- Most commercial products have additional anthelmintics e.g. thiabendazole (tiabendazole), trichlophon, phenothiazine or levamisole.

### 10.7.13 Praziquantel

POM V

**Indications:** Tapeworm treatment especially *Paranoplocephala mamilliana*.

**Presentations:** 50 mg tablet oral; injectable solution (**use orally NOT BY INJECTION!**) 56.8 mg/mL.

**Dose:** 5 mg/kg; 1 mg/kg of injectable solution by stomach tube (with 200 mL water).

### 10.7.13.1 Notes:

- Licensed for dog and cat only. Very expensive!
- Useful if pyrantel ineffective.
- Not tested yet!

**DO NOT use injectable formulation (except by mouth) – risk of laminitis etc.**

### 10.7.14 Pyrantel embonate

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment/control of strongyles, *Oxyuris*, *Parascaris equi*. Also (at higher dose) effective against *Anoplocephala* spp.

**Presentations:** Oral paste in graduated syringe (kg) 11.41 g in 22 mL base.

Powder/granules for in-feed administration (76.7% w/w).

**Dose:** 19 mg/kg routine. 40 mg/kg for treatment of tapeworms.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

10.7.14.1

### Notes:

- Safe. No known resistance in adult strongyles (or cyathostomes). Good efficacy against equine tapeworms at higher dose rates.
- Not effective against *Paranoplocephala mamiliana*.

195

10.7.15

### Thiabendazole (tiabendazole)

196

PML

**Indications:** Treatment of adult helminth parasites. At higher doses effective against migrating strongyle larvae and lungworm.

**Presentations:** Drench (suspension) for oral administration 17.6% w/v.

Paste for oral administration in graduated syringe (kg) 49.3%.

**Dose:** Routine worming 44 mg/kg PO prn.

Foal ascariasis 88 mg/kg PO prn.

Larvicidal (and lungworm) dose 440 mg/kg PO prn.

10.7.15.1

### Notes:

- Not licensed for horses.
- Dose of 20 mg/kg PO q 24 h for 7-14 days has some antifungal properties.

10.7.16

### Triclabendazole

POM V

**Indications:** Immature and adult stages *Fasciola hepatica*. No activity against nematodes.

**Presentations:** 10% solution (100 mg/mL) oral suspension.

**Dose:** 15 mg/kg PO.

10.7.16.1

### Note:

- Not licensed for Equidae in UK. No information on toxicity.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.8 (h) ECTOPARASITICIDES

#### 10.8.1 Benzyl benzoate

PML

**Indications:** Acaricide for control of mange mites and *Culicoides* spp. irritation and allergy (sweet itch).

**Presentations:** 25% w/v with emulsifying wax in water powder in shaker; 500 mL and 1.8 kg.

**Dose:** Applied daily to mane and base of tail as repellent/insecticide.

##### 10.8.1.1 Notes:

- For topical treatment only. Care should be taken with handling.
- Not very effective in many cases, but others are significantly improved.

196

#### 10.8.2 Coumaphos

197

PML

**Indications:** Ectoparasiticide for control of lice.

**Presentations:** 3% powder in shaker with propoxur 2% and sulphanilamide 5%.

**Dose:** Repeat at 14-day interval (NOT LESS).

##### 10.8.2.1 Notes:

- For topical treatment only. Care should be taken with handling.

#### 10.8.3 Cypermethrin/permethrin

PML

**Indications:** Ectoparasiticide for control of nuisance flies such as *H. irritans*, *H. bovis*, *G. intestinalis* etc.  
Cattle ear tags repellent for flies.

**Presentation:** 5% emulsifiable concentrate; 250 mL and 1000 mL.

**Dose:** Diluted 1:50 with water used as TOPICAL WASH. Applied to mane, neck etc. at sites of predilection for flies. Repeated 14-28 days.

Horse needs 6+ cattle tags (halter/mane/forelock/tail plaited in).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 10.8.3.1 Notes:

- For topical treatment only. Care should be taken with handling.

### 10.8.4 Fipronil

POM V

**Indications:** Control of mange (chorioptic, sarcoptic, psoroptic), trombiculidiasis and lice.

**Presentation:** Fipronil 0.25%; 100 mL and 250 mL solution in hand-held sprayer.

**Dose:** Clip affected hair if necessary, clean scabs away and then apply directly to affected areas. If lesions generalised treat half animal then treat other half 1-2 weeks later.

### 10.8.4.1 Note:

- Not licensed for use in horses.

### 10.8.5 Piperonyl butoxide

GSL

**Indications:** Treatment of *Culicoides* sensitivity, 'sweet itch' and lice.

**Presentation:** Solution containing piperonyl butoxide 0.5% + pyrethrum extract 0.4%; 500 mL + 5000 mL.

197

**Dose:** Apply to mane, neck etc. at sites of predilection for flies. Repeated 14-28 days.

198

### 10.8.5.1 Notes:

- For topical treatment only. Care should be taken with handling.

### 10.8.6 Ivermectin

See sections under endoparasiticides (p. 192).

### 10.8.7 Moxidectin

See sections under endoparasiticides (p. 193).



## 11 Section 8 Blood-modifying agents

### 11.1 HAEMOSTASIS

Haemostasis is the balance between coagulation and fibrinolysis. Vascular injury leads to reflex vasoconstriction and damaged endothelial cells release activating/inhibiting substances of coagulation and fibrinolysis. Platelet plug (primary haemostatic plug) forms following interaction of platelets with a discontinuous vascular surface. The coagulation cascade involves successive activation of circulating inactive clotting factors (zymogens) to the active form.

COAGULATION proceeds through the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways to form factor Xa which then enters the common pathway. The end result of the common pathway is formation of FIBRIN through the action of THROMBIN on FIBRINOGEN. A number of anticoagulant proteins localise coagulation to the site of injury to decrease generalised thrombosis. The two most important anticoagulant groups are the SERPINES and the PROTEIN C system. The serpins comprise ANTITHROMBIN III (AT-III) and HEPARIN COFACTOR II.

FIBRINOLYSIS is activated simultaneously with coagulation and functions to limit the extension of fibrin clots and provide a mechanism for fibrin removal. The physiologically important fibrinolytic protein is PLASMIN. Plasminogen is the circulating zymogen which is activated to plasmin by TISSUE PLASMINOGEN ACTIVATOR (t-PA). ANTIFIBRINOLYTIC PROTEINS namely PLASMINOGEN ACTIVATOR INHIBITOR and alpha-ANTIPLASMIN (AP) prevent premature and excessive clot lysis.

#### 11.1.1 (a) ANTICOAGULANTS (*in vivo*)

Primarily used to prevent development and progression of thrombi. Heparin acts directly on the coagulation process and has a quick onset of action. The coumarin derivatives act indirectly as vitamin K antagonists; their effect is delayed by 1-2 hours.

##### 11.1.1.1 Heparin sodium

POM V

#### Actions:

1. Prevents formation of stable fibrin clots. Main coagulation effect is through binding with antithrombin III (endogenous anticoagulant protein) thereby increasing the latter's coagulation inhibitory effect by 2000 times. AT III is the main thrombin inhibitor therefore increased activity of AT III results in decreased fibrin formation. Heparin also decreases platelet aggregation, increases levels of plasminogen activator and increases the levels of tissue factor inhibitor.

199

200

2. Liberates lipoprotein lipase which decreases serum triglyceride levels (treatment of hyperlipaemia).

**Indications:** Thromboembolism (prevention of further clot formation); disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC); prevention of *in vitro* or *in vivo* coagulation; maintenance of intravenous catheters; prevention of abdominal adhesions following laparotomy; hyperlipaemia.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** None licensed for horses in the UK. Formulations are designed for catheter flushing, not therapeutic.

Heparin Na: 1000, 5000, 10 000, 25 000 iu/mL as 1-5 mL multidose vials.

**Contraindications:** Hepatic disease, haemorrhage.

**Dose:** Anticoagulation: 25-100 iu/kg q 8-12 h IV/SC (in conjunction with FRESH plasma as a source of AT III).

Peritoneal lavage: 50 iu/kg in electrolyte lavage solution.

Catheter management: 1000 iu in 100 mL saline (5 iu/mL).

11.1.1.1.1

### Notes:

- No effect on clotting factor concentrations. (No innate anticoagulant activity – only potentiates other anticoagulants.) Does not lyse clots!
- Do not use IM – may cause haematomas. SC may be used but may cause painful swelling at the injection site. May be given by constant IV infusion.
- Useful as adjunct for DIC/hyperlipaemia but primary treatment should be aimed at underlying cause. PROTAMINE SULPHATE is specific antagonist.

11.1.1.2

### Protamine sulphate

POM V

**Indications:** Heparin overdose, conditions of excessive coagulation.

**Actions:** Anticoagulant when given alone. When given with heparin stable salt is formed (reducing anticoagulant effects of both). Antagonises effect of heparin sulphate within 5 minutes.

Effect lasts approximately 2 hours.

**Presentation:** 10 mg/mL injection (5 mL multidose vial).

**Dose:** 1 mg protamine inactivates 100 iu heparin sulphate.

Max dose 100 mg very slowly IV.

11.1.1.2.1

### Notes and contraindications:

- Beware of anaphylaxis. Incompatible with benzyl and procaine penicillin.

200

11.1.1.3

### Warfarin

201

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Treatment of thrombotic conditions including NAVICULAR DISEASE.

**Actions:** Coumarin derivative. Inhibits the hepatic synthesis of vitamin-K-dependent clotting factors. Onset of action 6-12 hours, maximum at 2-3 days.

**Presentation:** 1 mg, 3 mg, 5 mg tablets, ORAL.

**Contra-indications:** Purpura, malnutrition, haemorrhage, late pregnancy.

**Dose:** 0.05-0.1 mg/kg PO q 24 h.

11.1.1.3.1

### Notes:

- Well absorbed orally, highly bound to plasma albumin.
- Test FIRST STAGE PROTHROMBIN TIME before instigating programme and monitor regularly.
- Treatment for navicular disease: Mainly superseded by other drugs. Maintain steady 50% increase in PT. Variations (wide) may occur related to dietary intake, work and other medications.
- Do not use with phenylbutazone or other non-steroidal drugs likely to induce ulceration of stomach or intestinal tract – risk of haemorrhage.

11.1.2

### (b) COAGULANTS

11.1.2.1

#### Malonic/oxalic acid

POM V

**Indications:** Epistaxis, uterine/enteric bleeding, purpura haemorrhagica.

**Presentations:** Aqueous solution containing 2.5 mg malonic acid and 7.5 mg oxalic acid/mL. 30 mL multidose vial.

11.1.2.1.1

### Notes:

Poorly defined effects. Equivocal efficacy.

**Dose:** 10-20 mL IV/IM.

11.1.2.2

#### Vitamin K<sub>3</sub> (menadione)

POM V

**Indications:** Anaemia caused by haemorrhagic diatheses, warfarin antagonist.

**Action:** Vitamin K required for synthesis of blood clotting factors by the liver.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Not recommended for use in horses as nephrotoxic.

201

### 11.1.2.3 Vitamin K<sub>1</sub> (phytomenadione)

202

POM V

**Indications:** Antagonist for warfarin overdose/poisoning, haemorrhage and anaemia caused by haemorrhagic diatheses.

**Action:** Vitamin K required for synthesis of blood-clotting factors by the liver.

**Presentation:** 10 mg/mL ampoules (1 mL).

**Dose:** 0.5-1.0 mg/kg daily in divided doses IM/SC.

#### 11.1.2.3.1 Notes:

- May cause anaphylaxis if given IV. Treatment of warfarin (and other coumarin derivative) toxicity may require concurrent blood transfusion.

### 11.1.3 (c) HAEMATINICS

Agents that increase the haemoglobin level and the number of erythrocytes. They are used in the treatment of some types of anaemia. Haematinic drugs should be used in conjunction with identification and treatment of the cause of anaemia. Most haematinics are compounds of vitamins and minerals (see Vitamin preparations, below).

#### 11.1.3.1 Iron

GSL

**Indications:** Iron-deficient conditions only, e.g. chronic GI parasitism, neoplasia.

**Actions:** Required for haemoglobin synthesis.

**Presentations:** Many products available for oral use. Each 5 mL containing: vitamin B<sub>12</sub> 9.0 µg; vitamin B<sub>6</sub> 2.0 µg; folic acid 0.5 mg, ferric pyrophosphate; sorbitol solution 4 mL.

**Dose:** As stated on particular formulation.

#### 11.1.3.1.1 Notes:

- Intestinal absorption of iron can increase with increased demand therefore usually requires chronic disease/dietary deficiency before clinical signs develop. Indiscriminate supplementation should be avoided due to risk of toxicity especially in foals. Diagnose deficiency using serum iron concentration, total iron binding capacity or bone marrow biopsy. Most products available as part of 'multi-supplements'.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 11.1.4 (d) VITAMIN PREPARATIONS

Vitamin B group and vitamin C are water-soluble. Vitamins A, D, E and K are fat-soluble. Vitamin deficiency is uncommon if a good-quality diet is fed. Supplementation may be useful in chronic debilitating diseases e.g. chronic diarrhoea.

202

#### 11.1.4.1 Biotin

203

No applicable category.

**Indications:** Foot care supplement.

**Signs of deficiency:** Anorexia; poor growth; dry, staring dermatitis; ulceration and inflammation of the oral mucous membranes; cracking of the soles and tops of the hooves; soft rubbery soles.

**Presentation:** Many products available, e.g. cubes containing 7.5 mg biotin per cube for in-feed administration.

**Dose:** 1-3 cubes daily in feed. Not established.

##### 11.1.4.1.1 Notes:

- Only the isomer *d*-biotin contains vitamin activity. Deficiency uncommon in horses as requirements usually met by large intestinal organisms. Stress, growth, lactation or chronic disease may increase requirements. Polyuric renal disease may increase urinary excretion. Often mixed with other vitamin/mineral supplementation. Supplementation in horses without biotin deficiency may result in improvement in hoof quality.

#### 11.1.4.2 Methionine BP

No applicable category.

**Indications:** Treatment of refractory laminitis and poor hoof quality. Hoof wall defects. Re-establishment of depleted keratin sulphate.

**Presentations:** Many products available, including compound hoof preparation, oral powder biotin 1 mg, methionine 600 mg, zinc gluconate 67 mg/g.

**Dose:** 15 g of powder daily.

##### 11.1.4.2.1 Notes:

- Safe but unreliable/poorly documented benefit. Efficacy may be improved if given in combination with biotin.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 11.1.4.3 Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> (thiamine HCl)

POM V

**Indications:** Bracken poisoning, exertional rhabdomyolysis, thiamine deficiency syndromes caused by thiaminase activity.

**Presentation:** 100 mg/mL aqueous solution; 50 mL multidose vial.

**Dietary sources:** Cereal grains and their by-products and oilseed meals relatively rich dietary sources of thiamine. The levels of thiamine are related to the protein content. Thiamine in forage decreases with maturity of the plant. Usually readily digested and absorbed (up to 25% of free thiamine produced in the caecum is absorbed). Gastrointestinal disease may impair enteric flora thiamine synthesis and absorption.

203

**Signs of deficiency:** Usually caused by thiaminase in bracken fed in the hay. Lethargy, anorexia, weight loss, ataxia, cardiac arrhythmias, muscle tremors and convulsions.

204

**Dose:** 0.25-1.25 mg/kg q 12 h IM or slow IV injection, for up to 7 days.

#### 11.1.4.3.1 Notes:

IV injections may result in anaphylactic reactions. Avoid IV use if possible – give very slowly.

### 11.1.4.4 Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (cyanocobalamin)

POM V

**Indications:** Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency conditions, anaemia.

**Presentations:** Many products available, including B<sub>12</sub> injection 1000 µg/mL; 1 mg/mL cyanocobalamin; aqueous red solution; 50 mL multidose vials.

**Sources:** Solely from bacterial synthesis. Plant materials contain virtually none. Requirements met by large intestinal organisms. Requires adequate dietary cobalt for absorption.

**Signs of deficiency:** Inappetence, anaemia, dermatitis, rough hair coat, wasting and death.

**Dose:** Foals 0.5-1 mL; horses 1-3 mL. 1-2 times weekly, SC or IM injection. 0.5-1.5 mg/kg 1-2 times weekly.

#### 11.1.4.4.1 Notes:

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency is rare. May occur in chronic gastrointestinal disease due to disruption of normal synthesis by large intestinal bacteria. Anaemia in deficient states is due to inadequate synthesis of nucleic acid precursors for haematopoiesis. Often combined with iron supplements. Commonly administered as metabolic/appetite stimulant (very questionable efficacy!).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 11.1.4.5 Vitamin B complex

POM V

**Indications:** Stress, toxic or deficiency conditions. Supportive therapy for chronic nutritional deficiency syndromes.

**Presentations:** Many products available, e.g. aqueous solution of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, riboflavine BP, pyridoxine BP, nicotinamide BP, minerals and amino acids for injection.

**Dose:** Administered once every 48 h by slow intravenous injection or slow intramuscular injection until a maximum of five doses has been administered. Dose depends on formulation.

204

#### 11.1.4.5.1 Notes:

- Preparations containing thiamine may cause anaphylactic shock in some animals. Slow IV (should be diluted with saline). Do not mix with other substances. IM injection may result in large local reactions. Some products containing mixed vitamins do not contain thiamine.

**CHECK contents of formulation/product and specific instructions from manufacturer before using any of these products – they vary widely in content and indications!**

205

### 11.1.4.6 Vitamin E/selenium

POM V/GSL

**Indications:** Prophylaxis and treatment of selenium and vitamin E deficiency syndromes including nutritional muscular dystrophy, exertional rhabdomyolysis syndrome (ERS).

**Presentations:** Many products available and various forms for oral use, e.g. white sterile suspension containing 0.5 mg/mL selenium and 150 mg vit E/mL for IM use.

#### **Dietary sources:**

Vitamin E: Plants, especially young green plants and cereal grains. Wheat germ oil most concentrated natural source (soybean, peanut and cottonseed oil also rich sources).

Selenium: Plant concentration varies widely with soil content and plant species.

#### 11.1.4.6.1 Notes:

- Dubious benefit! – most recurrent ERS horses have sufficient concentrations. Monitor blood levels before and during treatment. May cause marked local reaction. Do not exceed recommended daily amount of selenium as toxicity can develop (RDA = 0.2 to 0.3 mg/kg diet dry matter). Consider dietary route for maintenance of selenium/vitamin E.

**Dose:** up to 20 mL total dose for 500 kg horse, 2-5 mL foals. Repeat weekly.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

11.1.4.7 Miscellaneous

11.1.4.8 Pentoxifylline

POM V

**Indications:** EIPH, endotoxaemia, acute laminitis, inflammatory conditions, navicular disease.

**Actions:** Phosphodiesterase inhibitor. Increases the deformity of red blood cells and decreases blood viscosity (rheologic agent). Potentially may decrease pulmonary vascular pressures during exercise. In endotoxaemia reduces production of lipopolysaccharide-induced cytokines and thromboxanes.

205

Bronchodilating properties.

206

Inhibits neutrophil recruitment to inflammatory sites. Immunomodulatory effects that potentiate the effectiveness of traditional immunosuppressive drugs.

**Dose:** Endotoxaemia: 8.4 mg/kg q 12 h PO.

11.1.4.8.1 Notes:

- Most extensive use has been as adjunct to prevention of sequelae of endotoxaemia. Efficacy in EIPH and navicular disease debatable. Not currently available in the UK. Further research is required to establish therapeutic potentials. (Use as a rheological agent has been suggested in foetal compromise. Anti-inflammatory properties may be useful in the treatment of heaves. Some refractory immune-mediated conditions may respond to addition of pentoxifylline to the treatment regime e.g. equine pastern dermatitis.)

206

11.1.5 (E) ELECTROLYTES/FLUIDS

207

Table 3.10 Parenteral fluids comparison (milli-equivalents/litre): Sodium chloride solutions

Solution	Na (mEq/L)	Cl (mEq/L)	Osmolality (mOsm/L)	Available as: (L)
0.2%	34	34	69	3 mL
0.45%(½N)	77	77	155	0.25/0.5/1.0
0.9%(N)	154	154	310	0.25/0.5/1.0/5.0
3%	513	513	1030	0.25/0.5/1.0
7%	1197	1197	2394	0.5/1.0



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 3.11 Parenteral fluids comparison (milli-equivalents/litre): Dextrose solutions

Solution	Dextrose (g/L)	Calories (kcal/L)	Osmolality (mOsm/L)	Available as: (L)
2.5%	25	85	12669	0.25/0.5/1.0
5%	50	170	253	0.25/0.5/1.0
10%	100	340	505	0.25/0.5/1.0/5.0
30%	300	1020	1515	0.25/0.5/1.0
40%	400	1360	2020	0.4/0.5/1.0

207

Table 3.12 Parenteral fluids comparison (milli-equivalents/litre): Dextrose/saline combinations

Solution	Na (mEq/L)	Cl (mEq/L)	Dex (g/L)	Calories (kcal/L)	Osmolality (mOsm/L)	Available as: (L)
25%D/0.45% 5%D	77	77	25	85	280	0.25/0.5/1.0
0.11% 5%D	19	19	50	170	290	0.5/1.0
0.2% 5%D	34	34	50	170	320	0.5/1.0
0.45%½ N 5%D	77	77	50	170	405	0.5/1.0
0.9%(N) 10%D	154	154	100	170	560	0.25/0.5/ 1.0/5.0
0.45%½ N 10%D	77	77	100	340	660	0.25/0.5/1.0
0.9% (N)	154	154	100	340	815	0.25/0.5/1.0

208

Table 3.13 Parenteral fluids comparison (milli-equivalents/litre): Electrolyte/dextrose combinations

Electrolytes (meq/L)										
Solution	Dextrose		Calories		Electrolytes (meq/L)					Other Osmolality additives/presentation (Volume of packs in L)
	(g/L)	(kcal/L)	Na	K	CaCl	Lact	Acet	Tonicity	(mOsm/L)	
Ringer	–	–	147	4	2	155	–	–	308	(0.5/1.0)
Hartman/Ringer/lact–	–	–	131	5	2	111	29	–	278	Isolec (0.5/1.0)
Darrows	–	–	121	35	–	103	53	–	312	(1.0)
Duphalyte	5	19	18	3	1	5	–	18	iso	+ Vitamins/amino acids (0.5/1.0)
Polyfusin–	–	–	1000	–	–	–	–	–	hyper	2000
Bicarb	–	–	2000	–	–	2000	–	–	hyper	4000
KCl	–	–	133	5	2	111	31	–	iso	282
Na Lact IV	–	–	133	5	2	111	31	–	iso	282
Hartman	–	–	133	5	2	111	31	–	iso	282

209

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 3.14 Parenteral fluids comparison (milli-equivalents/litre): Plasma expanding solutions

Electrolytes (meq/L)										
Solution	Dextrose Calories		Na	K	Ca	Cl	Lact	Acet	Tonicity	Other additives/presentation (Volume of packs in L)
	(g/L)	(kcal/L)								
Haemacell	–	–	145	5	6	156	–	–	iso	312 3.5% polygeline (0.5)
Gelofusin	–	–	77	–	–	62.5	–	–	iso	200 3% succinylated gelatin (0.5)

11.1.5.1

### Pharmaceutical companies in the UK producing fluids for parenteral use

These manufacturers will alter their fluids from time to time and some are prepared to manufacture solutions specifically for veterinary/equine use. This usually means larger volumes in packs rather than alteration in the specific fluid requirements.

#### 1. Hoescht UK Ltd

Animal Health Business Unit

Walton Manor

Milton Keynes, Bucks. MK7 7AJ

(Tel: 01908-665050; Fax: 01908-672680)

#### 2. Animalcare Ltd

Common Road

Dunnington

York YO1 5RU

(Tel: 01904-488661; Fax: 01904-488184)

#### 3. Fort Dodge Animal Health

Flanders Road

Hedge End

Southampton

Tel: 01489 781711

#### 4. Ivex Pharmaceuticals Ltd

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Old Belfast Rd

Mill Brook

Larne

Co Antrim, Northern Ireland BT40 2SH

(Tel: 01574-273631; Fax: 01574-273719)

### 5. Vet-2-Vet Marketing

PO Box 98

Bury St Edmonds, Suffolk IP33 2QN

(Tel: 01284-767721; Fax: 01284-700047)

### 6. FL (Manufacturing) Ltd

Fresenius Health Care Group

Basingstoke

### 7. B. Braun Medical Ltd

Aylesbury

Buckinghamshire

211

---

#### 11.1.5.2 Home-made infusion/irrigation solutions

212

##### 11.1.5.2.1 Notes:

- All solutions should be made from pyrogen-free distilled water and sterilised in an autoclave – LOOSEN OFF BOTTLE TOPS BEFORE STERILISING SOLUTIONS!
- Suitable Analytical Reagent chemicals (AnalaR) from BDH/MERCK/SIGMA.

To make:

#### (a) 1 litre normal saline

- (i) Weigh accurately 9 g NaCl
- (ii) Dissolve in 1000 mL water

#### (b) 1 litre Hartman's

- (i) Weigh accurately

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Na Lactate 3.1 g

Na Chloride 6.0 g

K Chloride 0.3 g

Ca Chloride 0.2 g

(ii) Make up to 1000 mL with water

**(c) 1 litre molar bicarbonate**

(i) Weigh accurately 85 g  $\text{NaHCO}_3$

(ii) Dissolve in 100 mL pyrogen-free water

**(d) 1 litre isotonic bicarbonate**

(i) Weigh accurately 12.5 g  $\text{NaHCO}_3$

(ii) Dissolve in 1000 mL pyrogen-free water

**(e) 1 litre Ca gluconate**

(i) Weigh accurately:

200 g Ca gluconate

40 g boric acid

(ii) Dissolve in 1000 mL water

**(f) 1 litre isotonic potassium chloride (146 mEq/L)**

(i) Weigh accurately 11 g potassium chloride (anhydrous)

(ii) Dissolve in 1000 mL sterile pyrogen-free water

**(g) 1 litre 7% (hypertonic) saline**

(i) Weigh accurately 7 g  $\text{NaCl}$

(ii) Dissolve in 1 litre water

**(h) Heparin-saline**

(i) Add 2500 iu Heparin Na to 500 mL saline. **(Discard after 1 week maximum)**

11.1.5.2.2

Important parameters for fluid therapy:

- Total blood volume = 80-90 mL/kg bodyweight.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Fluid deficit (mL) =  $10 \times \% \text{ dehydration} \times \text{body weight (kg)}$ .
- Bicarbonate deficit (mmol OR mL 8.4%) =  $0.3 \times \text{Base excess} \times \text{Bodyweight (kg)}$ .

212

11.1.5.2.3

### Note:

Bicarbonate should only be administered in metabolic acidosis, i.e. when:

1. Base excess is negative.
2. pH is below 7.46.
3. Plasma bicarbonate is low.

**Bicarbonate is contraindicated in respiratory acidosis.**

213

11.1.5.3

### Equipment for fluid administration

Specialised requirements for fluid administration required for equine practice. It is impractical to administer large volumes of fluid from 0.5 or 1.0 litre bags. In-dwelling catheters are virtually compulsory when administering more than 1-2 litres of fluid (almost always the case). 'Off-the-needle' administration is dangerous, ineffective, inefficient and often counterproductive.

Requirements:

1. Gyro fluid hanger (Vet-2-Vet).
2. Fluids in suitable volumes (see above).
3. Stat Large Animal I-V Set (Vet-2-Vet).
4. Transfer sets ( $\times 2$ ) (Vet-2-Vet).
5. IV catheter of suitable diameter – consider 2/3 port long-stay catheters if prolonged usage expected.
6. Extension set.
7. Swivel(s) (usually available from local yachting shop).
8. Securing tape and suture materials.

11.1.5.4

### Colloidal IV solutions

POM V

**Indications:** Life-threatening circulatory shock. For rapid blood volume replacement therapy, especially when total protein is low i.e.  $<40 \text{ g/L}$ .

**Presentation:** 500 mL plastic containers.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** Usually use with crystalloids volume equal to estimated fluid loss. Administer until desired improvement in cardiovascular function is seen. Up to 10 mL/kg/hour can safely be administered. Maximum total daily dose 40 mL/kg.

11.1.5.4.1

### Notes:

- Retained in circulation for 2-3 hours.
- Renal excretion occurs.
- **Contraindicated in acute renal failure.**

213

11.1.5.5

### Dextrans

214

POM V

**Presentation:** Macrodex 6% in dextrose and Macrodex 6% in saline. 500 mL single-use bottles.

**Dose:** Not >5 mL/kg/h, to avoid thrombosthenic haemorrhagic diathesis. Volume equal to estimated fluid loss. Total daily dose 40 mL/kg.

11.1.5.5.1

### Notes:

- As above. Increase plasma volume by 60-70% above infused volume (c.f. 50% with other colloids). Refractometric index of 46 g/L. Half life 12-24 hours.
- **If bleeding occurs, cease administration.**
- Large infusions interfere with red cell antigen cross-matching.

11.1.5.6

### Parenteral feeding fluids

POM V

**Complex area:** For a full discussion the reader is directed to: K.G. Magdesian in *Vet Clin Equine* 2003; **19**: 617-44.

**Indications:** Injectable solution of electrolytes, vitamins, amino acids, dextrose. Supportive therapy.

**Presentation:** Multiple products available.

**Dose:** Aim initially to provide resting digestible energy ( $DE_r$ ) requirements.  $DE_r = BW \text{ (kg)} \times 0.021 + 0.975$   
= (Mcal/day)

Afterwards, if tolerated, try to increase to DE maintenance.

$DE_m = BW \text{ (kg)} \times 0.03 + 1.4 = \text{(Mcal/day)}$

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Protein requirements:  $40 \times \text{DE}$  (grams/day)

11.1.5.6.1

### Notes:

- **Slow IV only.** Not remotely sufficient for daily fluid maintenance requirements or for total parenteral/intravenous nutrition.
- **Supportive treatment only.**

e.g. for 500 kg horse:

$$\text{DE}_T = 500 \times 0.021 + 0.975 = 11.5 \text{ Mcal/day.}$$

$$\text{DE}_M = 500 \times 0.03 + 1.4 = 16.4 \text{ Mcal/day.}$$

Protein requirements:  $40 \times 16.4 = 656 \text{ g/day.}$

214

11.1.5.7

### Starches

215

POM V

**Indications:** As above.

**Dose:** As above. Do not exceed 30 mL/kg/day.

11.1.5.7.1

### Notes:

- Can cause bleeding. Interferes with antigen/antibody testing. Lasts 24-26 hours. Very expensive.

### 12 Section 9 Vaccines/antisera

#### 12.1 African Horse Sickness vaccine

**Indications:** Prophylaxis for African horse sickness.

**Presentations:** Freeze-dried pellet of live virus particles of modified strains (8 strains included – covers 43 recognised antigenic types). Reconstituted with water provided. Single-dose vials 5 mL.

**Dose:** 5 mL IM VACCINE 1, followed 4 weeks later by:

5 mL IM VACCINE 2.

Annual boosters may be as above but may be combined as single dose.

##### 12.1.1 Notes:

- Poor/unreliable efficacy, REST imperative for entire course. Some severe reactions. Many vaccinated horses show mild forms of the disease when subsequently challenged by virulent strains of the virus.

#### 12.2 Botulinus antiserum

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of botulism.

**Presentation:** Polyvalent B/C available as 5 mL ampoules. Single-use human formulation.

**Dose:** Treatment: >50 mL required q 24 h × 3-6.

Prophylactic: 50 mL single dose.

##### 12.2.1 Notes:

- Anaphylaxis possible (rare). Dubious efficacy.
- Extremely expensive in UK; only human preparations available (and these are difficult to obtain). In UK the antiserum can also be obtained from the British Veterinary Association who hold a small stock to supply to the whole country.

#### 12.3 Botulinus toxoid

POM V

**Indications:** Prophylaxis for botulism due to *B. clostridium botulinum* toxin only.

**Presentation:** Single-dose vials of toxoid for IM injection.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** 2 mL per dose. Three doses given at least 4 weeks apart.

### 12.3.1 Notes:

- Not available in UK. Bovine vaccine sometimes available – effect in horses not known. Only type B botulism is included.
- Vaccination of pregnant mares 2-5 weeks before term.

### 12.4 Endotoxin antiserum

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment/prevention of endotoxaemia. Particular use in strangulating colic, bowel resection and other endotoxaemic conditions. Contains antibodies to lipopolysaccharides of various Gram –ve organisms (including *Salmonella*, *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*).

**Presentation:** 60 mg vials of toxoid. When reconstituted with supplied diluent (20 mL water for injection), the solution contains 3 mg endotoxin-specific IgG/mL.

**Dose:** 0.3 mg/kg. Contents of one vial is a single dose for an animal 200 kg in weight. Slow IV injection. Can be repeated up to three times at 24-hour intervals.

### 12.4.1 Notes:

- Not for pregnant mares. Do not store part-used vials. In the event of hypersensitivity, immediate treatment should be given with soluble glucocorticoid IV or adrenaline (epinephrine) IM.

### 12.5 Equine herpes virus vaccine

POM V

**Indications:** Infections with EHV1 and EHV4 may cause respiratory disease, abortion, neonatal death, and paresis. The respiratory form, known as equine viral rhinopneumonitis, is characterised by fever, coughing, and nasal and ocular discharge.

**Presentations:** Duvaxyn EHV1, 4 (Fort Dodge) – inactivated liquid vaccine, containing carbomer as adjuvant. Single-dose vial (1.5 mL). For active immunisation of horses to reduce clinical signs due to infection with EHV1 and 4, and to reduce abortion caused by EHV1 infection.

**Dose:**

*Pneumabort K:* If mare previously vaccinated: 2 mL IM in 5th, 7th and 9th months of pregnancy. If mare previously unvaccinated and more than 5 months pregnant: 2 mL IM. Repeat every 2 months until foaling. Non-pregnant animals of all sexes should receive two doses at 4-6 week intervals with boosters every 6 months.

218

### 12.5.1 Note:

**Pneumabort: Severe local reactions follow accidental self-injection.**

**EMERGENCY MEDICAL HELP MUST BE SOUGHT IMMEDIATELY! (inform doctor of oily vaccine).**

*Duvaxyn EHV1, 4:*

#### 1. Vaccination against respiratory disease.

- First vaccine recommended at 5 months. Primary course consists of first dose (day 0). Second dose (4-6 weeks later), boosters every 6 months.

#### 2. Abortion prevention.

- Pregnant mares should be vaccinated during the 5th, 7th and 9th months of pregnancy with a single 1.5 mL dose on each occasion.

### 12.5.2 Note:

**Duvaxyn EHV1, 4:** may not be effective in incubating cases. Not effective as treatment but some benefit in chronic/recurrent cases. Some (transient) local reaction is possible. Occasional anaphylactic reactions (administer dexamethasone/adrenaline (epinephrine)).

### 12.6 Equine viral arteritis vaccine

POM V

**Indications:** Prophylaxis for equine viral arteritis, a contagious disease of worldwide distribution. Most horses develop subclinical infection, but some may exhibit clinical signs of fever, depression, and peripheral oedema. Mares may abort and stallions frequently become long-term carriers. Transmission by the respiratory route occurs during acute infection and by the venereal route through semen from chronically infected stallions.

**Presentation:** Killed whole virus adjuvanted vaccine.

**Dose:** Two doses at 4-week intervals and then boosters for challenged animals at 6-month intervals. Yet to be established.

### 12.6.1 Notes:

- Antibody produced by either vaccine or natural infection is not distinguishable.
- Live virus vaccine is effective in limiting infection of mares covered by infected stallion without significant risk of shedding. Killed vaccine is also effective but duration of protection equivocal.
- Major use is to prevent/control shedding in infected stallions.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Vaccinate stallions at least 3 weeks before breeding. Vaccinate maiden mares or while open at least 3 weeks before breeding. Pregnant mares should not be vaccinated.

219

- Some countries prohibit the importation of animals seropositive to EVA without veterinary certification of vaccination. Therefore veterinarians are advised to ensure an animal is seronegative before vaccination; the test is available from the Animal Health Trust, UK.

220

Consult Code of Practice for Control of Equine Viral Arteritis (British Horseracing Board) – issued annually.

Consult with Ministry or British Equine Veterinary Association in UK if you suspect a case!

### 12.7 Influenza vaccine

POM V

**Indication:** Prophylactic vaccination for equine influenza.

**Presentation:** Single-dose vials for injection.

Table 3.15

Name	Prague/Newmarket (IA/E1)	Brentwood (IA/E2)	Miami (IA/E2)	Suffolk (IA/E2)	Borlange (IA/E2)
Prevac Pro	⊕		⊕	⊕	
Duvaxyn IE-Plus	⊕			⊕	
EquipF	⊕	⊕			⊕

**Dose:** Single-dose 1 mL vials or preloaded syringes IM.

#### 12.7.1 Notes:

- Equip-F is an ISCOM (immune stimulating complex) vaccine.

#### 12.7.1.1 JOCKEY CLUB (FIE/BHS) REGULATIONS:

<b>First Primary</b>	Day 0
<b>Second Primary</b>	21–90 days after first
<b>Booster Primary</b>	150–215 days from second
<b>Annual Booster</b>	≤365 days

220

221

- If overdue (even by 1 day) whole course to start again. Anniversary acceptable.
- No horse may be presented at a race meeting whose vaccination was given less than 10 days previously.
- Foals: start around 4-6 months. (BOOSTERS: recommended at 6-9 month intervals.)
- Horses should be rested for 2-4 days before and 4-10 days after vaccination (reported but not substantiated risk of myocarditis, poor performance, persistent coughing etc.).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- DO NOT contaminate needles/syringes. DO NOT mix with other products.
- DOES NOT PREVENT ALL RESPIRATORY DISEASE!
- Most outbreaks due to IA/E2 strains.
- Note antigenic drift makes a particular vaccine less effective in time.
- Combined equine influenza virus and tetanus vaccines may be used for the initial course and every alternate annual booster vaccination (Duvaxyn IE-T Plus, Equip FT, Prevac T Pro).

### 12.8 Rabies vaccine

POM V (Ministry permission)

**Indications:** Prophylaxis for rabies. Neurotropic disease capable of affecting virtually all mammals.

**Presentation:** Killed tissue culture virus in 1 mL (2 mL) single-dose vials.

**Dose:** 1 mL dose administered IM with annual boosters. Usually vaccinated at 6 months of age, or may be vaccinated at 2 months and then again at 6 months.

#### 12.8.1 Notes:

- In UK must have specific reason for its use. Ministry permission must be obtained and an authority issued before purchase of vaccine possible. Efficacy excellent in horses.

### 12.9 Strangles vaccine

POM V

**Indications:** Prophylaxis for strangles (*Streptococcus equi*) infection.

**Presentation:** Inactivated bacterial proteins or whole (modified) live bacteria.

**Dose:** 1 mL dose of the live modified bacterium (TW928) administered into the upper lip mucosa.

Some vaccines are given IM.

Primary vaccination from 3 months of age.

2-3 doses at 4-week intervals.

Annual boosters or in face of outbreak.

221

#### 12.9.1 Notes:

- Commercial vaccines are now available in UK; these require 6-monthly boosters. They are injected into the mucosa of the upper lip. Some local reactions are often encountered (localised lumps usually).

222

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Some commercial labs may have capacity to manufacture autogenous vaccines but dubious safety. Questionable use in horses other than case from which the bacterium isolated.
- Vaccines are reported efficacious in spite of marked strain-related virulence variations.

### 12.10 Tetanus antiserum

POM V

**Indications:** Prophylaxis and treatment of tetanus. Animals that have not been vaccinated or whose immune status is doubtful should be given antitoxin prophylactically when exposed to risk of infection, for example, following injury. If desired, toxoid may be given simultaneously at a separate injection site using a different syringe.

**Presentation:** Refined concentrated hyperimmune serum produced in horses containing 500-3000 iu/mL in prefilled syringes or 50 mL multidose vials.

**Dose:** Prophylaxis: 3000-6000 iu (total) SC or slow IV single dose lasts 4-5 weeks.

Treatment: 100 000-250 000 iu IV repeated daily pnr.

(+/- intrathecal injection).

#### 12.10.1 Notes:

- Anaphylaxis possible (rare). Care with asepsis. Effective cover for 6 weeks. Do not use pre-opened bottles for intra-theal use.
- Some difficulties with availability due to world-wide shortages.

### 12.11 Tetanus toxoid

POM V

**Indications:** Prophylaxis for tetanus.

**Presentation:** Single-dose vials or preloaded syringes 1 mL injection.

**Dose:** 1 mL dose given deep IM. Initial course: two doses 4-6 weeks apart. Booster given at 6 months then biannually.

Foals may be vaccinated from 6 weeks of age according to expected passive immune status.

#### 12.11.1 Note:

- Very safe/effective.

### 13 Section 10 Miscellaneous drugs/medications and other materials

Including:

- (a) Local anaesthetics
- (b) Eye preparations
- (c) Skin preparations
- (d) Joint preparations
- (e) Antidotes and antitoxins
- (f) Suture materials

#### 13.1 (a) LOCAL ANAESTHETICS

##### 13.1.1 Bupivacaine

POM V

**Indications:** Local, perineural and regional anaesthesia. Most suited to providing therapeutic rather than diagnostic anaesthesia, particularly postoperatively. In lameness workups, it may also be useful to provide prolonged anaesthesia in one or more regions in order to assess lameness at a distant site, e.g. in another limb.

**Presentation:** 0.5% solution in single-use ampoules.

**Dose:** As for 2% lidocaine (lignocaine). Toxic dose 1-4 mg/kg.

##### 13.1.1.1 Notes:

Long duration – up to 6 hours. Slower onset of action.

##### 13.1.2 Lidocaine (lignocaine) HCl

POM V

**Indications:** Local analgesia, perineural regional anaesthesia, epidural anaesthesia, intravenous regional anaesthesia (IVRA) (Bier's block), control of intraoperative cardiac fibrillation, post-operative ileus (see Intestinal stimulants, p. 137).

**Presentations:** Aqueous 2% solution for injection. Sterile multidose vials.

**Dose:** Variable according to site and purpose (see Nerve block sites, p. 379).

Epidural anaesthesia: use only 4-7 mL (small space). Toxic dose 4-10 mg/kg.

13.1.2.1

**Notes:**

Use only specified forms for epidural use (preservative free). Lasts 30-40 min (2 × with adrenaline (epinephrine) added).

Poor penetration through fascial planes so accurate placement important. Very stable solution – can be boiled without effect (NB adrenaline (epinephrine) labile).

Check if **adrenaline (epinephrine)** added to preparation. Formulations with adrenaline (epinephrine) may hinder wound healing by vasoconstriction if injected at the site of the injury.

13.1.3

**Mepivacaine**

POM V

**Indications:** Amide local anaesthetic. Prolonged action. Little irritant/toxic effect in joints or epidural space. Non-irritant in tissues. Causes little overall effect on vascular tone, therefore no adrenaline (epinephrine) needed to prolong its effect.

**Presentation:** 2% solution in sterile multidose (10, 20, 50 mL) vials. NB Contains no antimicrobial preservatives, therefore vial should be discarded following withdrawal of the required dose.

**Dose:** Epidural: 3-5 mL (20-30 min onset).

Regional: 3-20 mL (30 min onset).

Intra-articular: 3-30 mL (15 min onset).

13.1.3.1

**Notes:**

Safe. Avoid IV. Duration approximately 2 hours.

13.1.4

**Proxymetacaine HCl**

POM V

**Profile:** 0.5% solution for surface analgesia of the eye.

Rapid onset (10 sec), lasts for 15 min.

(See Eye preparations, p. 225).

13.1.5

**EMLA cream**

POM V

**Indications:** for topical anaesthesia.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentations:** lidocaine (lignocaine) 2.5%, prilocaine 2.5%; 5 g, 30 g.

**Dose:** Onset of action up to 45 minutes, but some effect after 5 minutes.

224

### 13.1.5.1 Notes:

225

- **Eutectic Mixture of Local Anaesthetics.** An emulsion of prilocaine and lidocaine (lignocaine) bases, which forms a constant melting point mixture (eutectic mixture), of lower melting point than either of the constituents. Absorbed more rapidly across mucosae, and should not be administered by this route.

### 13.2 (b) EYE PREPARATIONS

Eye preparations with preservatives may be less safe than those without – some horses will react inordinately to the preservatives and give the impression that the drugs are not effective. If possible choose preservative-free formulations whenever possible. Ointments generally preferable – prolonged contact and ease of administration.

#### 13.2.1 1. Antibiotics/anti-infectives

##### 13.2.1.1 Acyclovir

POM V

**Actions:** Antiviral

**Indications:** Treatment of viral (herpes) keratitis.

**Presentation:** White sterile eye ointment (3%) in 4.5 g tube (human preparation).

**Dose:** Apply 1-2 cm ribbon q 4 h.

##### 13.2.1.1.1 Note:

- Transient mild discomfort. Disappointing results in treatment of putative herpetiform keratitis.
- Do not use cutaneous formulation for eyes – irritant.

##### 13.2.1.2 Chloramphenicol

POM V

**Actions:** Broad-spectrum bacteriostatic antibiotic. Effective against many Gram +ve, Gram –ve and anaerobic infections.

**Indications:** Use only for chloramphenicol-sensitive infections.

**Presentation:** White ointment (4 g tubes).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Dose:** Apply q 6 h (minimal) and continue until 48 hours after recovery.

13.2.1.2.1

### Notes:

**USE GLOVES – very slight risk of aplastic anaemia!** Probably over-rated as an eye antibiotic – consider gentamicin as first-line antibiotic for eye infections.

**Contraindications:** Preparations with hydrocortisone are contraindicated if infection/ulcers. **Not for horses for human consumption.**

225

13.2.1.3

### Chlortetracycline hydrochloride

226

POM V

**Actions:** Tetracycline antibiotic. Broad-spectrum bacteriostatic agent effective against a wide variety of organisms including chlamydia, mycoplasma and rickettsia.

**Indications:** Sensitive bacterial infections.

**Presentation:** 1% ophthalmic ointment.

13.2.1.3.1

### Notes:

- *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas* and some strains of *Staphylococcus* are frequently resistant.

13.2.1.4

### Cloxacillin

POM V

**Actions:** Penicillinase-stable penicillin (i.e. effective against staphylococci and other penicillinase-producing bacteria). Bactericidal agent with activity primarily against Gram +ve bacteria.

**Indications:** Sensitive bacterial infections.

**Presentation:** Stable suspension 16.67% in 3 g; ointment 16.75% in long-acting base 5 g.

**Dose:** ½ tube every 24 hours; or 5-10 cm ointment per eye – can be repeated after 48-72 h if necessary.

13.2.1.4.1

### Notes

- Do not administer to animals known to have penicillin hypersensitivity. **Not to be handled by individuals with penicillin hypersensitivity.**

13.2.1.5

### Gentamicin

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Action:** Broad-spectrum aminoglycoside antibiotic. Best activity against aerobic Gram –ve bacteria and Mycoplasma. Also active against *Pseudomonas*, *Proteus*, *Staphylococcus* and *Corynebacterium*.

**Indications:** Bacterial eye infections with sensitivity to gentamicin. Probably the best ‘first-line’ antibiotic for eye infections.

**Presentation:** 0.3%, 5 mL.

**Dose:** Apply 10 drops q 6 h pnr.

13.2.1.5.1

### Note:

- Good eye penetration and broad spectrum is useful.

226

13.2.1.6

### Fusidic acid

227

**Action:** Steroidal antibiotic chemically related to cephalosporin. Effective against most Gram +ve organisms, especially staphylococci and some Gram –ve bacteria.

**Indications:** Bacterial infections caused by the above organisms.

**Presentation:** Viscous eye drops, 3 g.

**Dose:** q 12 h.

13.2.1.7

### Idoxuridine

POM V

**Actions:** Antiviral.

**Indications:** Specific anti-herpes drug particularly effective in the treatment of putative herpetiform keratitis.

**Presentation:** 1% clear drops.

13.2.1.7.1

### Note:

- Prolonged or repeated treatment likely to be needed but viral keratitis should respond within a few days. If no response after 2-3 days reconsider diagnosis.

13.2.1.8

### Neomycin

**Action:** Broad-spectrum antibiotic (aminoglycoside). Best activity against aerobic Gram –ve bacteria and mycoplasma.

**Indications:** Good ‘first-line’ antibiotic for infected ulcers when used as combination with bacitracin (Gram +ve and spirochetes) and polymyxin B (Gram –ve). Also used to provide antibiotic cover for corticosteroid preparations.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

**Presentation:** Human preparation – combination of neomycin-bacitracin-polymyxin.

See 'Corticosteroids' for combination preparations containing corticosteroids.

### 13.2.1.8.1 Notes:

**Preparations containing corticosteroids contraindicated if infection/ulcers. Check formulation carefully before use.**

### 13.2.1.9 Tobramycin

POM V

**Action:** Aminoglycoside antibiotic. Similar to gentamicin but more potent activity against *Pseudomonas*.

**Indications:** 'Melting ulcer' caused by *Pseudomonas*.

**Preparation:** Apply human preparation q 2-4 hours.

227

Table 3.16

228

	Likely organisms	Antibiotic	Culture/sensitivity tests	Further
Infectious keratitis	Usually initially Gram +ve. Intensive antibiotic therapy causes rapid involvement of Gram –ve organisms. In severe keratitis hourly therapy may be required	Gentamicin (± chloramphenicol) or neomycin-bacitracin-polymyxin B combination	Swab from margin of ulcer before any topical agents are applied (use AP block and sedation)	Corneal scraping following application of local anaesthetic – direct microscopy
Melting ulcer	<i>Pseudomonas</i> <i>Bacillus</i> (NB: Possible fungi)	Tobramycin and EDTA plasma (anti-collagenase)	As above	As above

228

### 13.2.2 2. Mydriatics

229

These are used for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes where maximal pupillary dilatation is required.

The duration and extent of action of all agents are variable. Tropicamide acts within 10-15 minutes and lasts for 1-2 hours (maximum) while atropine may take longer to work and the mydriasis and cycloplegia may last for days or even longer. **Due to its duration of action atropine is contraindicated as a diagnostic mydriatic.**

Remember that a horse with dilated pupils is likely to be photophobic and painful in bright light.

- Cholinergic antagonists – block muscarinic receptors on sphincter muscle of the iris and ciliary muscles causing paralysis.
- Adrenergic agonists – stimulate contraction of radial muscles of the iris (minimal effect on ciliary muscle).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 13.2.2.1 Adrenaline (epinephrine) BP 1%

POM V

**Action:** Adrenergic agonist. Clear 1% stable solution as drops.

**Indications:** Miosis refractory to atropine treatment.

**Dose:** 2-4 drops q 6 h.

#### 13.2.2.1.1 Notes:

- Mydriasis more rapid than atropine and reversed with physostigmine.
- Keep patient out of direct sunlight (preferably in darkened box).
- Useful to reduce intraocular pressure.
- Strong mydriatic effect.
- Initial discomfort following application.

### 13.2.2.2 Atropine sulphate BP

POM V

**Action:** Cholinergic antagonist.

**Indications:** Uveitis and other painful conditions of the eye producing miosis.

**Presentations:**

Human preparation: 1% drops, 0.5 mL, single use.

Atropine eye ointment (non-proprietary) 1%; 3 g.

Other human preparations available as multidose bottles.

**Side effects:** Ileus may develop with prolonged use.

229

#### 13.2.2.2.1 Notes:

- Administer frequently until effect is present and then use very sparingly to maintain mydriasis (often every second day is enough). Prolonged mydriasis (5-7 days) may follow single dose.
- Keep patient out of direct sunlight (preferably in darkened box) when mydriatic effects are present.
- Consider homatropine bromide as mydriasis can be reversed with physostigmine.

230

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Do NOT use atropine as an ophthalmic diagnostic agent – effects may be prolonged and severe mydriasis and cycloplegia can be present for days!

### 13.2.2.3 Cyclopentolate

POM V

**Action:** Cholinergic antagonist. Effects similar to atropine.

**Indications:** Uveitis and other painful conditions of the eye producing miosis.

**Presentation:** Drops (1%, 0.5%), 2-4 drops q 6 h.

#### 13.2.2.3.1 Notes:

- Mydriasis more rapid than atropine but in some cases it may not be effective at all. Its results are unpredictable in horses. Keep patient out of direct sunlight (preferably in darkened box).

### 13.2.2.4 Homatropine bromide

POM V

**Action:** Cholinergic antagonist. Effects similar to atropine.

#### 13.2.2.4.1 Notes:

- Mydriasis more rapid than atropine and reversed with physostigmine. Keep patient out of direct sunlight (preferably in darkened box).

**Presentation:** Clear 2% solution as drops.

**Dose:** 2-4 drops q 6 h.

### 13.2.2.5 Phenylephrine

POM V

**Action:** Adrenoceptor agonist.

**Indication:** Uveitis/pain/glaucoma etc. Aid to diagnosis of grass sickness.

**Presentation and dose:** Apply 2-4 drops q 4-6 h.

230

#### 13.2.2.5.1 Notes:

- Marked but short-acting mydriatic. Rebound miosis/irritation/corneal oedema. Keep patient out of direct sunlight (preferably in darkened box).

231

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Useful aid to diagnosis of grass sickness. The disease is characterised by mild/moderate ptosis and this is reversed if phenylephrine is instilled into the conjunctiva<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Hahn and Mayhew (2000) Phenylephrine eye drops as a diagnostic test in equine grass sickness. Veterinary Record 147:(21): 603-606.

13.2.2.5.2

### Note:

- Phenylephrine eye drops can be used as an aid to diagnosis of grass sickness. The method is a useful one but it is possibly difficult to interpret. Therefore the method must be followed precisely.
  - (i) Do not sedate the horse with acepromazine or an alpha-2-agonist for at least 6 hours prior to the test.
  - (ii) Assess the patient's eyelash angles in a frontal plane in both eyes (angle with respect to the horizontal, which is the normal position of a resting normal eyelid).
  - (iii) Dilute 10% phenylephrine to 0.5% solution with sterile saline (NOT water).
  - (iv) Apply 0.5 mL to the conjunctival sac of one eye only.
  - (v) Reassess the eyelash angle in the same way as previously after 30 minutes.
- **Interpretation:**

Positive result (i.e. the horse probably has grass sickness) is shown by a reduction in the degree of ptosis (i.e. a widening of the palpebral fissure). The eyelashes on the treated eye will be in a more elevated (normal) position when compared to the untreated eye.

13.2.2.6

### Tropicamide

POM V

**Action:** Synthetic anticholinergic.

**Indications:** Mydriatic of choice for diagnostic procedures.

**Notes:** Onset in 10-15 minutes and lasts <2 hours (usually).

**Presentation:** Human only – 0.5%, 1% solution as drops.

**Dose:** 2-5 drops q 1 h prn.

231

### 13.2.3 3. Miotics

Miotics include the **cholinergic agonists** and the **anti-cholinesterases**. They cause constriction of the ciliary muscles and so widen the conventional drainage angle (this is probably less significant in horses as they employ unconventional aqueous drainage to a greater extent than other species).

#### 13.2.3.1 Physostigmine salicylate BvetC

POM V

**Action:** Anticholinesterase (pharmacological effects mimic ACH).

**Indication:** Useful in convalescent stages of periodic ophthalmia.

**Contraindications:** Anterior uveitis, anterior lens luxation.

**Presentation:** 0.125% eye ointment; paper strip containing 0.06 mg.

**Dose:** Applied q 12 h pnr.

#### 13.2.3.2 Pilocarpine nitrate

POM V

**Action:** Cholinergic agonist (pharmacological effects mimic ACH).

**Indication:** Reduction of intraocular pressure in glaucoma. Potent miotic for reversing effects of mydriatics.

**Contraindications:** Anterior uveitis, anterior lens luxation.

**Presentation:**

1%, 2%, solution; 0.5 mL single use as drops.

**Dose:**

Apply 1-2 drops q 5 min until effect.

#### 13.2.3.2.1 Notes:

- Good ocular penetration, onset of action 15 min, effect may last >2 h. Local irritation.

### 13.2.4 4. Beta-blockers

These decrease intraocular pressure (IOP) by reducing aqueous humour production. Some can be absorbed via the nasolacrimal duct into the circulation and induce systemic effects. Betaxolol spares the cardiac effects (more specific) better than carteolol, levobunolol, metipranolol or timolol. The effects of these drugs are poorly defined in horses and are in any case seldom required except in a referral situation.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 13.2.4.1 Betaxolol

POM V

**Indications:** Reduction of IOP.

**Presentation:** 0.5% drops in aqueous solution and trauma.

**Dose:** Apply 1-5 drops pnr.

232

### 13.2.4.1.1 Notes:

Selective  $\beta$ -blocker therefore minimise systemic effects and agent of choice in patients with cardiac/respiratory disease. Initial discomfort. Protect eye from dust.

233

### 13.2.4.2 Carteolol

POM V

**Indications:** Reduction of IOP.

**Contraindications:** Care in patients with pre-existing cardiovascular, respiratory or metabolic disease.

**Presentation:** 1%, 2% drops in aqueous solution preservative free.

**Dose:** Apply 1-5 drops pnr.

### 13.2.4.3 Levobunolol

POM V

**Indications:** Reduction of IOP.

**Contraindications:** Care in patients with pre-existing cardiovascular, respiratory or metabolic disease.

**Presentation:** 0.5% drops in aqueous solution.

**Dose:** Apply 1-5 drops pnr.

### 13.2.4.3.1 Notes:

- Initial local irritation. Protect eye from dust and trauma.

### 13.2.4.4 Metipranolol

POM V

**Indications:** Reduction of IOP.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Contraindications:** Care in patients with pre-existing cardiovascular, respiratory or metabolic disease.

**Presentation:** 0.1%, 0.3% drops in aqueous solution.

### 13.2.4.4.1 Notes:

Initial local irritation. Protect eye from dust and trauma.

### 13.2.4.5 Timolol maleate

POM V

**Indications:** Reduction of IOP.

233

**Contraindications:** Care in patients with pre-existing cardiovascular, respiratory or metabolic disease.  
Hypotensive effects are additive with parasympathomimetics and carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.

234

**Presentation:** 0.5% drops in aqueous solution – preservative-free.

**Dose:** Apply 1-5 drops pnr.

Metered doses.

### 13.2.4.5.1 Notes:

- Initial local irritation. Protect eye from dust and trauma. Most widely used in veterinary medicine.
- Initial discomfort.
- Protect eye from dust and trauma.

### 13.2.5 5. Topical anaesthetics

Local anaesthesia of the cornea and conjunctiva can be easily achieved with topical drops. The effects begin within minutes and last 5-10 minutes (depending on the extent of tear dilution/flushing) – seldom longer so prolonged procedures may need repeated doses.

Amethocaine (tetracaine) is faster acting and more powerful than most others. The anaesthetic effects are useful for investigation, procedures, foreign body retrieval and as an adjunct to sedation/general anaesthesia for more detailed procedures.

Lidocaine (lignocaine) hydrochloride (2%) is acidic and should not be used in the eye if any alternative can be found. Formulations with adrenaline (epinephrine) are contraindicated at all times.

### 13.2.5.1 Amethocaine (tetracaine)

POM V

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Free-flowing ointment base containing 0.5% and as drops containing 0.5 or 1% amethocaine.

**Dose:**

Apply 1-5 drops pnr.

### 13.2.5.1.1 Notes:

- Initial discomfort. Effect lasts 5-10 min. Protect eye from dust and trauma.

### 13.2.5.2 Oxybuprocaine HCl/benoxinate hydrochloride

POM V

**Presentation:** 0.4% clear solution as drops.

**Dose:** Apply 2-6 drops.

234

### 13.2.5.2.1 Notes:

- Fast acting: <1 min, but short duration (approx. 5 minutes). Prolonged use may result in ulceration.

235

### 13.2.5.3 Proxymetacaine HCl/proparacaine

POM V

**Dose:** 0.5% solution for surface analgesia of the eye. Apply as necessary.

### 13.2.5.3.1 Notes:

- Rapid onset (10 seconds) lasts for 15 minutes. Commonest surface analgesic for the eye.
- Solutions inclined to weaken if not stored correctly – keep cool and preferably refrigerated until a minute or two before use.

### 13.2.6 6. Steroids

Corticosteroid application to the eye surface carries significant risks when ulceration is present – **they are therefore contraindicated in all cases of corneal ulceration (no matter how small/insignificant they might appear to be)**. As soon as ulceration is demonstrably absent corticosteroids may be applied in an attempt to reduce the extent of fibroplasia and leukoma formation. Lesions in the visual axis should probably be treated as early as possible to limit the effects on vision while those away from the axis can be left for longer before steroid administration.

Ocular bioavailability of topical glucocorticoid formulations varies significantly. Lipid-soluble alcohol and ester preparations penetrate the anterior chamber rapidly. Water-soluble preparations have poor penetration of the intact cornea and are more useful for corneal/conjunctival inflammation than uveitis. Ocular inflammation

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

may increase the penetrating ability of all preparations. Potency of corticosteroids can be scored as: hydrocortisone 1, prednisolone 5, betamethasone 25, dexamethasone 25 and flumethasone (flumetasone) 30 (30 is greatest potency). The actual clinical effect will depend upon concentration, formulation and frequency of application.

Frequency of application varies with severity and nature of problem. Hourly medication may be required in the initial stages of acute anterior uveitis whereas chronic superficial keratitis may be treated on alternate days for prolonged periods.

- **Repeated detailed examination is essential for any eye case receiving prolonged corticosteroid medication.**
- **There is a tendency for horses on prolonged corticosteroids and antibiotics to develop serious corneal fungal infections.**

235

### 13.2.6.1 Betamethasone

236

POM V

**Action:** Anti-inflammatory.

**Indications:** Treatment and control of corneal/conjunctival inflammation.

**Contraindications:** Specific contraindication in infection/ulcers.

**Dose:** 0.1%, apply 2-4 drops q 8 h (relatively weak preparation with little penetrating ability).

**Side effects:** Excessive use may lead to systemic side effects.

#### 13.2.6.1.1 Notes:

- Poor ocular penetration, betamethasone relatively potent anti-inflammatory.

### 13.2.6.2 Dexamethasone

**Action:** Anti-inflammatory.

**Indications:** Treatment and control of corneal/conjunctival inflammation. Anterior uveitis.

**Dose:** Sterile 0.1% solution as drops + neomycin + polymyxin B and hypromellose.

Apply 2-4 drops q 4 h pnr.

**Contraindications:** Infection/ulcers.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.2.6.2.1

### Note:

- Good penetration when formulated as a suspension with efficacy similar to 1% prednisolone acetate.

13.2.6.3

### Hydrocortisone

POM V

**Action:** Anti-inflammatory.

**Indications:** Treatment and control of corneal/conjunctival inflammation.

**Contraindications:** Infection/ulcers.

13.2.6.3.1

### Notes:

- Rapid effect but short-lived.

13.2.6.4

### Prednisolone

POM V

**Action:** Anti-inflammatory.

**Indications:** Treatment and control of corneal/conjunctival inflammation. Uveitis.

236

**Contraindications:** Infection/ulcers.

237

**Dose:** 1% prednisolone acetate solution. Apply as necessary.

13.2.6.4.1

### Notes:

- Potent anti-inflammatory. Probably the best topical steroid for ophthalmic use. Prednisolone acetate is lipid soluble and gives good penetration. 1% prednisolone acetate solution drug of choice in uveitis. Use with antibiotic preparation. Prednisolone sodium phosphate less penetration than acetate.

13.2.7

### 7. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

The pharmacokinetics and bioavailability of ocular NSAIDs are unknown in the horse. Generally they are presumed to reach higher local therapeutic levels than oral or parenteral drugs.

Subconjunctival injection of parenteral formulations is not recommended as they are potentially very irritant. Efficacy of topical NSAIDs is significantly less than glucocorticoids. Drug of choice if ocular infection is a concern. Care if ulcerative keratitis is present as effect on corneal healing is unknown.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Comparisons of the efficacy of the different topical NSAIDs have not been made in the horse. Optimal therapeutic protocols are not established. Dosing will depend on severity of the condition and clinical response. Acute uveitis may require hourly dosing initially. Often combined with systemic NSAIDs therapy for maximum effect.

### 13.2.7.1 Diclofenac

POM V

**Indications:** Anterior uveitis, equine recurrent uveitis, traumatic and non-ulcerative keratides and keratouveitis.

**Presentation:** 1% single-dose eye drops.

**Dose:** Apply q 12 h pnr.

237

#### 13.2.7.1.1 Notes:

- Useful non-steroidal drug that inhibits miosis and provides topical anti-inflammatory effects.
- Used when corticosteroids are contraindicated. VERY EXPENSIVE.
- None licensed for horses in the UK.

238

### 13.2.7.2 Flurbiprofen

POM V

**Indications:** Anterior uveitis, equine recurrent uveitis, traumatic and non-ulcerative keratides and keratouveitis.

**Presentation:** 10 × 4 single-unit vials.

**Dose:** Apply q 12 h pnr.

#### 13.2.7.2.1 Notes:

- Useful non-steroidal drug, which inhibits miosis and provides topical anti-inflammatory effects.
- Used when corticosteroids are contraindicated. VERY EXPENSIVE.

### 13.2.8 8. Artificial tears/lubricating solutions

Tears are a complex physiological solution – not just saline! Ocular lubricants are designed to correct unstable or deficient precorneal tear film in which either the aqueous, mucoid or lipid components may be deficient.

**Carbomers (polyacrylic acid), polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol and dextran** can assist the tear film to spread more evenly over the eye when mucus production is either deficient or unevenly distributed over the

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

corneal epithelium. **Acetylcysteine** helps to break down the mucus molecules and aggregations and so increases the wateriness of the tear layer. **Saline** drops will inhibit lipid secretion by the Meibomian glands.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of bottles. Discard partially used open bottles.

### 13.2.8.1 Acetylcysteine

POM V

**Indications:** Potent/specific anti-collagenase. Specific mucolytic and lubricant properties. Used for control and treatment of melting ulcers. Tear deficiency.

**Dose:** 5% acetylcysteine w/v in hypromellose base 2-6 drops q 2 h for melting ulcers, q 6 h for dry-eye syndromes.

### 13.2.8.2 Hypromellose USP

GSL

**Indications:** Lubrication for eye where xerophthalmia or keratoconjunctivitis sicca present.

**Presentations:** Eye drops 0.3%, 10 mL bottle; hypromellose (0.3%) and dextran 70, 15 mL droppers. Also included in some combination products.

**Dose:** As required. Apply frequently (q 2-3 h minimum) prn.

**Notes:** Often used to dilute complex medication collyrium for topical treatment.

### 13.2.8.3 Liquid paraffin

POM V

**Indications:** Used as required to provide lubrication when keratoconjunctivitis sicca (dry eye) conditions are present (i.e. tear deficiency). Often used to protect eyes during anaesthesia.

**Presentation:** Preservative-free ointment in 3.5 g tube.

**Dose:** Apply as necessary.

238

### 13.2.8.4 Polyacrylic acid (carbomer)

POM V

**Indications:** Very effective eye lubrication when dry-eye or unstable tear film conditions are present.

**Presentation:** Sterile colourless liquid gel containing 2.0 mg/g carbomer 940. 10 g tube.

**Dose:** Apply 2-4 drops q 8 h.

239

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.2.8.4.1

### Notes:

- Probably the best eye lubricant/artificial tear solution. Mild initial transient irritation may occur.

13.2.8.5

### Polyvinyl alcohol

**Indications:** Used as required to provide lubrication when keratoconjunctivitis sicca (dry eye) conditions are present (i.e. tear deficiency).

**Dose:** Apply 8-10 times a day.

13.2.9

## 9. Ophthalmic diagnostics and miscellaneous drugs

13.2.9.1

### Cyclosporin (ciclosporin) A

POM V

**Indications:** Licensed for use in treatment of keratoconjunctivitis sicca in dogs. Known to have similar effect on tear production in horses. Chronic superficial keratitis. Adjunct therapy to corneal oedema of unknown origin.

**Dose:** 4-6 drops every 6 hours.

13.2.9.1.1

### Notes:

- Potent specific T-cell immunosuppressant.

**Contraindications:** PREGNANT ANIMALS OR IF ANY EVIDENCE OF BACTERIAL OR FUNGAL OPHTHALMIC INFECTION.

13.2.9.2

### EDTA

Not classified

**Indications:** Anti-collagenase. Control and treatment of melting ulcers.

**Dose:** Add 5 mL sterile saline to 10 mL EDTA Vacutainer (B-D Ltd) (ideally 2% solution of EDTA). Apply as drops q 2 h.

13.2.9.2.1

### Note:

- ALTERNATIVES – Solution of acetylcysteine or EDTA plasma.

13.2.9.3

### Galardin

POM V

239

240

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Potent anti-collagenase. Control and treatment of melting ulcers.

13.2.9.3.1 **Note:**

- ALTERNATIVES: as above.

13.2.9.4 **Hyperosmotic saline ointment**

POM V

**Indications:** Used symptomatically to reduce corneal oedema to allow effective examination of the anterior chamber. Reduces secretions of lipid by Meibomian glands.

**Dose:** 5% saline ointment applied q 8-12 h.

13.2.10 **10. Ophthalmic stains**

13.2.10.1 **Fluorescein**

POM V

**Indications:** Diagnostic solution for detection of corneal ulceration and patency of nasolacrimal duct (may take 5-15 min to pass down duct!).

**Dose:** Single-use sterile drops (1%, 2%) or impregnated paper strips (1 mg).

13.2.10.1.1 **Notes:**

- Conjunctival abrasions stain yellow-orange, corneal ulcers stain bright green. Avoid bacterial contamination. May be irritant (consider use of topical anaesthetic).

13.2.10.2 **Rose Bengal BP**

POM V

**Indications:** Diagnostic solution for detection of necrotic tissue (devitalised epithelium) and abnormal precorneal tear film.

**Dose:** Single-use sterile drops (1%) in single-dose dropper sachets.

13.2.10.2.1 **Notes:**

- Somewhat irritant.

240



### 13.3 (c) SKIN PREPARATIONS

#### 13.3.1 1. Disinfectants and antiseptics

##### Definitions:

- **Antiseptic:** A preparation that inhibits the growth of microorganisms and that is suitable for application to wounds or broken skin without significant harmful effects.
- **Disinfectant:** A preparation that inhibits the growth of microorganisms and that is not suitable for the application to wounds or broken skin because it is too strong or is otherwise harmful to the health of the tissue.
- **Germicide:** Preparation that kills microorganisms outright. This is a largely discredited name.

##### 13.3.1.1 Note:

Modern wound management/tissue viability studies suggest that almost all chemicals applied to wounds have some harmful effects. Acceptable antiseptics have minimal harmful effects in the concentrations that are used clinically. Often higher concentrations will have a dramatic and significantly increased harmful effect even up to the point of causing tissue necrosis.

##### 13.3.1.2 Chlorhexidine

GSL

##### Indications:

- Topical antiseptic.
- Disinfection of wounds, burns, surgical scrub.
- Adjunct to treatment of ringworm (with enilconazole).
- Variable activity against viruses and fungi.

**Presentations:** Pink lathering solution (5%) or pink alcoholic solution (5%).

**Use:** On broken skin use a 1:100 dilution of the solution (do not use the alcoholic solution).

Effective navel dip solution (0.5%) chlorhexidine solution can be made up by diluting with sterile water. This solution has a residual effect for up to 3 hours and should therefore be repeated at 3-4-hour intervals over the first 24 hours.

##### 13.3.1.2.1 Notes:

- **DO NOT mix with other antiseptics/disinfectants.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Rapid onset of action and some residual effect (for up to 2 hours) by binding to cell surfaces.
- Can be advantageous in preparation of elective surgical sites under bandages (e.g. foot and skin preparation).

241

13.3.1.3

### Povidone iodine

242

GSL

#### Indications:

- Broad-spectrum antibacterial effect with some antifungal, antiprotozoal and anti-viral effects.
- For application on wounds, wound ointment, endometritis, surgical preparation, obstetric manipulation and routine skin care.
- The antiseptic solutions are commonly used for navel dipping in neonatal foals (see below under Notes).
- The scrub should be used on heavily contaminated sites before the solution.
- The antibacterial effect is reduced by contact with pus and exudates and there is no significant residual effect. Therefore regular reapplication may be necessary depending upon the degree of wound exudation.

**Presentations:** Antiseptic solution – non-lathering (1% available iodine); surgical scrub – lathering solution (0.75% available iodine); antiseptic ointment for wound application.

**Use:** Surgical scrubs (soap-based solutions) are widely used.

For wound management the dilution needs to be high – the solution used for irrigating wounds should not appear any stronger than a very weak tea.

13.3.1.3.1

#### Notes:

**Navel dips require strong solutions to be effective and these can cause desiccation and necrosis of the navel remnant.** In general this use is to be avoided. Not only does it not protect the umbilical remnants from infection (there is no residual effect) but it can cause damage also.

- **DO NOT mix with other antiseptics, soap or detergents; doing so reduces the available iodine.**
- Rapidly deactivated by organic contact. Colour fades when action lost.
- Therapeutic effect on open wounds has been supported by some reviews but questioned by others because of delayed wound healing.
- Iodine toxicity has been reported – the use of this agent should be avoided on very large wounds.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

13.3.1.3.1.1

### CAUTION:

- (i) The action of iodine solutions relies upon a dilution – strong solutions are less effective than weak ones!
- (ii) Under no circumstances should the 7% iodine solutions be used on the navel of neonatal foals. It will cause serious necrosis.
- (iii) Under no circumstances should iodine solutions be used to flush/irrigate the guttural pouches. Serious and permanent nerve damage can occur.

**NB: ALCOHOL** – Dries skin cells and delays wound healing. Alcohol-based preparations should be restricted to prophylactic skin disinfection before needle insertions or surgical procedures.

242

13.3.2

## 2. Astringents

243

13.3.2.1

### Malic acid

P

**Indications:** Debriding and cleansing agent for skin wounds, particularly when necrotic tissue is present (encourages sloughing). The agent is mildly antibacterial. It discourages granulation tissue formation and so should only be used in the debridement phase of wound healing.

Good action against *Pseudomonas* organisms.

**Presentations:** Solution 2.25% 100/350 mL plastic squeeze bottles. Cream 30 g and 100 g tubes.

**Dose:** Use as necessary.

13.3.2.1.1

### Notes:

- Avoid eye contact.
- Do not mix with other agents.
- Should not be used for cleansing fresh wounds (too acidic).
- The compounds should be used carefully after balancing the significant disadvantages with the perceived advantages. In some cases wound infection must be controlled quickly regardless of the potential harmful effects on tissues.

13.3.3

## 3. Antibacterials

As a general rule antibiotics should not be applied topically but given systemically. There are two main hazards associated with their use – resistance and sensitivity/untoward reactions. Controlled use of topical antibiotics will eliminate some of the problems caused by plasmid transfer and induction of antibiotic resistance by inappropriate use; this will reduce sensitivity reactions, which cause considerable harm and delay healing.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 13.3.3.1 Silver sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine)

POM V

#### Indications:

- Silver metal or its salts have significant bacteriostatic and bactericidal properties.
- Broad-spectrum antibacterial.
- Used to treat a variety of wounds where infection may prevent wound healing.
- Significant effect on *Dermatophilus congolensis*.
- Very helpful in burn wound management.

**Presentation:** A hydrophilic cream containing 1% silver sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine).

243

### 13.3.3.1.1 Note:

To be used under a non-adherent dressing or directly on open sites.

244

### 13.3.3.2 Honey

**Indications:** Antibacterial action is due mainly to hydrogen peroxide which is liberated by enzyme reaction. Some types of honey may also contain other natural antibacterial substances. Bacterial growth will not be supported because of the high osmotic pressure of the honey. Its efficacy is diluted with increasing exudation due to the reduction in the osmotic pressure but the other antimicrobial components in honey will ensure that inhibition is maintained. Good (documented effects) against *Pseudomonas* spp. It is non-irritant and has a low pH.

**Presentations:** (i) Gel form – antibacterial honey 50 g; (ii) Dressings with impregnated honey are the most convenient method of applying honey to wounds.

### 13.3.3.2.1 Notes:

Not all honeys are effective – the right formulation is necessary. If the gel form is used then the treated area should be covered with a dressing. If the wound is only mildly exudative then a waterproof dressing may help to maintain the honey at the wound site rather than leaking out.

### 13.3.4 4. Poultices

#### 13.3.4.1 Complete poultice dressing

GSL

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Indications:** Poulticing of infected/inflamed foci in feet and skin. Encourages pus drainage through tissue softening/maceration and osmotic gradient.

**Presentation:** Single pieces of impregnated bandage with plastic backing sheet.

**Use:** Change every 24 hours.

13.3.4.1.1

### Notes:

- Useful for softening hoof to permit easier paring and debriding. May encourage draining of infected or inflamed sinus tracts.
- The dressing is not a primary wound dressing and is too acidic for healthy tissues. Application to skin injuries should be used with clinical judgement.
- Cover with a bandage to keep the poultice in place.

13.3.4.2

### Kaolin (heavy)

GSL

**Indications:** Poulticing skin and foot infections.

244

**Presentation:** Paste for topical application.

245

**Use:** Change as required.

13.3.4.2.1

### Note:

- Messy and smelly! Little to commend it!

13.3.5

## 5. Wound dressings

The ideal wound dressing should:

- Maintain a moist environment at the wound interface.
- Remove excess exudates without allowing 'strike through' to the surface of the dressing.
- Provide thermal insulation and mechanical protection.
- Act as a barrier to microorganisms (both directions).
- Allow gaseous exchange.
- Be non-adherent and easily removed without trauma to the wound or the surrounding skin.
- Leave no foreign particles in the wound.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Be non-toxic, non-allergenic, non-sensitising.
- Be compatible with and support delivery of medications.
- Be conformable and mouldable to the anatomical outline of the region.

No single dressing is appropriate for all wound types and all stages of wound healing.

### 13.3.5.1 Hydrogel

**Indications:** A hydrogel with a high available water content that creates and maintains a moist wound environment at the wound site. It debrides the wound by hydration and the promotion of autolysis.

- It is used on fresh wounds as a protective layer that helps to control infection, prevents further contamination, desiccation and tissue shrinkage.
- It has a useful debriding effect on dry and sloughy wounds.
- It is not appropriate for heavily exudating wounds but can be used for lightly exudative wounds, necrotic or sloughing wounds and granulating wounds.
- It is suitable for many stages of wound healing and even in dry wounds acts as a net donor of moisture.
- Hydrogels can be used where aerobic and anaerobic infection is present and where the patient is receiving systemic antibiotics.

**Presentations:** (i) Gel form; (ii) non-woven, non-felting dressing impregnated with hydrogel.

245

#### 13.3.5.1.1 Note:

- Apply to the wound surface, needs to be covered with a sterile dressing.

**Adhesion to wound surfaces is often poor so it is best to apply it to the primary dressing before this is applied to the wound surface. Some forms have a better adhesion but are less effective moisture donors.**

246

### 13.3.5.2 Non/low-adherent primary wound dressings (variable absorbency)

### 13.3.5.3 Melolin

**Indications:** To be used on non-exudative or very mildly exudative wounds.

This dressing will not absorb excessive exudation, which will cause maceration and so is applicable to non-exudative wounds.

**Presentations:** (i) Melolin; (ii) melolin on an adhesive dressing retention sheet.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.3.5.3.1

### Notes:

- Apply to the wound surface as a primary dressing and retain in position with a secondary dressing. Cover with a bandage.

13.3.5.4

### Vapour-permeable dressings

**Indications:** Hydrophilic polyurethane film that is vapour permeable. Can be used for mild or moderately exudating wounds. There are various forms available.

**Presentations:**

- (i) Vapour-permeable adhesive film dressing with an absorbent pad.
- (ii) Film combined with a low-adherent pad. A waterproof bacteria-proof adhesive dressing.
- (iii) The spray forms a transparent and quick drying film which is permeable to moisture vapour and air. The film can be peeled off when completely dry or left to slough off naturally. Can be used on minor wounds or over sutures.

13.3.5.4.1

### Note:

- Apply to the wound surface and cover with a bandage.

13.3.5.5

### Polyurethane foam

**Indications:** A hydrophilic absorbent polyurethane dressing. To be used on light to moderately exudative wounds.

**Presentations:** Comes in various forms. Cavity form is highly absorbent and conformable and can be used for deep wounds.

13.3.5.5.1

### Note:

- Apply to the wound surface and cover with a bandage.

246

13.3.5.6

### Calcium alginate

247

**Indications:** Calcium and sodium salts of alginic acid obtained from seaweed. It is biodegradable and highly absorbent due to a strong hydrophilic gel formation that occurs on contact with wound secretions. Highly absorbent – useful in medium to heavily exudating wounds. Some dressings have haemostatic properties (calcium sodium alginate).

**Presentations:** (i) Calcium alginate; (ii) calcium sodium alginate.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.3.5.6.1

### Notes:

- Apply to the wound surface and cover with a bandage. May need saline irrigation for dressing removal. Not suitable for dry wounds or wounds that are covered with hard necrotic tissue.

13.3.5.7

### Deodorising carbon dressings

**Indications:** Used in the management of discharging, purulent and contaminated wounds complicated by bacterial infection and offensive odour. The charcoal fibres become microporous and develop thin, slit-like pores. This substantially increases the surface area making charcoal based dressings highly absorbent. Some dressings also absorb bacteria (electrostatic or physiochemical attractions).

13.3.5.7.1

### Notes:

- Apply to the wound surface and cover with a bandage. Do not cut to size.

13.3.5.8

### Silver-coated dressing

**Indications:** Silver metal or its salts have antibacterial properties. Absorbent dressing containing nanocrystalline silver (antibacterial). Used for mildly exudative wounds. Silver-impregnated dressings are effective means of controlling even some difficult wound infections including *S. aureus*, MRSA and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

13.3.5.8.1

### Notes:

- Apply to the wound surface and cover with a bandage. Dressings should not be changed too frequently. The change interval will be dictated by the extent of exudates and other factors. These dressings retain their effects for up to 7 days. They should not however be reapplied to a wound after removal.

13.3.5.9

### Wet-to-dry dressings

**Indications:** Used for sloughing, necrotic wound. Used where mechanical debridement is necessary. The indications for this approach are few.

**Presentation:** Saline-soaked gauze swabs (can be soaked in a dilute solution of crystalline penicillin).

247

13.3.5.9.1

### Notes:

- Placed onto the wound and covered with a bandage. Do NOT use where mechanical debridement is not directly indicated. These dressings cause significant damage and the disadvantages have to outweigh the advantages. Usually there are much better ways of performing the debridement. Combination of this dressing method with hypochlorite solutions (e.g. EUSOL) are specifically contraindicated in equine wound management.

248



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 13.3.5.10 Absorbent dressings

These should only be used over a dressing and should NOT be placed directly onto a wound.

### 13.3.5.11 Absorbent cotton

**Indications:** Absorbent dressing.

**Presentation:** Rolls or balls.

#### 13.3.5.11.1 Notes:

- Do not place directly over a wound. They can be used as dressings to provide padding or protection.

### 13.3.5.12 Gamgee

**Indications:** Pad of cotton wool enclosed in cotton gauze. Soft and absorbent, allows strike through.

**Presentation:** Rolls.

#### 13.3.5.12.1 Notes:

- Do not place directly onto a wound. Gamgee should not be used as padding in dressings as it is difficult to apply without kinks and folds – increasing the risk of bandage sores.

### 13.3.5.13 Nappy

**Indications:** Used for highly exudative wounds.

**Presentation:** Commercially available.

#### 13.3.5.13.1 Notes:

- Do not place directly onto a wound. Dressings on highly exudative wounds should be changed frequently.

248

Table 3.17

249

Wound dressing	Dry non-discharging (surgical) wound	Dry non-exudative (healthy) wound	Epithelialising (healthy) wound	Granulating (healthy) wound	Mildly exudative wound	Moderately exudative wound	Severely exudative wound	Haemorrhagic wound	Cavity wounds	Infected/purulent exudative wound	Necrotic wound
Hydrogel	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓	✓
Melolin	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
Vapour permeable	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					
Allevyn			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ (Cavity)		✓ (Cavity)	✓	
Calcium alginate			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Carbon-based dressing						✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Silver-based dressing					✓					✓	
Honey dressing						✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Wet-to-dry dressing											✓
Comments									Provide drainage where possible	Surgical debridement may be necessary	Surgical debridement may be necessary

249

### 13.3.6 6. Casting materials

250

#### 13.3.6.1 Orthopaedic felt

**Indication:** A soft adhesive sponge to be placed underneath the cast to protect against pressure sores.

**Presentation:** Sheets of felt that can be easily cut to size.

##### 13.3.6.1.1 Notes:

- A strip to be placed at the top of a cast. It should also be placed around the accessory carpal bone, tuber calcis and on the cranial aspect of the hock in full-limb casts.

#### 13.3.6.2 Custom support foam

**Indication:** Conforming padding for application under casts or bandages.

**Presentation:** Impregnated bandages in dehydrated foil wrap (various sizes).

##### 13.3.6.2.1 Notes:

- Apply over double layer of stockinet after immersing roll in tepid water for a few seconds (one immersion/squeeze). Bandage around limb using 50% overlap technique. Apply casting material immediately. Cures rapidly, close anatomical fit, good porosity, radiolucent, energy absorbent, rapid drying. Makes cast removal less complicated/dangerous.

#### 13.3.6.3 Plaster of Paris (calcium sulphate)

**Indications:** Immobilisation of fractures, granulating wounds etc.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentations:** Impregnated bandages in dehydrated foil wrap (various sizes).

13.3.6.3.1

### Notes:

- Easy to apply and use – conforms well to limb and cheap. However it is messy and heavy with a low strength to weight ratio. Does not achieve maximum strength until 24 hours after application. Liable to break. Softens on contact with moisture, protective waterproofing is available as emulsion applied after drying.
- Not recommended.

13.3.6.4

### Thermoplastic casting material

**Indications:** A linear polyester polymer used for immobilisation of fractures, granulating wounds etc.

**Presentation:** Plastic-wrapped plastic mesh bandage.

250

13.3.6.4.1

### Notes:

- Made mouldable by heating in boiling water for 5-10 minutes. Becomes mildly adhesive and conforming. Sets as placed as it cools. Poor conformation on limb. Best reserved for making 'slabs' and for additional application to foot over synthetic polyacrylic casts.

251

13.3.6.5

### Synthetic polyacrylic casting material

#### 1. Fibreglass tape impregnated with polyurethane resin

**Indications:** Immobilisation of fractures, granulating wounds etc. (see – Casting, p. 329).

**Presentation:** Individual bandages soaked in water immediately prior to use. Different sizes available.

13.3.6.5.0.0.0.1

### Notes:

- Use proprietary orthopaedic sponge around the top of the cast. The felt should also be used with appropriate cut-out portions over pressure points in full-limb casts (see p. 329).

#### 2. Polypropylene mesh impregnated with polyurethane resin

**Indications:** Immobilisation of fractures, dislocations and granulating wounds etc. (see – Casting, p. 329).

**Presentations:** Individual bandages soaked in water immediately prior to use. Different sizes available.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.3.6.5.0.0.0.2

### Notes:

- Use proprietary orthopaedic felt around the top of the cast. The felt should also be used with appropriate cut-out portions over pressure points in full-limb casts (see p. 329).
- Wear gloves as compound very sticky and persistent!
- New formulation suitable for making casting slabs (splints) – effective for slab construction (particularly useful for foals with flexural deformities etc.). Material sprayed with water to dampen and then layered on to conform around the limb – sets very hard and allows slab construction.

13.4

### (d) JOINT PREPARATIONS

13.4.1

#### Polysulphated glycosaminoglycan (PSGAG)

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-inflammatory, inhibits degradative proteolytic enzymes, stimulates hyaluronic acid production, stimulates proteoglycan production. Treatment of lameness due to degenerative (aseptic/closed) joint disease. Generally used for mild chronic joint disease. 251  
252

**Presentations:** Intra-articular injection – 250 mg/mL in 1 mL single-dose ampoule. Intra-muscular injection – 100 mg/mL in 5 mL single dose-ampoules.

**Dose:** 250 mg intra-articular injection once weekly for 5 weeks.

500 mg intra-muscular injection every 4 days for 7 doses.

13.4.1.1

### Notes:

- Ensure asepsis. DO NOT inject into infected joints or non-infected joints with significant soft tissue inflammation. DO NOT use if renal or hepatic disease. Transient swelling. Discontinue if reaction.

13.4.2

#### Sodium hyaluronate

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-inflammatory, protective against cartilage degradation and decreases inflammatory cell migration. Treatment of lameness due to degenerative (aseptic/closed) joint disease. Generally used for acute synovitis.

### Presentations:

- Intra-articular – 10 mg/mL in 2 mL single-dose vials.
- Intra-articular – 10 mg/mL in 2 mL preloaded syringes.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Intra-articular – 50 mg/3 mL preloaded syringe: high molecular sodium hyaluronate.

**Dose:** Intra-articular (20 mg small joints/50 mg large joints). Repeat doses at 7-10-day intervals for 3-4 treatments.

Intravenous 40 mg – single injection.

### 13.4.2.1 Notes:

- Intra-articular route – Ensure aseptic injection. Transient swelling may be produced. No more than two joints to be treated at any one time. Horse should receive 3 days' stable rest and then controlled exercise for 7-10 days after injection. Intravenous route – some reviews support the systemic route of administration, others dispute it.
- Useful (but expensive) as anterior chamber dilating agent in eye surgery.

### 13.4.3 Methylprednisolone acetate

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-inflammatory, inhibits the production of cartilage matrix, high doses have been associated with articular cartilage disruption. Treatment of lameness due to degenerative (aseptic/closed) joint disease.

**Presentation:** Intra-articular – 40 mg/mL in 5 mL single-dose ampoules.

252

**Dose:** 40-120 mg per joint. This can be repeated every 3-4 months. Do not exceed a total dose of 120 mg at any one time.

253

### 13.4.3.1 Note:

- Ensure aseptic injection.
- Risk of laminitis (theoretical).

### 13.4.4 Triamcinolone acetonamide

POM V

**Indications:** Anti-inflammatory, inhibits the production of cartilage matrix, high doses have been associated with articular cartilage disruption, lower doses have been shown to have beneficial effects on the articular cartilage. Treatment of lameness due to degenerative (aseptic/closed) joint disease.

**Presentation:** Intra-articular – 40 mg in 1 mL single-dose ampoules.

**Dose:** 20-40 mg per joint. Do not exceed a total dose of 40 mg at any one time.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.4.4.1

### Note:

- Ensure aseptic injection.
- Slight risk of laminitis.

13.4.5

### Tiludronate

POM V

This drug is still in its very early trial phases.

**Profile:** Disodium tiludronate is a bi-phosphonate with activity on bone metabolism; it is a regulator of bone remodelling. It reduces bone resorption without any detectable harmful effect on bone formation. It increases bone density.

It may have inhibitory effects on cartilage-destructive enzymes that degrade cartilage matrix. It may therefore be helpful in treating degenerative articular pathology.

**Indications:** Treatment of lameness associated with bone and cartilage reshaping and modelling associated with navicular disease. A possible future treatment for osteoarthritis of the tarsometatarsal and distal intertarsal joints.

**Presentation:** 50 mg dry substance per vial with 10 mL diluent supplied separately.

**Dose:** 0.1 mg/kg as an intravenous infusion over 30-60 minutes. May be repeated after 2 weeks.

### Potential side effects:

1. Hypocalcaemia (over rapid injection) with resulting cardiac dysrhythmia that responds to calcium infusions. Slow injection minimises this possibility.
2. Colic (usually respond to a single injection of an antispasmodic or mild analgesic).

253

13.4.5.1

### Notes:

- The drug modifies osteoblastic activity preventing resorption of bone and so prevents the decay of the navicular bone. Corrective farriery also necessary to limit the loads on the flexor structures of the foot.
- The drug is poorly absorbed from the gut.
- It should not be used in horses under 2 years of age.

254

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 13.5 (e) ANTIDOTES AND ANTITOXINS

#### 13.5.1 Adrenaline (epinephrine)

POM V

**Indications:** Treatment of shock and severe anaphylaxis due to insect bites or zootoxicosis.

**Presentation:** Injection 1 mg/mL (1:1000) solution. NOTE: Some solutions are 1: 10 000 so read the label carefully.

**Dose:** The doses below provide a preliminary guide for cases of severe shock or collapse.

Table 3.18

Bodyweight	Dose (g)	Volume (mL) 1:1000 solution
<300 kg	1000	1.0
300–500 kg	2000	2.0
>500 kg	3000	3.0

**If intravenous dose is required the dose must be diluted in about 50 mL water for injection and must be administered slowly.**

##### 13.5.1.0.1 Notes:

- Intramuscular injection is the route of choice in the management of anaphylactic shock. It has a rapid onset of action and absorption from IM sites is far faster than subcutaneous sites. The IV route should be reserved for absolute emergencies when the circulation is known or suspected to be inadequate.

254

#### 13.5.2 Activated charcoal

255

POM V

**Indications:** Absorption of poisons and toxins in the gastrointestinal tract.

**Presentation:** Powder or oral suspensions.

**Dose:** 150-300 g orally pnr.

**Note:** Should not be used for treatment of corrosive poisonings.

#### 13.5.3 Dimercaprol (BAL)

POM V

**Indications:** Heavy metal intoxication (As, Pb, Hg, Sb).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Presentation:** Injection in oil.

**Dose:** 3-5 mg/kg q 6 h IM for 2 days then reducing daily doses over recovery period.

### 13.5.3.1 Note:

- May be used at low dosages simultaneously with CaEDTA.

### 13.5.4 Sodium calciumedetate (calcium edetate)

POM V

**Indications:** Lead intoxication.

**Presentation:** 200 mg/mL solution for injection in 5 mL glass ampoules.

**Dose:** 110 mg/kg q 24 h IV diluted 1:4 from concentrate 25%.

Repeated injections every 48-72 hours for three doses.

### 13.5.4.1 Notes:

- Lower doses may be indicated when other antidotes are given simultaneously. Highly irritant if injected extravascularly.

### 13.5.5 Sodium nitrite

No applicable category.

**Indications:** Cyanide poisoning.

**Presentation:** 30 mg/mL injection.

**Dose:** 10-20 mg/kg IV.

### 13.5.5.1 Notes:

Most effective when used with sodium thiosulphate.

255

### 13.5.6 Sodium thiosulphate (photographic fixer solution)

256

No applicable category.

**Indications:** Cyanide poisoning.

**Presentation:** 250 mg/mL injection.

**Dose:** 250-500 mg/kg IV, may be repeated.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

13.5.6.1

Notes:

- Seldom in time!

13.5.7

Snake bite antivenom

POM V

**Indications:** Proven or suspected zootoxicosis.

- **Antivenom:** Contact for advice –  
OXFORD: 01865-220  
LIVERPOOL: 0151-708 9393 968  
LONDON: 020 7771 5394
- Adrenaline (epinephrine) IM (see p. 100).
- Cortisone (dexamethasone IV).

256

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 13.6 (f) SUTURE MATERIALS

257

#### 13.6.1 1. Absorbable

Table 3.19

Nature	Material	Trade name	Character *	Gauges (metric)	T <sub>1/2</sub> (days)	Absorption (days)	Foreign body response	Handling	Colour
	Plain gut	Catgut	Natural	1–3.5	7	90	Severe	Fair to good	Beige
	Coated gut	Chromic catgut	Natural	1–6	14	90	Moderate to severe	Fair to good	Beige
	Polyglactin 910 *	Coated vicryl	Synthetic braided-coated	0.4–8	14	60–90	Slight	Good	Purple
Absorbable	Polyglactin 910 Vicryl Rapide		Synthetic braided-coated	1–4	5	42	Slight	Good	Purple/white
	Polyglycolic acid *	Dexon	Synthetic braided	0.7–5	10	120	Slight	Good	Green
	Polydioxanone *	PDS	Synthetic monofilament	0.4–5	35	182	Slight	Good	Blue
	Polyglyconate	Maxon	Synthetic braided-coated	0.4–8	21	180	Slight	Good	Green

\* Suture materials specifically suited to the horse.

257

13.6.2 2. Non-absorbable

258

Table 3.20

Nature	Material	Trade name	Character *	Gauges (metric)	T½ (days)	Absorption (days)	Foreign body response	Handling	Colour
Non-absorbable	Polyamide (nyl)	Supramid Ethicon	Synthetic sheathed	0.5–8	n/a	n/a	Moderate, if coating breaks	Good	White
	Polyester *	Ethibond	Synthetic braided-coated	0.5–7	n/a	n/a	Moderate	Good	Green
	Polyamide (nyl) *	Ethilon	Synthetic monofilament	0.1–5	n/a	n/a	Minimal	Fair	Blue
	Polypropylene *	Prolene	Synthetic monofilament	1–4	n/a	n/a	Minimal	Poor to fair	Blue
	Silk	Mersilk	Natural braided	0.2–5	365	>720	Moderate to severe	Excellent	Black
	Linen	Surgical linen	Natural braided	2–5	n/a	n/a	Severe	Excellent	White
	Stainless steel	Stainless steel wire	Synthetic	1.5–6	n/a	n/a	Almost inert	Poor	Metallic

\* Suture materials specifically suited to the horse.

258

Table 3.21 Suture material size conversion table

259

Metric size	USP size (synthetic materials)	Actual size
0.2	10/0	0.02
0.4	8/0	0.04
0.7	6/0	0.07
1.5	4/0	0.15
2.0	3/0	0.2
3.0	2/0	0.3
3.5	0	0.35
4.0	1	0.4
5.0	2	0.5
6.0	3	0.6
7.0	5	0.7
8.0	6	0.8

**Note:** The size of surgical gut (catgut) is slightly different (smaller) than the equivalent USP size for synthetic materials.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

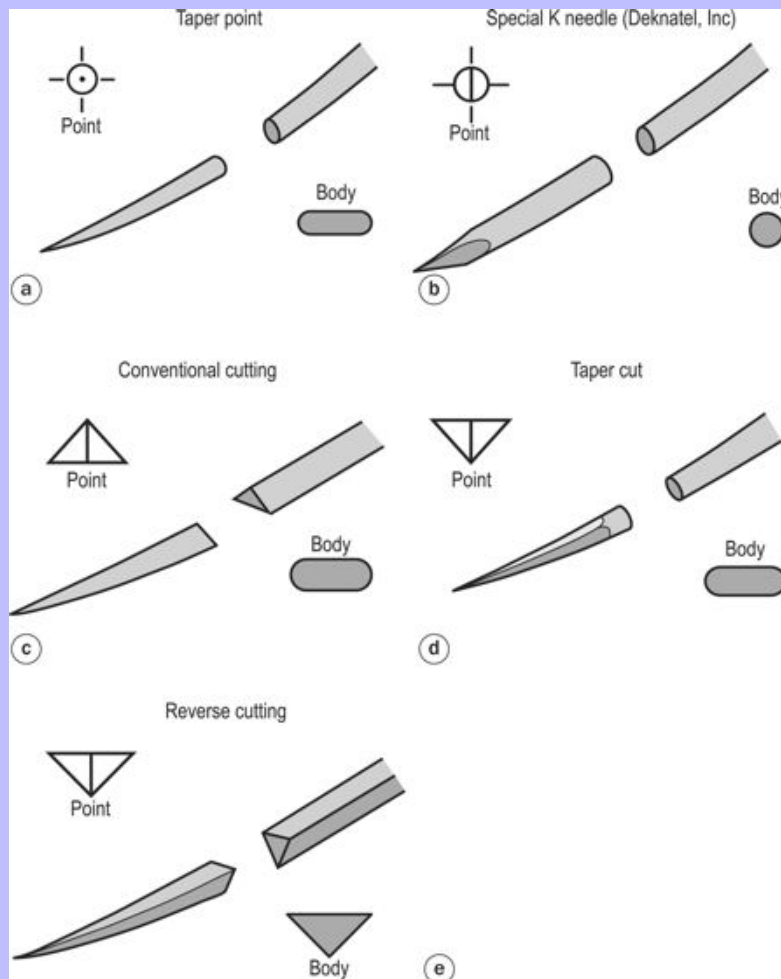
Table 3.22 Suture sizes and types for various tissues

Tissue	Suture size (metric)	Suture type
Skin	3–5	Non-absorbable monofilament
Sub cutis	3–3.5	Absorbable monofilament or multifilament
Fascia	3.5–5	Absorbable monofilament or multifilament
Muscle	3.0–3.5	Absorbable monofilament or multifilament
Hollow viscus	3–3.5	Absorbable monofilament or multifilament
Tendon	5	Non-absorbable monofilament
Vessel (ligatures)	3–3.5	Absorbable multifilament
Vessel (sutures)	0.7–1.5	Non-absorbable monofilament
Nerve	0.4–0.7	Non-absorbable monofilament

259

260

Fig. 3.2 Various needle types commonly used for veterinary surgery. Showing taper point, special K needle (Deknatel Inc), conventional cutting, taper cutting and reverse cutting needles (top to bottom).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 13.6.3 Size and shape of needle

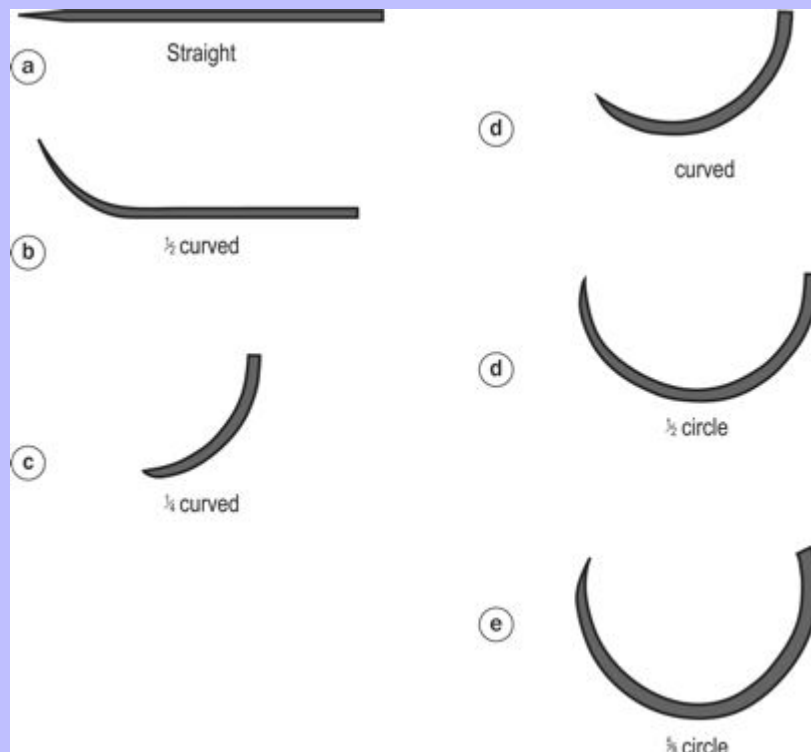
The ability of a needle to penetrate tissue is dependent on the shape of the point and body.

- **Taper-point** (round-bodied) needles have a sharp point and cylindrical body and are used on non-fibrous tissues such as abdominal viscera.
- **Cutting** needles are used to penetrate dense tissues such as fascia and skin. They may be of the **conventional (side) cutting** or **reverse cutting** type, where the cutting edge is located on the convex side of the needle. The **taper-cut** needle combines the reverse cutting point with a round shaft that is useful in delicate fibrous tissue.

260

261

Fig. 3.3 The common needle shapes used in equine surgery. Each can have the various types of point (see above). (a) Straight, (b)  $\frac{1}{2}$  curved, (c)  $\frac{1}{4}$  circle, (d)  $\frac{3}{8}$  circle, (e)  $\frac{1}{2}$  circle, (f)  $\frac{5}{8}$  circle.



Needles are available in various shapes: **straight**, **half-curved**, or with a **variable curvature**. Wound depth, size, and accessibility to suturing are the factors considered when choosing needle shape.

Most modern suture materials have a swaged on needle (atraumatic). This means that the suture is fastened inside the shaft of the needle – the needle has no ‘eye’. This usually requires that the full range of suture materials with needles of appropriate types are held ready.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Dispenser suture materials from a larger pack require eyed needles.
- Sterility is not always maintained unless the dispenser is carefully treated.

### 13.6.4 Cytotoxic and anticancer drugs

The use of cytotoxic drugs in equine practice is not widespread. The reasons for this include:

1. The overall cost of the drugs given the size of the patient.
2. The logistics of administration (often require specialist hospitalisation facilities). 261
3. The widespread secondary/concurrent effects on other organs/structures. 262
4. The poor results that are achievable overall, regardless of the cost and logistic implications.
5. The late presentation of cases (such that the disease is beyond treatment from the point of diagnosis).

Effective cancer therapy is for all practical purposes confined to skin and other superficial/accessible tumours. Although generalised neoplastic diseases, such as lymphoma/lymphosarcoma and myeloma, have been treated with systemic chemotherapy the results have largely been very poor. Temporary remission can be achieved in some cases but cures are very rare. Topical therapy of cutaneous neoplasia is much more practical but melanoma and lymphoma/lymphosarcoma are generally not amenable to therapy. Individual troublesome superficial lesions may be removable surgically.

Reports of effective systemic chemotherapy have been made using a combined 'C-A-P' protocol comprising loading doses of **cytosine arabinoside** (at average dose of 1-2 g total dose subcutaneous or intramuscular once every 1-2 weeks), **cyclophosphamide** (total dose of 1 g IV every 2 weeks, alternating with cytosine arabinoside) and **prednisolone** (1 mg/kg per os every other day). Vincristine (2.5 mg IV) can be added if the cytosine arabinoside is not resulting in remission. Maintenance doses up to 20-30% higher can usually be used without undue side effects. Once remission is achieved a maintenance protocol is used in which the inter-treatment interval is increased by one week (except that the prednisolone is maintained every other day throughout). The expected remission periods vary from 6-12 months.

Realistically however, the most practical course is simply to use corticosteroids (either prednisolone or dexamethasone). These drugs have the advantages of being relatively cheap, safe and also suppress the common secondary effects of immune-mediated thrombocytopaenia and anaemia.

#### 13.6.4.1 Notes:

- Side effects include gastrointestinal derangements (diarrhoea, inappetence and gastric ulceration) and some bone marrow suppression (as detected by routine haematology).
- It is strongly advised to contact a specialist centre before embarking upon any chemotherapy. Even topical drugs may have serious side effects and are often potentially dangerous for the persons handling them also.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Many of the drugs outlined in [Table 3.23](#) have not been described in any numbers in equine oncology. Currently it is probably best to consult with specialist oncologists for the latest information on their use and recent developments.

262

Table 3.23

263

Drug category	Drugs				Tumour types
	Name	Dose (/m <sup>2</sup> )	Freq	Route	
Alkylating agents	Carboplatin				
	Chlorambucil	20 mg			
	Cisplatin	1 mg/mL of tumour		Intralesional	Sarcoid
					Squamous cell carcinoma
	Cyclophosphamide	200 mg		IV	Lymphosarcoma
	Lomustine				
	Melaphan				
Antibiotics with antineoplastic effects	Dactinomycin	0.5–0.75 mg	3 weeks	IV	
	Bleomycin				
	Doxorubicin	20–30 mg	2–3 weeks	IV	
	Mitozantrone (mitoxantrone)				
Plant-derived alkaloids	Vinblastine				Lymphosarcoma/lymphoma
	Vincristine	0.5 mg	Weekly	PO	Plasma cell myeloma
Corticosteroids	Dexamethasone	0.1–0.3 mg/kg	48 h		Lymphosarcoma
	Prednisolone	1–3 mg/kg	48 h		Mastocytoma
Antimetabolites	Cytocine arabinoside				
	L-asparaginase	10 000–40 000 iu			
	5-Fluorouracil			Topical cream	Sarcoid
	Thiouracil			(ophthalmic drops)	Squamous cell carcinoma
	Methotrexate				Basal cell carcinoma
Others	Taxol				
	Asparaginase				
	Heavy metals (Hg/As/Sb)	NA	Various	Topical	Sarcoid
	Homeopathic/natural			Topical	Sarcoid

263

264

264

Table 3.24 Drugs contraindicated in the horse

265

Drug	Effects/comments
Amitraz	Colic (due to intestinal stasis) Severe CNS effects Shock
Amoxycillin (amoxicillin)	Severe local reactions Specific IV form may be safe
Cortisone	(see Notes, p. 152) Laminitis (probably an overstated risk) Immunosuppression Exacerbation of corneal ulcers Catabolic effects in horses with weight loss problems
Triamcinolone	Laminitis Immunosuppression Exacerbation of corneal ulcers
Lincomycin	Diarrhoea Colitis Laminitis Shock
Tilcomycin	Severe diarrhoea
Monensin	Severe myocardial degeneration/necrosis
Trimethoprim-sulphur with detomidine	Serious cardiac arrhythmia – risk low but present
Tylosin	Severe diarrhoea if administered by any route (often fatal) Severe local reactions if administered IM
Vancomycin	Theoretically useful in horses but there are NO conditions where this drug should be used in equine practice It is specifically reserved for human use
Enrofloxacin	Severe cartilage defects in young growing horses

265

## 13.6.4.2 Notes:

266

### 13.6.4.2.1 Oxytetracycline

- Much debate about its safety – many veterinary surgeons use it routinely without problems.
- Fungal overgrowth diarrhoea in adult horses (risk low but probably present).
- Can be used safely in foals <3 months age but may cause significant tendon laxity (sometimes used for this purpose). However, the high doses used in this treatment have sometimes caused severe renal failure.
- Long-acting forms cause serious local reactions.

## 13.7 SUSPECTED ADVERSE REACTIONS TO DRUGS USED IN THE HORSE

A report should be made in every case if an adverse reaction is suspected during or after the use of any drug. An official report form is available from the Veterinary Medicines Directorate (VMD) (address below).

- The batch numbers and expiry dates MUST be recorded.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- You should record the circumstances of the problem in detail.
- It is sometimes useful to inform the manufacturer also.

The report should be sent to:

The Veterinary Medicines Directorate

Department of the Environment Food and Rural Affairs

Freepost KT 4503

Woodham Lane

New Haw

Addlestone

Surrey KT15 3BR

Tel: 01932-336911 ext: 3040

Fax: 01932-336618

### 14 Section 1 Bodyweight and surface area estimation

#### 14.1 BODYWEIGHT ESTIMATION

Estimation of bodyweight is very important for accurate calculation of drugs, particularly when the LD<sub>50</sub> is low!

Formula for estimation of body weight:

$$\text{Weight (kg)} = \frac{\text{Length (cm)} \times \text{Girth (cm)}^2}{12000}$$

$$\text{Weight (lb)} = \frac{\text{Length (in)} \times \text{Girth (in)}^2}{300}$$

where Length = point of shoulder to point of buttock and Girth = thoracic girth behind point of elbow.

**Note:** Where a calculator is available a more accurate weight can be obtained from the following formula:

$$\text{Weight (kg)} = \frac{\text{Length (cm)}^{0.97} \times \text{Girth (cm)}^{2.78}}{3011}$$

where: Length = point of elbow to point of buttock and Girth = umbilical girth. (Jones RS et al. Veterinary Record, 1990.)

#### 14.2 SURFACE AREA ESTIMATION

The surface area of an animal is an important (but underused) parameter that is most often used in respect of the use of drugs. Ideally, patients, should be dosed according to the surface area expressed in square metres. The value of surface area is that it is a more reliable value than bodyweight that does not vary with changes in body weight. Although this measurement is only really valuable in some circumstances, little is known about the dose rate of drugs for horses. Nevertheless this method allows reasonable comparison with other animals.

The surface area of the horse can be calculated with a reasonable degree of accuracy using the formula:

$$\text{Surface area (square metres/m}^2\text{)} = 2 \times H^2$$

where H = height at the withers in metres (measured accurately if possible).

#### For example:

A horse measuring 1.6 metres (160 cm/16 hh) has a surface area of 5.12 m<sup>2</sup>. If this horse weighed 500 kg, the dose of detomidine for this horse results in a conventional dose of 20 µg/kg would be 20 × 500 µg, i.e. 10 mg.

From a dose of 2 mg/m<sup>2</sup> the dose would be calculated as: 5.12 × 2 mg, i.e. 10.24 mg. In some cases the weight is the critical measurement but in others, especially toxic and cytotoxic and antimetabolic drugs used for chemotherapy for cancer, the surface area is a much better measure.

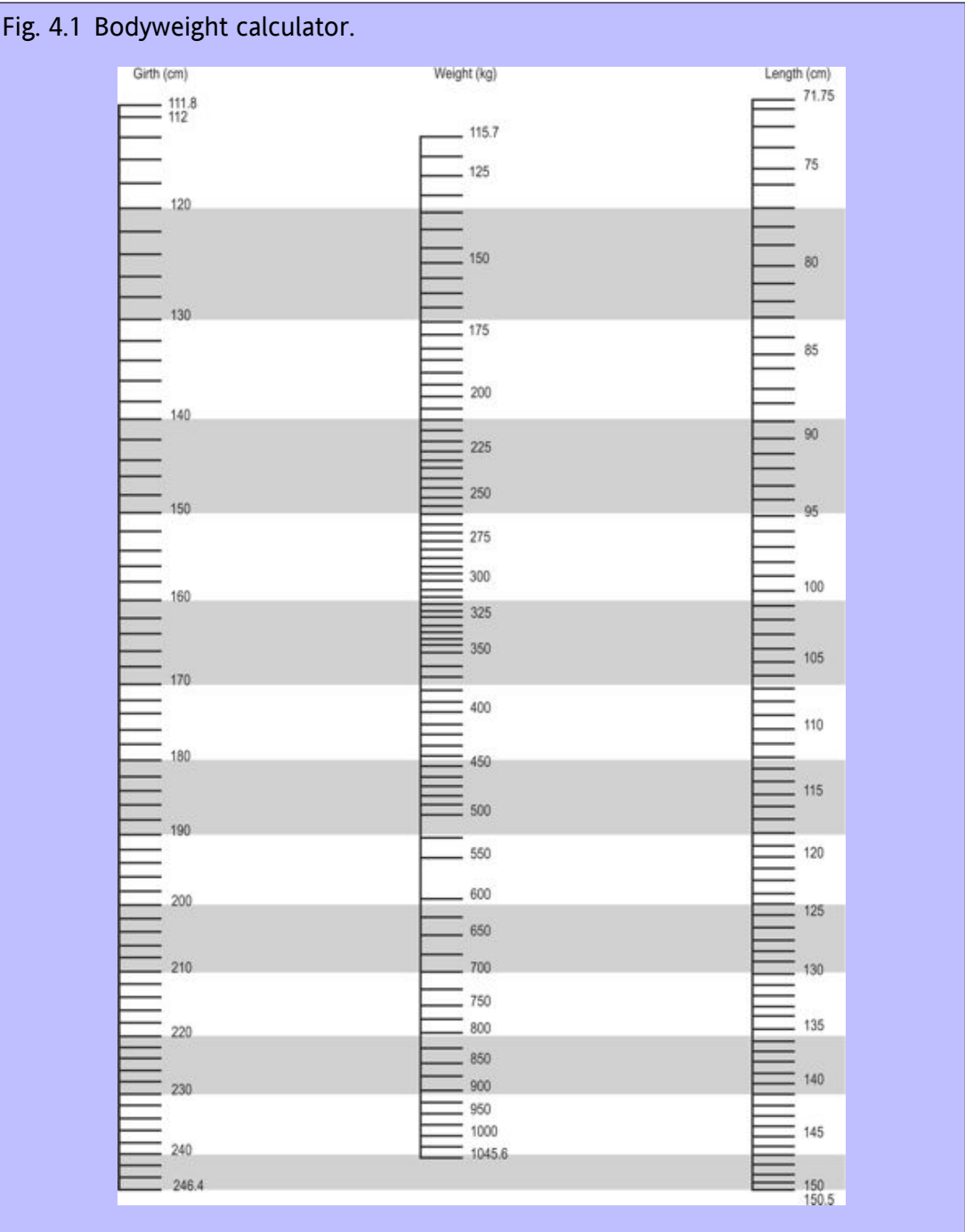
Alternative calculation for horses from Doyle PS (1998) Current techniques in equine surgery and lameness, 2nd edn. NA White, JN Moore, eds. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, pp. 93-97:

Body surface area (m<sup>2</sup>) =  $\frac{\text{Bodyweight (g}^{2/3}) \times 10.5}{10^4}$

where g = girth in cm.

270

271



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

273

### 15 Section 2 Imperial—metric conversion

#### 15.1 CONVERSION FACTORS FOR VETERINARIANS

##### 15.1.1 Temperature

Table 4.1 Temperature conversion

Temperature	
Celsius (°C) °C = 5/9 (°F) – 32	Fahrenheit (°F) °F = 9/5 (°C) + 32
–273.15	–459.67
–40	–40
–17.78	0
<b>0</b>	<b>32</b>
10	50
20	68
30	86
35	95
<b>36.0</b>	<b>96.8</b>
<b>36.5</b>	<b>97.7</b>
<b>37.0</b>	<b>98.6</b>
<b>37.5</b>	<b>99.5</b>
<b>38.0</b>	<b>100.4</b>
<b>38.5</b>	<b>101.3</b>
<b>39.0</b>	<b>102.2</b>
<b>39.5</b>	<b>103.1</b>
<b>40.0</b>	<b>104.0</b>
<b>40.5</b>	<b>104.9</b>
<b>41.0</b>	<b>105.8</b>
<b>41.5</b>	<b>106.7</b>
<b>42.0</b>	<b>107.6</b>
<b>42.5</b>	<b>108.5</b>
<b>43.0</b>	<b>109.4</b>
<b>43.5</b>	<b>110.3</b>
<b>44.0</b>	<b>111.2</b>
<b>44.5</b>	<b>112.1</b>
<b>45.0</b>	<b>113.0</b>
<b>45.5</b>	<b>113.9</b>
<b>46.0</b>	<b>114.8</b>
50	122
60	140
70	158
80	176
90	194
<b>100</b>	<b>212</b>
150	302
200	392
300	572
400	752
500	932

273

274

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

600	1112
700	1292
800	1472
900	1652
1000	1832

274

### 15.1.2 Mass (weight)

275

1 kg = 2.204 lb (pounds)

1 ounce (oz, avoirdupois) = 28.3 g (grams)

1 ounce (oz, troy) = 31.1 g (grams)

1 lb = 16 oz (ounces)

454 g (grams)

1 stone = 14 lb (pounds)

6.35 kg

1 hundredweight (cwt) = 112 lb (pounds)

8 stones

50.8 kg

1 ton (imperial or UK) = 2240 lb (pounds)

160 stones

20 hundredweight (cwt)

1016 kg

1 ton (short ton or US) = 2000 lb (pounds)

907 kg

1 tonne (metric) = 2204 lb (pounds)

### 15.1.3 Length

1 inch (1") = 25.4 mm

1 foot (1') = 12 inches (")

304.8 mm

1 yard (yd) = 3 feet (')

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

36 inches (")

914.4 mm

1 mile = 5280 feet (')

1760 yards (yd)

1609 metres

### 15.1.4 Area

1 square inch (sq in) (sq.") = 645 sq mm

6.45 sq. cm

1 square foot (sq ft) = 929 sq cm

0.0929 sq m

1 hectare (ha) = 2.47 acres

1 acre = 0.4047 hectares (ha)

### 15.1.5 Volume

1 imperial fluid ounce (fl oz) = 28.41 mL

1 imperial pint = 20 fluid ounces (fl oz)

0.568 litres

1 imperial quart = 1.137 litres

1 imperial (UK) gallon = 160 fluid ounces (fl oz) = 4.546 L

8 pints

4 quarts

275

1 US fluid ounce (US fl oz) = 29.6 mL

276

1 US pint = 16 US fluid ounces (US fl oz) = 0.473 litres

1 US quart = 0.946 litres

1 US gallon = 128 US fluid ounces (US fl oz) = 3.785 litres

8 US pints

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

4 US quarts

### 15.1.6 Pressure

Atmospheric pressure = 101325 Pascals (Pa)

1013 hectopascals (hPa)

1013 millibars (mb)

760 mmHg

14.7 psi (lb/sq")

1 pound per square inch (psi) (lb/sq") = 6895 Pascals (Pa) = 0.0704 kg/sq cm

6.895 kilopascals (kPa)

0.0689 bar

Table 4.2 Pressure conversion

Pressure			
Pounds/square inch (psi) (lb/sq")	kilopascals (kPa)	Bar (bar)	kg/sq cm
0	0	0	0
10	69	0.69	0.70
20	138	1.38	1.41
30	207	2.07	2.11
40	276	2.76	2.81
50	345	3.45	3.52
60	414	4.14	4.22
70	483	4.83	4.93
80	552	5.52	5.63
90	621	6.21	6.33
100	690	6.90	7.04

276

Table 4.3 Molecular weights

Compound	Molecular weight	Equivalent weight
Sodium chloride	58	58
Sodium bicarbonate	84	84
Sodium acetate (anhydrous)	82	82
Sodium acetate (trihydrate)	136	136
Sodium lactate	112	112
Potassium chloride	75	75
Calcium gluconate	430	215
Calcium lactate (anhydrous)	218	114
Calcium chloride	111	56.5
Magnesium sulphate (5H <sub>2</sub> O)	246	123
Molecular weights are important in preparation of parenteral fluid solutions. 1 milliequivalent is 0.001 of the equivalent weight in one litre of water.		



### <sup>16</sup>Section 3 SI—old unit conversion factors

279

- There is no real justification for the use of Imperial units. The only reason these conversions are included here is in the use of older/outdated publications when conversion to SI units may be required to compare values.
- SI units are compulsory in scientific publications. They really are better/easier!
- The SI unit of temperature is degrees Celsius.

279

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 4.4 Conversion factors (conventional and SI units)

Component	Conventional unit	Conversion factor	SI unit
Acetoacetic acid	mg/dL	0.098	mmol/L
Acetone	mg/dL	0.172	mmol/L
Acid phosphatase	units/L	1.0	U/L
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	units/L	1.0	U/L
Albumin	g/dL	10	g/L
Alcohol dehydrogenase	units/L	1.0	U/L
Aldolase	units/L	1.0	U/L
Aldosterone	ng/dL	0.0277	nmol/L
Alkaline phosphatase	units/L	1.0	U/L
Aminobutyric acid	mg/dL	97	μmol/L
Ammonia (as NH <sub>3</sub> )	μg/dL	0.587	μmol/L
Amylase	units/L	1.0	U/L
Androstenedione	ng/dL	0.0349	nmol/L
Angiotensin I	pg/mL	0.772	pmol/L
Angiotensin II	pg/mL	0.957	pmol/L
Anion gap	mEq/L	1.0	mmol/L
Antidiuretic hormone	pg/mL	0.923	pmol/L
Antithrombin III	mg/dL	10	mg/L
Arginine	mg/dL	57.4	μmol/L
Asparagine	mg/dL	75.7	μmol/L
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)	units/L	1.0	U/L
Bicarbonate	mEq/L	1.0	mmol/L
Bilirubin	mg/dL	17.1	μmol/L
Blood gases (arterial) PaCO <sub>2</sub>	mmHg	1.0	mmHg
pH	pH units	1.0	pH units
PaO <sub>2</sub>	mmHg	1.0	mmHg
C1 esterase inhibitor	mg/dL	10	mg/L
C3 complement	mg/dL	0.01	g/L
C4 complement	mg/dL	0.01	g/L
Calcitonin	pg/mL	1.0	ng/L
Calcium	mg/dL	0.25	mmol/L
Carbon dioxide	mEq/L	1.0	mmol/L
Carboxyhaemoglobin	% of haemoglobin saturation	0.01	Proportion of haemoglobin saturation
Carotene	μg/dL	0.0186	μmol/L
Ceruloplasmin	mg/dL	10	mg/L
Chloride	mEq/L	1.0	mmol/L
Cholesterol	mg/dL	0.0259	mmol/L
Citrate	mg/dL	52.05	μmol/L
Copper	μg/dL	0.157	μmol/L
Corticotropin (ACTH)	pg/mL	0.22	pmol/L
Cortisol	μg/dL	27.59	nmol/L
Creatine kinase (CK)	units/L	1.0	U/L
Creatinine	mg/dL	88.4	μmol/L
Creatinine clearance	mL/min	0.0167	mL/s
Cyanide	mg/L	23.24	μmol/L
Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)	ng/mL	3.47	nmol/L
Epinephrine (adrenaline)	pg/mL	5.46	pmol/L
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate	mm/h	1.0	mm/h
Ethanol (ethyl alcohol)	mg/dL	0.217	mmol/L
Ferritin	ng/mL	2.247	pmol/L

280

280

281

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

alpha-Fetoprotein	ng/mL	1.0	µg/L	
Fibrinogen	mg/dL	0.0294	µmol/L	
Fluoride	µg/mL	52.6	µmol/L	
Folate	ng/mL	2.266	nmol/L	
Follicle-stimulating hormone	mIU/mL	1.0	IU/L	
Galactose	mg/dL	55.506	µmol/L	
Glucagon	pg/mL	1.0	ng/L	
Glucose	mg/dL	0.0555	mmol/L	
Glutamine	mg/dL	68.42	µmol/L	
gamma-Glutamyltransferase (GGT)	units/L	1.0	U/L	
Glycated haemoglobin (glycosylated haemoglobin A <sub>1c</sub> , A <sub>1c</sub> )	% of total haemoglobin	0.01	Proportion of total haemoglobin	
Haematocrit	%	0.01	Proportion of 1.0	
Haemoglobin (whole blood)	g/dL	10.0	g/L	
Mass concentration		0.6206	mmol/L	
Haptoglobin	mg/dL	0.10	µmol/L	
High-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C)	mg/dL	0.0259	mmol/L	281
Hydroxybutyric acid	mg/dL	96.05	µmol/L	282
Hydroxyproline	mg/dL	76.3	µmol/L	
Immunoglobulin A (IgA)	mg/dL	0.01	g/L	
Immunoglobulin D (IgD)	mg/dL	10	mg/L	
Immunoglobulin E (IgE)	mg/dL	10	mg/L	
Immunoglobulin G (IgG)	mg/dL	0.01	g/L	
Immunoglobulin M (IgM)	mg/dL	0.01	g/L	
Insulin	µIU/mL	6.945	pmol/L	
Iron, total	µg/dL	0.179	µmol/L	
Iron binding capacity, total	µg/dL	0.179	µmol/L	
Lactate (lactic acid)	mg/dL	0.111	mmol/L	
Lactate dehydrogenase	units/L	1	U/L	
Lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes (LD <sub>1</sub> –LD <sub>5</sub> )	%	0.01	Proportion of 1.0	
Lead	µg/dL	0.0483	µmol/L	
Leucine	mg/dL	76.237	µmol/L	
Lipase	units/L	1.0	U/L	
Lipids (total)	mg/dL	0.01	g/L	
Lipoprotein (a)	mg/dL	0.0357	µmol/L	
Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C)	mg/dL	0.0259	mmol/L	
Luteinising hormone (LH, leutropin)	IU/L	1.0	IU/L	
Magnesium	mg/dL	0.411	mmol/L	
Manganese	ng/mL	18.2	nmol/L	
Methaemoglobin	% of total haemoglobin	0.01	Proportion of total haemoglobin	
Methionine	mg/dL	67.02	µmol/L	282
Myoglobin	µg/L	0.0571	nmol/L	283
Norepinephrine	pg/mL	0.00591	nmol/L	
Oestradiol	pg/mL	3.671	pmol/L	
Oestrone	ng/dL	37	pmol/L	
Osmolality	mOsm/kg	1.0	mmol/kg	
Oxalate	mg/L	11.1	µmol/L	
Parathyroid hormone	pg/mL	1.0	ng/L	
Phosphorus	mg/dL	0.323	mmol/L	
Plasminogen	mg/dL%	0.113	µmol/L	
		0.01	Proportion of 1.0	
Plasminogen activator inhibitor	mIU/mL	1.0	IU/L	
Platelets (thrombocytes)	× 10 <sup>3</sup> /µL	1.0	× 10 <sup>9</sup> /L	
Potassium	mEq/L	1.0	mmol/L	
Progesterone	ng/mL	3.18	nmol/L	

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Prolactin	μg/L	43.478	pmol
Protein, total	g/dL	10.0	g/L
Prothrombin	g/L	13.889	μmol/L
Prothrombin time (protime, PT)	seconds	1.0	seconds (s)
Pyruvate	mg/dL	113.6	μmol/L
Red blood cell count	× 10 <sup>6</sup> /μL	1.0	× 10 <sup>12</sup> /L
Renin	pg/mL	0.0237	pmol/L
Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine)	ng/mL	0.00568	μmol/L
Sodium	mEq/L	1.0	mmol/L
Testosterone	ng/dL	0.0347	nmol/L
Thyroglobulin	ng/mL	1.0	μg/L
Thyrotropin (thyroid-stimulating hormone, TSH)	mIU/L	1.0	mIU/L
Thyroxine, free (T <sub>4</sub> )	ng/dL	12.87	pmol/L
Thyroxine, total (T <sub>4</sub> )	μg/dL	12.87	nmol/L
Transferrin	mg/dL	0.01	g/L
Triglycerides	mg/dL	0.0113	mmol/L
Triiodothyronine			
Free (T <sub>3</sub> )	pg/dL	0.0154	pmol/L
Resin uptake	%	0.01	Proportion of 1.0
Total (T <sub>3</sub> )	ng/dL	0.0154	nmol/L
Tryptophan	mg/dL	48.97	μmol/L
Tyrosine	mg/dL	55.19	μmol/L
Urea nitrogen	mg/dL	0.357	mmol/L
Vitamin A (retinol)	μg/dL	0.0349	μmol/L
Vitamin B <sub>6</sub> (pyridoxine)	ng/mL	4.046	nmol/L
Vitamin B <sub>12</sub> (cyanocobalamin)	pg/mL	0.738	pmol/L
Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)	mg/dL	56.78	μmol/L
Vitamin D			
1,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D	pg/mL	2.6	pmol/L
25-Hydroxyvitamin D	ng/mL	2.496	nmol/L
Vitamin E	mg/dL	23.22	μmol/L
Vitamin K	ng/mL	2.22	nmol/L
White blood cell count	× 10 <sup>3</sup> /μL	1.0	× 10 <sup>9</sup> /L
White blood cell differential count (number fraction)	%	0.01	Proportion of 1.0
Zinc	μg/dL	0.153	μmol/L

283

284

\* To convert BUN to urea multiply by 2.14.

### 17 Section 4 Restraint of horses

- Horses respond instinctively to stress and fear through fight/flight.
- Instinct ultimately overcomes the best training – don't be convinced otherwise.
- With their large size, rapid responses and agility, ALL horses are inherently dangerous.
- Always establish the degree of restraint essential to guarantee the safety of yourself, lay handlers and the animal before attempting potentially dangerous or painful procedures.
- Don't forget that injuries incurred to people or animals through avoidable inadequacies of restraint are YOUR liability.
- You must be able to JUSTIFY your selection of physical or chemical restraints on physiological and practical grounds.

#### 17.1 1. Approach

- Where possible avoid approaching the animal from immediately behind or in front.
- Don't sneak up on it! – talk as you approach to let it know you are there.
- An approach from the left side contacting the animal at the level of the shoulder is ideal.

#### 17.2 2. Securing

##### 17.2.1 Headcollar

- When required for restraint the headcollar should be fitted snugly (noseband approximately two fingers below the cranial edge of the masseters with two fingers 'give' between the noseband and nasal bone).
- Leather is preferred to nylon webbing – it will break as opposed to cut if the animal panics.
- The lead rope can be threaded through the noseband to provide increased control ([Fig. 4.2](#)). Avoid passing ropes through the mouth for this purpose.

##### 17.2.2 Rope halter

- Not ideal as these tighten and may injure the head of a resistant horse.
- Don't use if fashioned from synthetic rope.
- The lead rope passes through the rope 'eye' and under the nose when correctly fitted ([Fig. 4.3](#)).
- Rapidly fashioned from lead ropes when no other form of restraint is available ([Fig. 4.4](#)).

285

286

Fig. 4.2 Headcollar lead rope threaded over nose.

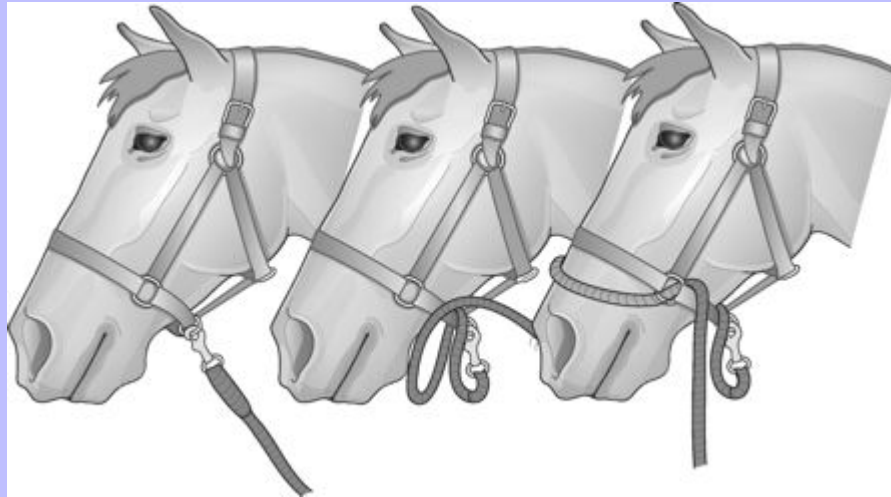


Fig. 4.3 Rope halter lead passes through eye and beneath jaw.

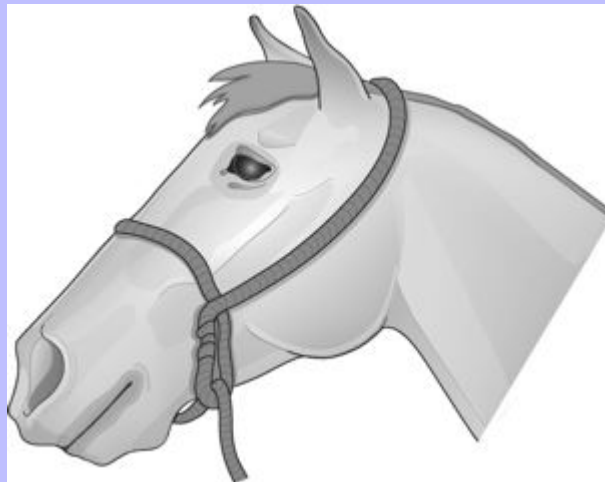


Fig. 4.4 Makeshift halter readily assembled.

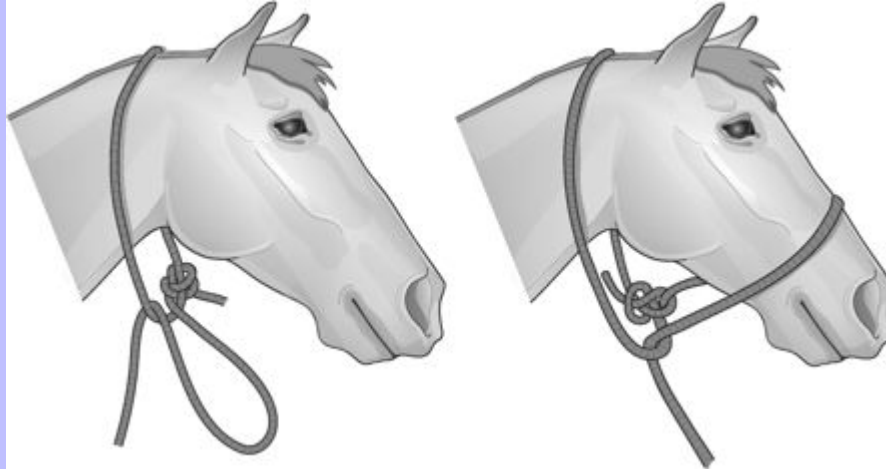


Fig. 4.5 Simple bridle with Chiffney bit.



286

### 17.2.3 Bridles

287

- Any headgear which positions a bit securely in the mouth.
- Pressure applied to the bit is focused on the mouth and the poll to give increased control.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Simple bridles consist of a single strap and are commonly used with a Chiffney bit ([Fig. 4.5](#)) to restrain 'difficult' animals or animals in 'difficult' situations e.g. loading into lorries or stocks. BEWARE! This bit is severe and can potentially fracture the mandible if excessive pressure is applied sharply. 287

- Where riding bridles are used, reins should be removed and a lead rope passed through the near ring, beneath the jaw and attached to the far ring.
- ALWAYS hold bridled horses – NEVER tie them by the bit to walls or gates!

**At best, these methods ensure control over the front end of the animal alone – a handler at the head cannot control the animal's hind quarters.**

### 17.3 3. Added security

#### 17.3.1 Twitches

- Time-honoured and effective.
- Correct application to the sensitive upper lip greatly increases control, especially where examination or treatments are liable to incur discomfort.
- Loop and pincer twitches are commonly encountered and readily applied single-handed. The handlers' wrist is passed through the loop twitch before securely grasping the animal's lip in the fingers of the same hand. The loop is manipulated over the hand and secured by twisting firmly until a secure grip is established ([Fig. 4.6](#)).
- Repeated flexing of the wrist 'works' the lip snare to enhance its distracting effect and offer further control. Twitches should be held firmly mid-shaft and angled downwards towards the horses' chest. NEVER secure the twitch shaft to the headcollar.
- Makeshift loop twitches are readily and successfully assembled ([Fig. 4.7](#)). Avoid the use of nylon rope or baler twine at all costs.
- Pincer twitches are more readily applied but are generally less secure and adapt less readily to animals of different body size ([Fig. 4.8](#)).

#### 17.3.2 Neck twitches

- By gripping and twisting a section of skin on the lateral aspect of the horse's neck a small degree of added control may be exerted.
- Particularly useful to aid intramuscular injection at this site.

#### 17.3.3 Ear twitches

- Not recommended. Twisting a firmly gripped ear base certainly distracts some animals but permanent damage can ensue.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 17.3.4 Raising a foreleg

- Allows the handler to help limit movement of the horses' hind quarters – but won't necessarily prevent kicking.
- When the leg is raised for an extended period a rope may be attached to a pastern hobble ([Fig. 4.9](#)) and released if the horse attempts to go down.

288

289

Fig. 4.6 Loop twitch positioned correctly on lip.

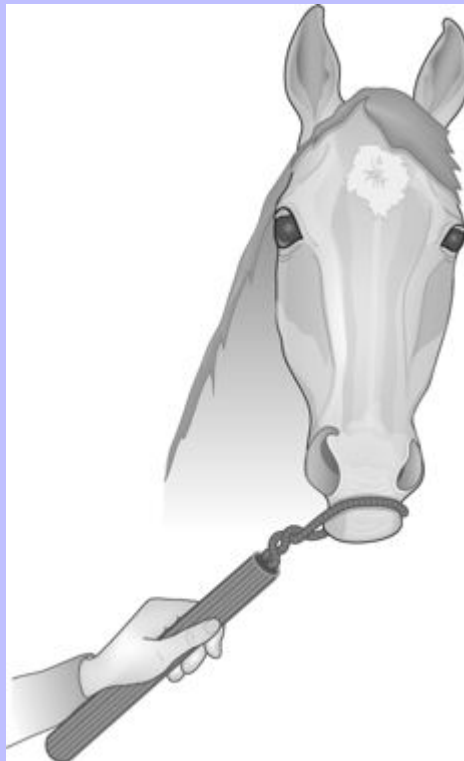
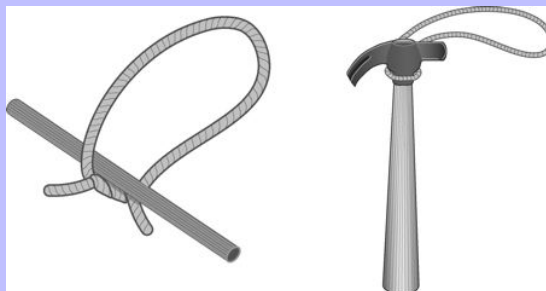


Fig. 4.7 Makeshift loop twitches.



289

Fig. 4.8 Bulldog or Pincer twitch.

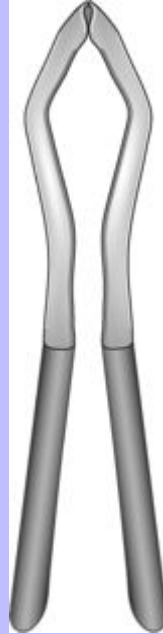
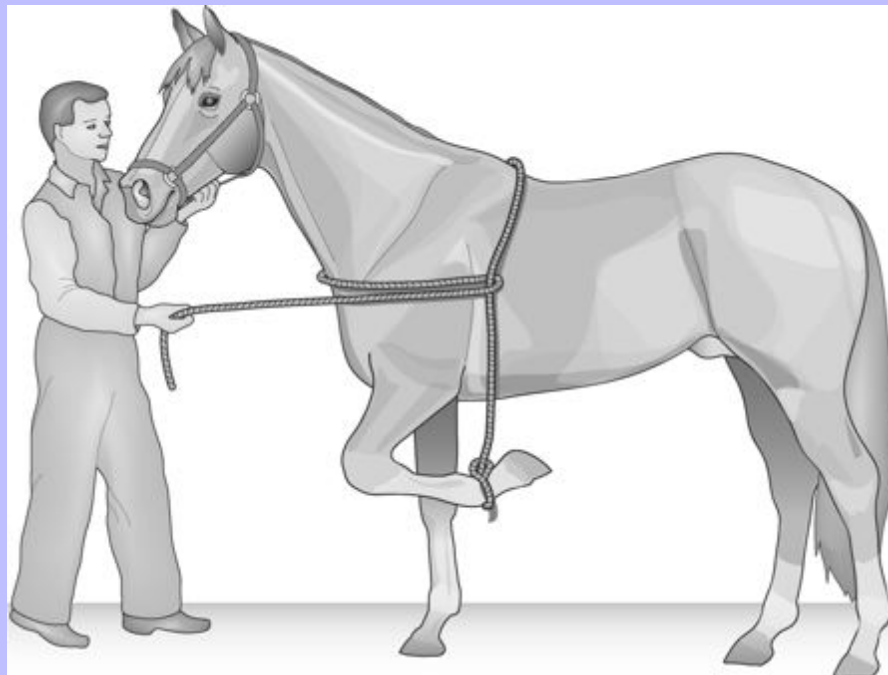


Fig. 4.9 Leg raised in roped pastern hobble.



### 17.4 4. Positioning

#### 17.4.1 Stocks

- Gold standard for animal restraint. When available – use them.
- Site to allow easy access and pad appropriately to minimise trauma.
- Stocks limit lateral and forward-back movement but permit easy access.
- Stocks should be 'collapsible', allowing rapid release if animals go down.

#### 17.4.2 Makeshift 'stocks'

- Careful positioning within the stable or yard can usefully limit animal movement against walls, corners and gates.
- Confinement in a trailer or lorry may provide the required constraint.

#### 17.4.3 Rectal examination

- While use of a stable door between the man and horse is often mooted for kick protection where stocks are unavailable, the consequences are prohibitive should the animal go down.
- Ensure that the animal is appropriately restrained (bridle, twitch, raised foreleg, sedation if required) and position yourself close against the side (not directly behind) of the animal's quarters to limit the force behind any connecting kick.
- Further control over movement of the quarters may be gained by positioning the horse against the wall on the same side as the arm you will use.
- If restraint is inadequate – DON'T DO IT!

### 17.5 5. Restraint of foals

#### 17.5.1 Young foals

- ALWAYS restrain the dam before attempting to catch her foal.
- Quietly drift the foal towards the corner of the box (the dam's quarters can be enlisted to help confine the foal). Place one arm around the foal's chest and a second around the gaskins ([Fig. 4.10](#)).
- Small foals can be lifted clear of the ground to increase relaxation.

#### 17.5.2 Older foals

- Application of a foal slip is enhanced by passing the lead rope around the gaskins.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Slip and rope can be secured by a single handler to give control of both head and hind quarters (Fig. 4.11).

### 17.6 6. Chemical restraint of horses, ponies and donkeys

- Sedation/tranquillisation are important adjuncts to physical restraint for many clinical and managerial procedures e.g. clipping and farriery.
- Appraise each situation at outset.
- Sedatives are more effective if administered before the onset of stress or excitement and when the animal is left in peace for the full effects to develop.
- If physical restraint alone is unlikely to be sufficient – consider the suitability of sedation upfront.
- Three key points to consider before sedation are:

1. **Physiological and health status**, e.g.  $\alpha_2$  adrenoreceptor agonists contraindicated last trimester gestation, acepromazine contraindicated in breeding animals or those with hypotensive conditions.

2. **Concurrent medication**, e.g. detomidine may cause fatal arrhythmias in conjunction with potentiated sulphonamides.

3. **Duration and depth of sedation**/tranquillisation required for the procedure.

Fig. 4.10 Restraint of a young foal. (Note: raising the tail may help but can also distress the foal and cause pain.)

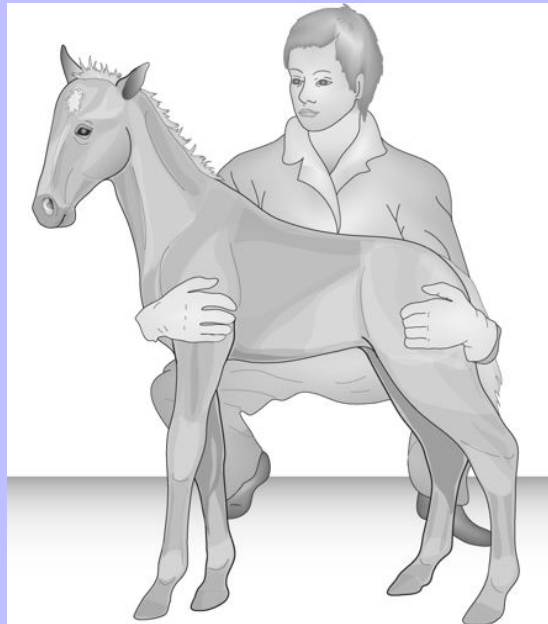
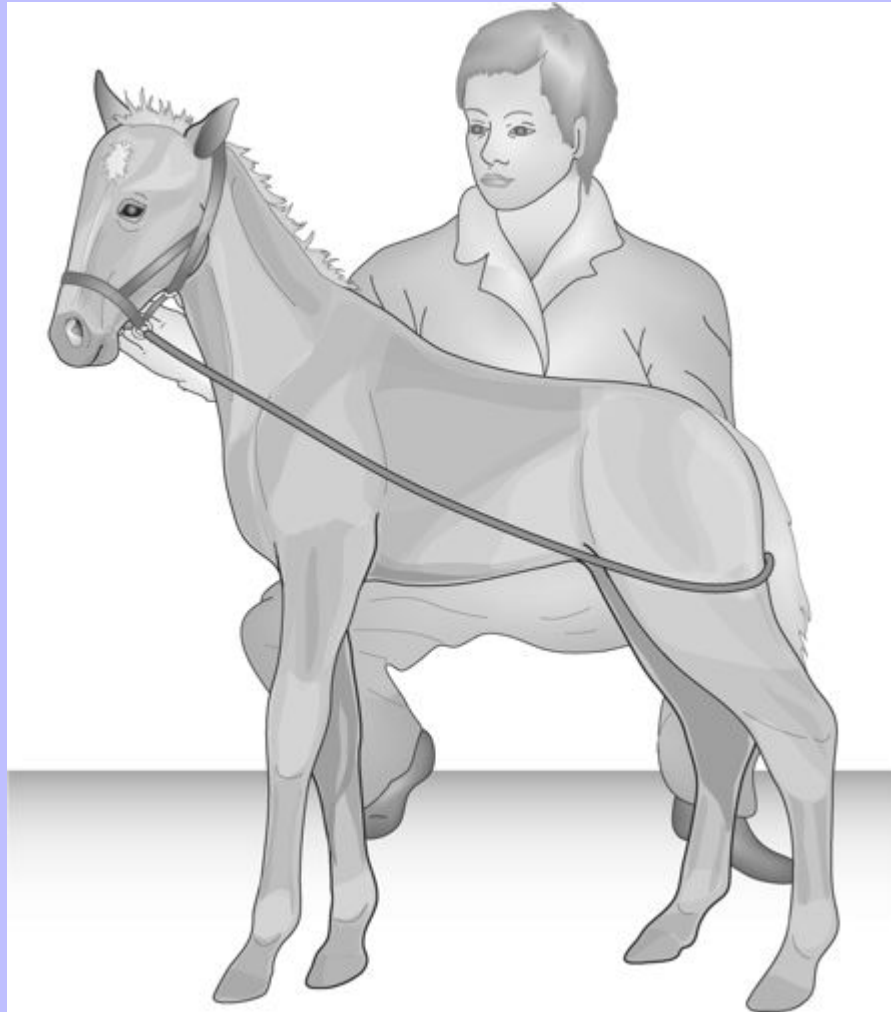


Fig. 4.11 Foal restraint with foal slip and gaskin rope.



293

Table 4.5 Summary of drugs and drug combinations commonly used for the restraint of horses

Drug	ACP	Xylazine	Detomidine	Romifidine
Route of administration	IV, IM, SC, PO	IV, IM	IV, IM	IV
Onset of sedation	Variable ~30 min	<3 min	<5 min	<5 min
Duration of sedation	Variable ~6–8 h	~20 min	~40 min	~60 min
Dose (IV) sedative alone	10–50 µg/kg	0.5–1.1 mg/kg	10–80 µg/kg	40–120 µg/kg
With butorphenol @ 25–50 g/kg (IV)	10–50 µg/kg	0.5 mg/kg	10 µg/kg	40 µg/kg
Sedation	Variable/unreliable	+++	++	+
Muscle relaxation	++	+++	++	+
Analgesia	–	++++	+++	+
Ataxia	Variable	+++	++	+
Common uses	Clipping	Immobility desirable, colic workup	Minor surgical procedures	Transport Farriery, pre-nerve block
Formulary page	?	?	?	?

- Large/heavy horses are relatively intolerant of  $\alpha_2$  adrenoreceptor agonists. Use low end of dose range.
- Oral administration of ACP (0.13–0.26 mg/kg as 25 mg tablets or paste) may aid restraint of intractable/‘un-catchable’ animals but the effect is slow in onset and unreliable.
- If physical restraint is insufficient for intravenous injection:

Detomidine	20 µg/kg	} Composite INTRAMUSCULAR injection	→ Leave for 30 min in quiet to obtain maximum effect
ACP	30 µg/kg		
Butorphenol	50 µg/kg		

## 17.7 7. Chemical restraint of foals

- Less than 4–6 weeks:

Tranquillisation with benzodiazepines (diazepam, 0.1–0.25 mg/kg, IV only) is generally satisfactory but recumbency is inevitable.

- Healthy foals when benzodiazepines are ineffective:

Detomidine	5–40 µg/kg, IV
Romifidine	20–70 µg/kg, IV

Butorphenol (50–200 µg/kg) can be added to enhance sedation/analgesia.

## 18 Section 5 Ageing

297

The ageing of horses from dentition alone is a very difficult (not to say hazardous) task! All **estimates** of age should be just that. Where practical and especially when documentation is required the veterinary surgeon **MUST** state in writing (with a signed/dated certificate) the basis for his/her estimate. This is particularly important for examinations on behalf of a purchaser and for insurance purposes. A form for ageing is available from the Veterinary Defence Society.

It is probably wrong to decline to comment on the age of the horse when performing these examinations because the prospective owner will expect some rational advice as to the likely age of the horse. If veterinary surgeons do not do this someone else will (usually based on nothing at all by way of education and training). There are important reasons for an owner wishing to have a guide as to the age of a horse including the commercial value (older horses tend to be less valuable), the use to which it is put (very young horses may need to be worked less severely while older horses have less available performance potential in some disciplines such as racing) and its insurability (many insurance companies do not provide insurance cover beyond a defined age). The *de facto* position at the present time is that veterinary surgeons should be able to provide an informed estimate with stated caveats. Whenever possible horses should be aged accurately at a very young age (preferably by establishing a date/year of birth before the animal is beyond the stage of accurate estimation). All such events should be accompanied by a detailed and correct full description of the animal. When examining the age of an animal with the help of documentation the veterinary surgeon should be particularly careful to correlate the identification documents with the animal first.

There is an increasing use of passport-type identification certificates and subcutaneous microchips coupled with freeze marking/branding. These will usually provide both the year of birth and definitive identification and so it is possible to avoid any need to age such an animal. The identification needs, of course, to be verified at the time of the examination. Under no circumstances should the veterinary surgeon be drawn into making a casual estimate, especially when led to do so by an unscrupulous owner/agent.

297

Table 4.6 Dental eruption times

298

Tooth	Milk/deciduous	Permanent
Central incisor	0–1 week	2½ years
Lateral incisor	2–4 weeks	3½ years
Corner incisor	7–9 months	4½ years
Canine/tush	n/a	3–4 years*
Premolar 2 (cheek tooth 1)	2–8 weeks	2½ years
Premolar 3 (cheek tooth 2)	2–8 weeks	3 years
Premolar 4 (cheek tooth 3)	2–8 weeks	4 years
<b>Molar 1 (Cheek Tooth 4)</b>	<b>n/a</b>	<b>1 year</b>
<b>Molar 2 (Cheek Tooth 5)</b>	<b>n/a</b>	<b>2 years</b>
<b>Molar 3 (Cheek Tooth 6)</b>	<b>n/a</b>	<b>3½ years</b>

\* Geldings and stallions – seldom present in mares.

- Remember that horses are aged in years from January 1st (northern hemisphere) or August 1st (southern hemisphere).
- DO NOT fall into the trap of making closer estimates than the year – even though the eruption times are reasonably accurate they can be very misleading.

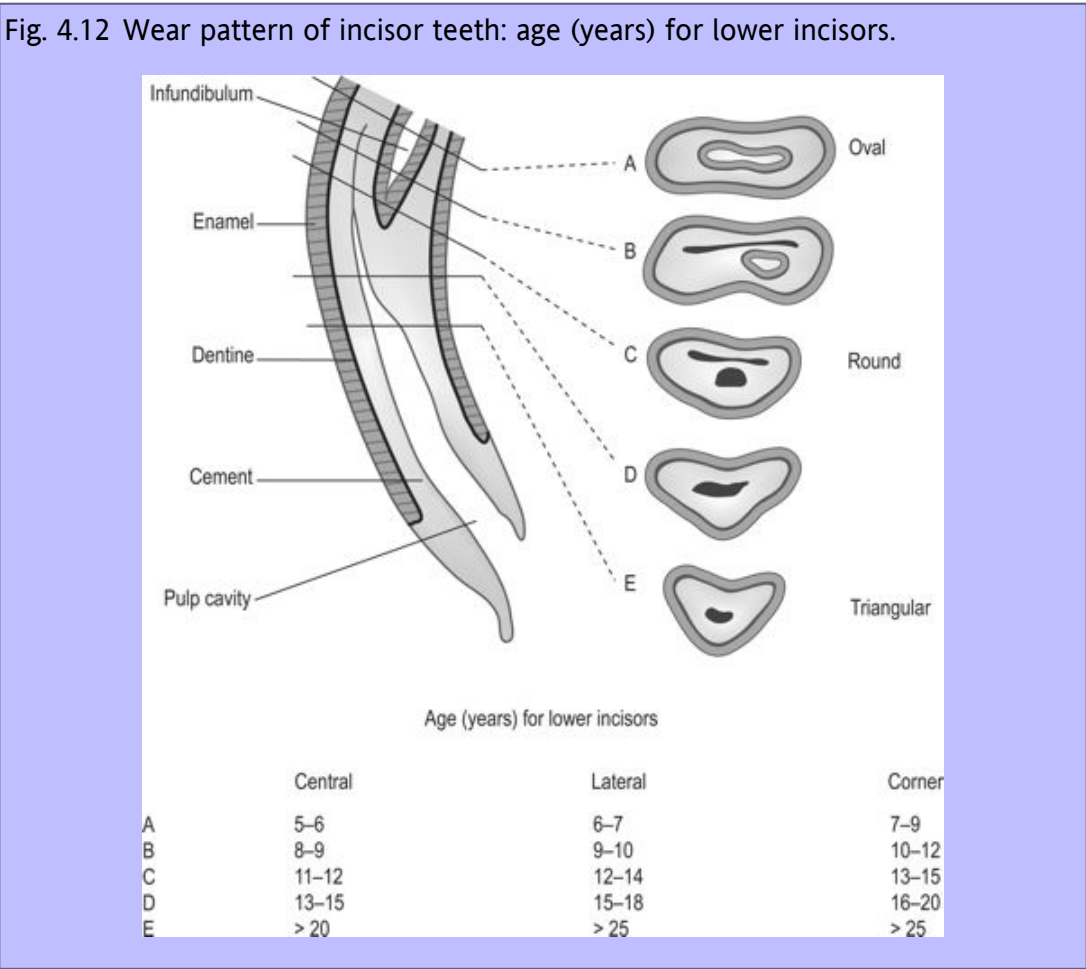
Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- A major source of error occurs between horses aged 2 years (with a full set of in-wear incisors) and a 5-7-year-old horse with a full set of permanent incisors in wear.

18.1 WEAR PATTERN OF INCISOR TEETH

After the incisor teeth erupt, they continue to grow and lengthen until each lower-jaw incisor meets its opposite number in the upper jaw, approximately 6 months after eruption. This is known as coming into wear. The incisors therefore come into wear at 3, 4 and 5 years of age. The wear pattern of the incisor teeth is very unpredictable but this, together with the occlusal incisor angle, provides the best opportunity of estimation of an approximate age. Some horses have shallow infundibuli and others deep. Some have prominent pulp cavities, which appear as a linear mark at the buccal margin of the tooth at an early age, while in others it is delayed. It is wise to use every available indicator before making an estimate of the age (**a range should always be given**).

The drawings below are designed to provide a rough guide to help the clinician establish the major features. Each age shown carries a range marker that corresponds to the most likely range of age for the given parameters/appearance. Remember that you should record your findings and the reasons for your estimate in a bound book as well as on the certificate.





## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Dental ageing forms are available from the Veterinary Defence Society. These have considerable advantages in that they provide an accurate record of the findings and an error of interpretation cannot then be viewed as any form of negligence. An example is shown in [Fig. 4.27](#).

**Occlusal angle:** The angle at the caudal aspect of the upper and lower central incisors. This is almost vertical (180 degrees) when recently erupted and progressively decreases with age, approaching 90 degrees at 20 years.

**Infundibulum or 'cup':** the cavity in the occlusal surface produced by the invagination of enamel. Later, as the deeper sections of the tooth are exposed to wear, the infundibulum gradually ceases to exist as a cavity and is represented by a circle of enamel, filled with cement, known as an enamel *spot* or *mark*. As the infundibulum disappears, the pulp cavity is exposed as a yellow-brown transverse mark in the dentin, known as a *dental star*.

299

300

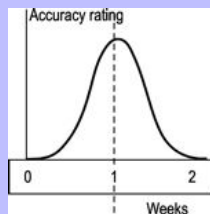
**Galvayne's groove:** Longitudinal depression running down the labial surface of the upper third incisors. It is often stained a dark colour by the cement it contains. It is traditionally believed to appear at 10 years of age, be half way down the tooth at 15 years, and reach the occlusal surface at 20 years. From 20 years of age the groove disappears at the gingival margin and gradually 'grows' out reaching the bottom at around 30 years, i.e. it is said to take 10 years to appear fully and 10 years to grow out. This is now considered an unreliable method of ageing horses but it does add to the overall interpretation and should always be considered in the overall assessment.

**Seven year hook:** When the upper and lower incisors come into wear, at 5 years, the dental tables of the upper teeth are longer than those of the lower teeth. The caudal parts of the upper teeth do not occlude with the lower teeth, and therefore are not worn away creating a hook. This is most obvious at 7 years and then gradually disappears. It reappears in a second cycle, when it is most obvious at about 13 years. It is now generally regarded as being an inaccurate indicator of age.

Fig. 4.13a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 1 week.



Fig. 4.13b Accuracy rating – 1 week.



300

Fig. 4.14a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 1 month.



Fig. 4.14b Accuracy rating – 1 month.



Fig. 4.15a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 1 year.



Fig. 4.15b Accuracy rating – 1 year.

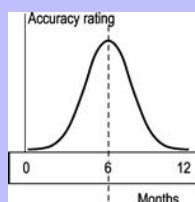


Fig. 4.16a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 3 years.

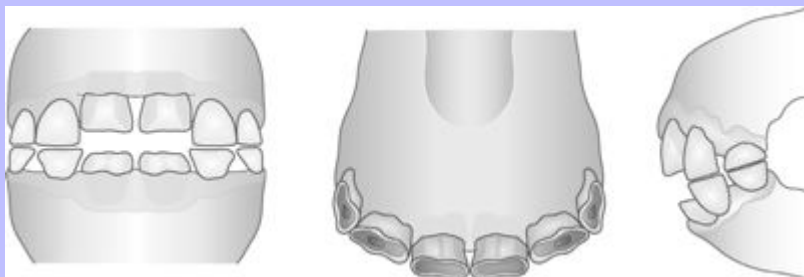


Fig. 4.16b Accuracy rating – 3 years.

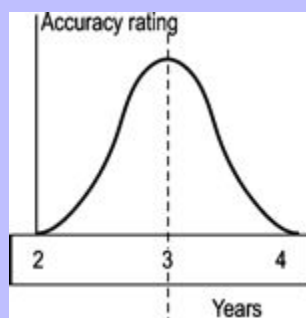


Fig. 4.17a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 4 years.



Fig. 4.17b Accuracy rating – 4 years.

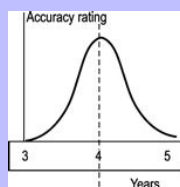


Fig. 4.18a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 5 years.



Fig. 4.18b Accuracy rating – 5 years.

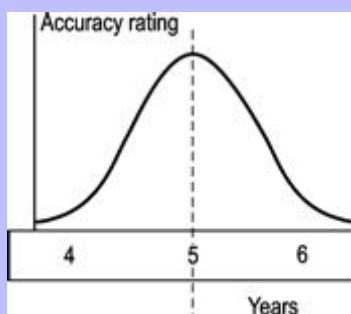


Fig. 4.19a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 6 years.

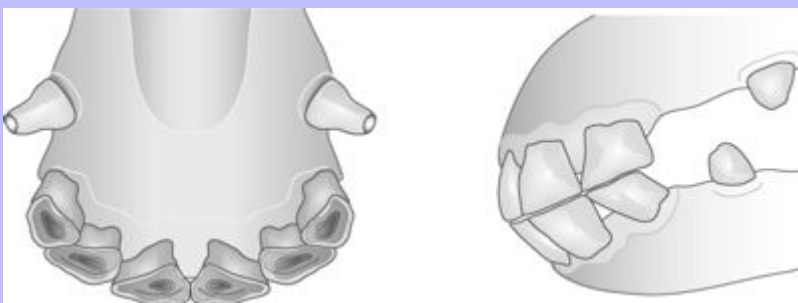
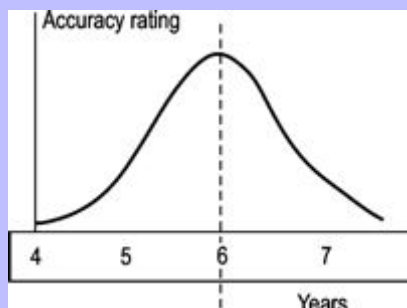
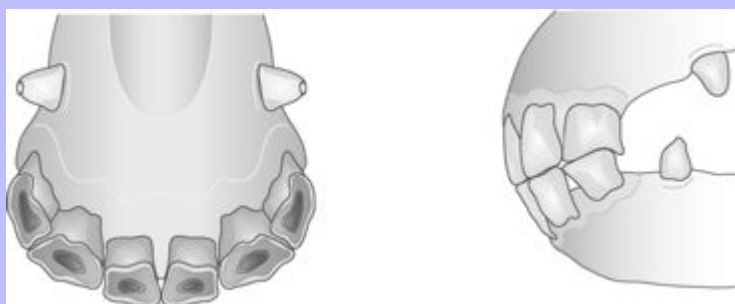


Fig. 4.19b Accuracy rating – 6 years.



303

Fig. 4.20a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 7 years.



304

Fig. 4.20b Accuracy rating – 7 years.

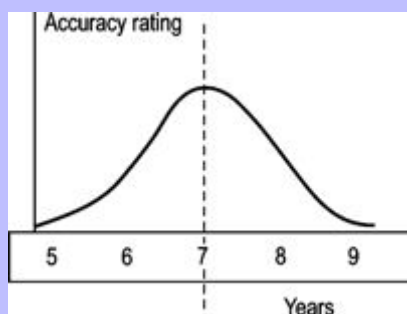


Fig. 4.21a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 8 years.

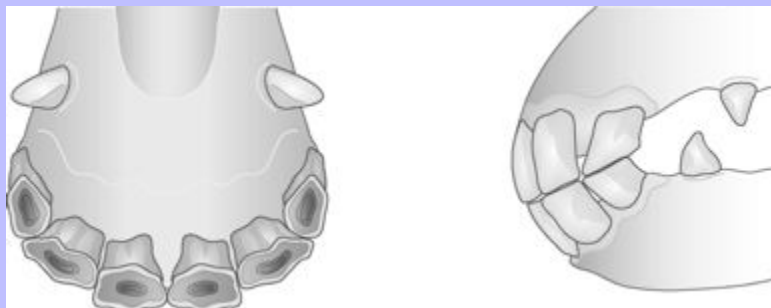
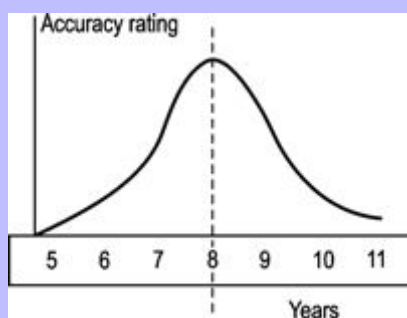
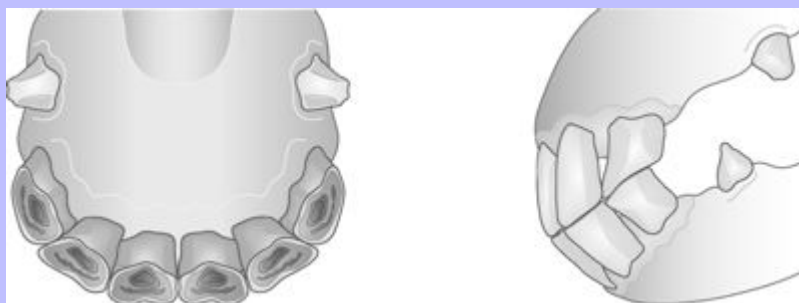


Fig. 4.21b Accuracy rating – 8 years.



304

Fig. 4.22a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 9 years.



305

Fig. 4.22b Accuracy rating – 9 years.

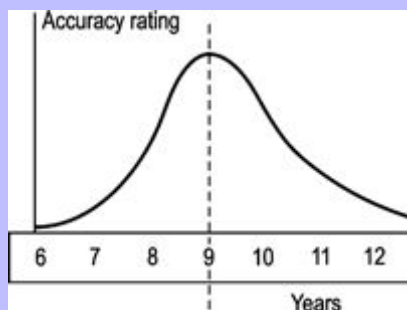


Fig. 4.23a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 10 years.

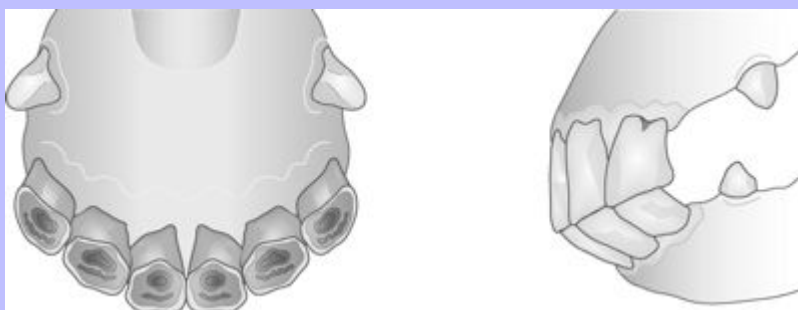


Fig. 4.23b Accuracy rating – 10 years.

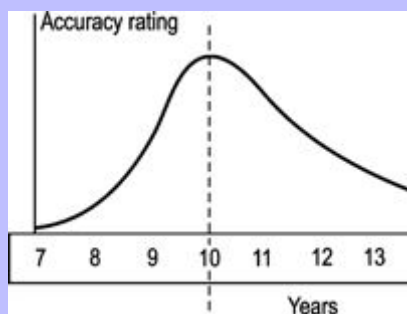


Fig. 4.24a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 13 years.

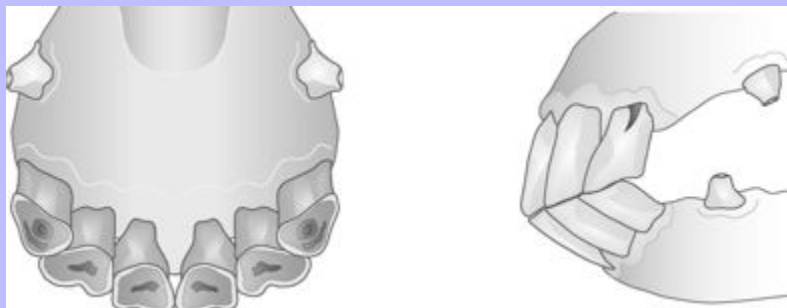


Fig. 4.24b Accuracy rating – 13 years.

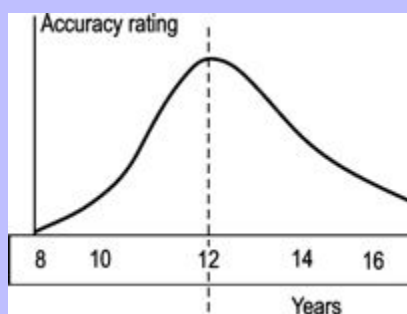


Fig. 4.25a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – 15 years.

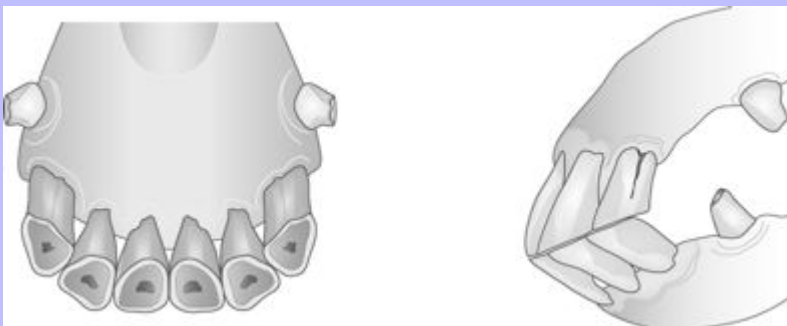
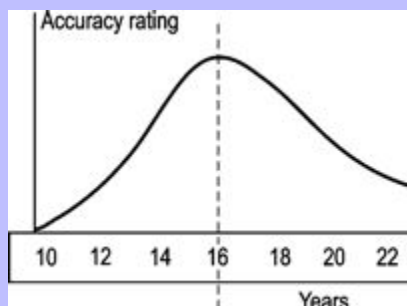


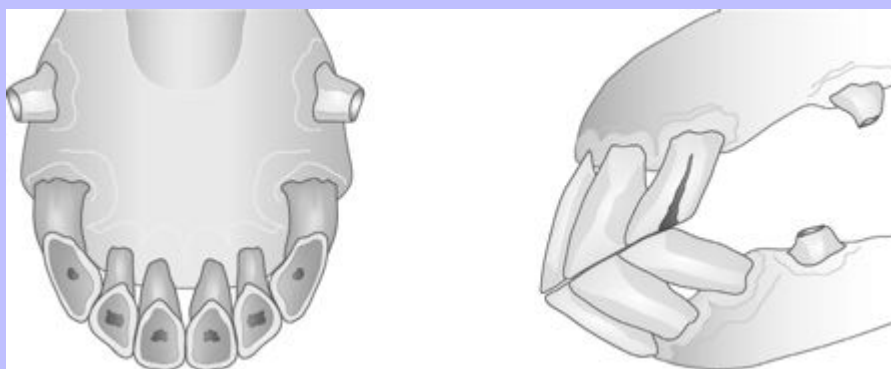


Fig. 4.25b Accuracy rating – 15 years.



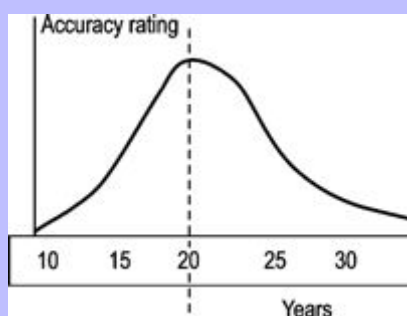
306

Fig. 4.26a Wear pattern of incisor teeth – >20 years.



307

Fig. 4.26b Accuracy rating – >20 years.



307

18.1.1 Form for dentition estimation

308

(Modified from Veterinary Defence Society with permission.)

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

The risks of litigation following actual or perceived errors in ageing of horses are considerable. Whenever an estimate is provided it is essential that a sensible range is provided. The de facto position is that veterinarians are the right people to provide this estimate and it is not helpful to simply refuse to provide some help. It is sometimes advisable to seek a second opinion from a colleague but it is essential to keep a record of the dental appearance upon which the estimate was made. It is not negligent to make an error – claims for negligence are virtually impossible if a true examination is performed and a record is kept of both the findings and the opinion.

308

309

Fig. 4.27 Form for dentition estimation (courtesy of the Veterinary Defence Society).

RECORD OF APPEARANCE OF TEETH				
Incisors (temp/perm)	Central	Lateral	Corner	
Erupted	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	
In wear	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	
Infundibular cavity gone	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	
Infundibular mark wearing out	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	
Dental Star	Y/N	Y/N	Y/N	
Shape of incisor tables				
Hook-corner incisor	Left	Y/N	Right	Y/N
Galvayne's Groove Extent	Left	.....	Right	.....
Angle of occlusion	.....			
Abnormal wear	.....			
Tushes present			Y/N	
Wolf Tooth	Left	Y/N	Right	Y/N
Molars	.....			
Vendor's stated age	.....			
Documented age	.....			
Approx age	.....		Range	.....
Name	.....			
Address	.....			
Horse's Name	.....			
Colour	.....		Sex	.....
Certificate ref	.....			
<b>Remember to emphasise that estimates of age are imprecise and unreliable.</b>				
Ages up to 6 years are reasonably definitive. For ages between 7 and 10 years an allowance of 2 years either way may be acceptable and in certain circumstances 3 years. From 10 years onwards estimates of age based on teeth are even less well correlated with true age.				

### 19 Section 6 Humane destruction

Euthanasia is possibly the most demanding of the tasks an equine veterinary surgeon is asked to perform. Reputations have been made and destroyed by how this is carried out. Remember that owners will be upset and possibly even irrational – do not ‘lose your cool’! A quiet, efficient and sympathetic approach enhances your reputation.

Remember that you are the veterinary surgeon and that in the event that an animal is suffering and requires (in your opinion) to be killed immediately on humane grounds you should perform this with all due speed and efficiency. If possible you should have a competent witness to the event and you should take pains to explain what you intend to do and why. In such circumstances you have no responsibility for the financial implications of what you do – carcass disposal costs/insurance arrangements etc. are irrelevant. It is advisable to have a police officer with you at road accidents etc. where the owner is not known or cannot be contacted, in case of future problems.

All practising veterinary surgeons are urged to purchase and study the video/text package produced by the University of Liverpool. This is available from:

The CPD Unit

Faculty of Veterinary Science

University of Liverpool

Leahurst

Neston, UK

The Association of Racecourse

Veterinary Surgeons

White Hill Surgery

Sibford Road

Hook Norton UK

CH64 7TE OX 15 5DG

#### 19.1 Prerequisites:

Ensure that:

- (a) Owner(s) are aware of what you intend to do and the reasons for it – the term ‘putting to sleep’ can be misinterpreted with disastrous results. The term ‘kill’ (or destroy) is brutal but not open to misinterpretation.
- (b) A signed concession form is obtained from the owner or responsible agent.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- (c) All appropriate arrangements have been made beforehand (unless circumstances dictate otherwise) e.g. knacker wagon, disposal.
- (d) You keep an accurate written description of the horse and details of method, place and reason for euthanasia. These should be kept in a bound notebook and should be recorded immediately. DO NOT rely on recollection at some later date.

311

- (e) Suitable, responsible and understanding assistance is available to restrain the horse – it is very difficult and possibly dangerous to attempt to kill a horse entirely on your own.

312

- Death is taken to be when all reflex activity and all spontaneous cardiac and respiratory function have ceased.
- Death may appear to have intervened but some muscular activity may still be present for up to 10-15 minutes.

### **DO NOT LEAVE THE HORSE WITHOUT ENSURING THAT:**

#### **1. DEATH IS FINAL AND COMPLETE.**

**(Always check the full compliment of reflexes, respiration and cardiac activity with stethoscope very carefully.)**

#### **2. THAT APPROPRIATE ARRANGEMENTS FOR DISPOSAL HAVE BEEN MADE.**

### 19.2 Consent form for euthanasia

This consent form ([Fig. 4.28](#)) has two sides and must be completed in most circumstances and especially where there is some sense that litigation might follow.

### 19.3 Methods of euthanasia available

1. Shooting (free bullet/captive bolt) (with or without sedation).
2. Chemical destruction (with/without sedation).
3. Aortic severance and electrolyte solutions (sometimes combined with barbiturates).

#### 19.3.1 1. Free bullet euthanasia

##### 19.3.1.1 Note:

1. It is NOT SAFE to employ a captive bolt weapon for destruction of horses (RCVS Emergency Measures Leaflet).
2. Use of the captive bolt may be effective in skilled hands and pithing or rapid exsanguination is a compulsory procedure after its use. In a public place both procedures are completely unacceptable.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

3. It may even be illegal to use these on horses except in slaughterhouses except in particular circumstances (e.g. in an aircraft).
4. Shooting (as opposed to stunning) is also very distressing to onlookers.
5. There is little excuse for the shooting of horses in modern practice given that the carcass disposal is always problematical anyway.
6. It is accepted however that shooting is very efficient in skilled hands.

312

Fig. 4.28 Euthanasia consent form.

<b>Noah's Ark Practice Ashfield under Willow</b>	
<b><u>EUTHANASIA CONSENT FORM</u></b>	
<p>I ... .., being the owner/owner's representative of the horse described overleaf, hereby give consent for the animal to be destroyed.</p>	
<p>I have been fully informed of the reasons for euthanasia and understand that the horse is to be killed. The method of euthanasia and the disposal arrangements for the body have been fully explained to me.</p>	
<p>I agree to the proposed arrangements.</p>	
<p>I accept that the costs of the procedure and disposal of the body are my responsibility.</p>	
<p>The horse is/is not insured.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The insurance company has/has not been informed.</li></ul>	
<p><u>A post mortem examination is/is not to be carried out.</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>The costs and implications of this decision have been explained to me.</b></li></ul>	
<p>Signed:</p>  <p>Owner/Agent</p>	<p>Signed:</p>  <p>Veterinary Surgeon</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Signed:</p> <p>Witness</p> <p>Name:</p>
<p>Date:</p> <p>Place:</p>	

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

<b>Description of horse:</b>			
Name:	Age:	Sex:	Breed:
Colour:	Freeze Mark:	CHIP No:	
<b>Markings:</b>			
• <u>Head:</u>			
• <u>RF:</u>			
• <u>LF:</u>			
• <u>LH:</u>			
• <u>RH:</u>			
• <u>BODY:</u>			
• Acquired Markings (scars etc) :			
❖ <b><u>Reason for Euthanasia:</u></b>			
❖ <b><u>Method of Euthanasia:</u></b>			
❖ Body disposal arrangements:			
Burial/Knacker/cremation/cremation (ashes return)			
ARRANGEMENTS MADE? Yes / No    If yes by whom :			
.....			
<div>Signature of Veterinary Surgeon</div> <div>Name:</div> <div>Address:</div>		<div>Practice Stamp</div> <div>Date:</div>	

314

315

In the UK all persons using firearms for any purpose are required by law to hold a **valid Firearms Certificate** (Firearms Act, 1982). Veterinary surgeons are exempt from the prohibition to the owning and using of Schedule V firearms (handguns greater than 0.22 calibre). This exemption does not mean that

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Veterinary Surgeons do not need a firearms certificate! All schedule V firearms are subject to strict licensing procedures. Currently, sound-moderated (silenced) single-shot pistols are required for use on racetracks or at official events. Silenced weapons require particular licensing permissions including a separate licence for the sound moderator.

Before using any weapon the veterinary surgeon has a responsibility to ensure that he/she is in possession of a valid firearms certificate for the weapon itself and has the necessary skill/experience to use it. Under no circumstances should a person (including Veterinary Surgeons) own, handle, or use a Schedule V weapon for which they themselves have no certificate.

Shotguns can however be used by a person without a certificate for the weapon with the permission of the certificate holder and in the presence of the certificate holder.

Suitable Third Party Liability Insurance **MUST** be in force at the time.

- **All possible precautions MUST be taken to ensure that human lives are not risked when using firearms.** Take particular care to clear the area behind the horse. UK police guidance suggests that a clear distance of 2 km must be available in the direction of the shot. No dwellings, vehicles or other animals must be within this distance. This effectively limits shooting severely in the UK. It is hard to visualise a circumstance when these requirements could be achieved in any public place. However, a hill or a barn of straw is an effective and accepted 'backdrop'.
- **Shotguns and rifles are difficult to handle and use effectively.**
- **DO NOT attempt to shoot a horse from a distance unless you have a suitable weapon and experience.** Professional stalkers and marksmen can be used but may require guidance.
- **The minimum acceptable calibre of weapon is 0.320** using a heavy soft-nose bullet with a strong charge rating. **DO NOT use a 0.22 calibre weapon** – very experienced people can use these effectively but there are serious risks and there will be no insurance cover if something goes wrong!

19.3.1.2

### Site for humane destruction of horses

- The **ideal site for destruction** is just above the point of intersection of lines drawn from the medial canthus of the eye to the middle of the opposite ear (see [Fig. 4.29](#)). The intersection point represents the lowest acceptable site.
- A useful quick method for locating the ideal site is to measure from the base of the forelock with: two fingers width for ponies <14 hh; three fingers width for larger ponies and small horses (14-16 hh); or four fingers width for horses >16 hh.
- The muzzle is placed just below this level in the midline.
- Aim slightly down into the brain stem and the occiput, i.e. not at right angles to frontal bone (too low).
- **Remember that if using a silenced weapon you will need to reduce the fingers by one (the silencer adds about 1 finger-thickness to the barrel of the weapon).**
- **DO NOT LEAVE YOUR FINGERS THERE!!**

315

317

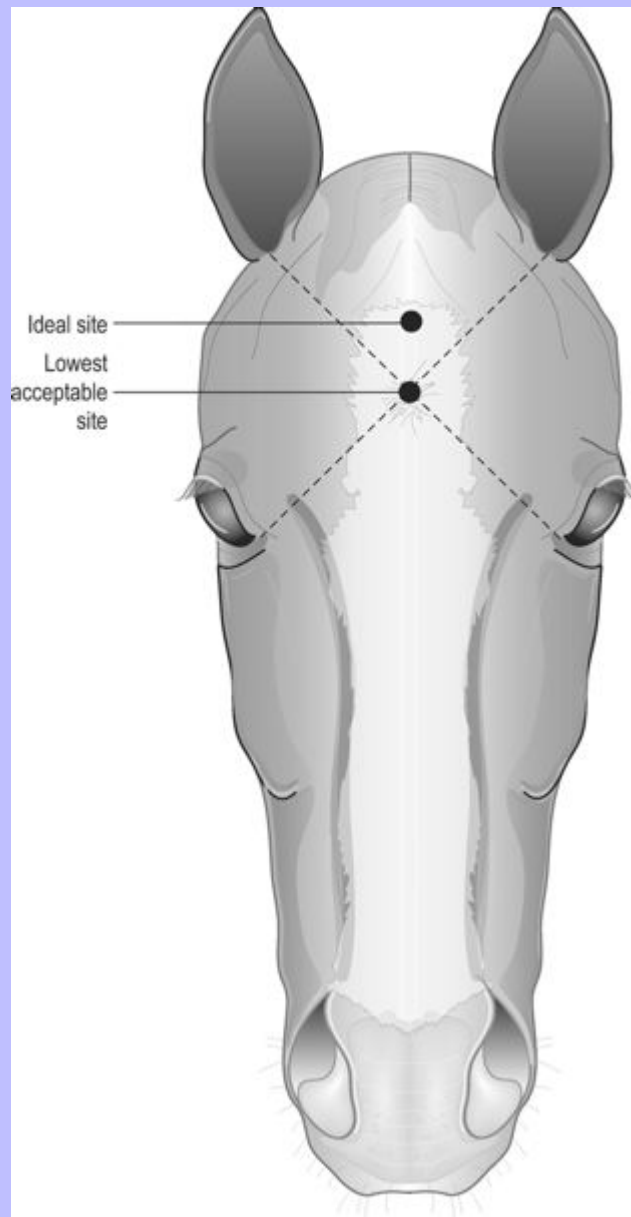


## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Significant problems are encountered if the position selected is too low (bleeding is severe and the horse may not die!). If it is too high death may be violent. If it is off-centre the result is very unpredictable.

Fig. 4.29 Location of ideal sites for destruction.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHOULD A HORSE BE SHOT FROM BEHIND THE HEAD OR IN THE EYE.**

The muzzle of the pistol should be held a few millimetres away from the skull.

However, in the event of uncertainty the muzzle may be rested gently on the skin but do not press firmly.

It is sometimes helpful to blindfold/sedate (or even anaesthetise) the horse.

**IF YOU ARE UNCERTAIN OF THE METHOD DO NOT SHOOT THE HORSE: USE ANOTHER METHOD!**

### 19.3.2 2. Chemical euthanasia

#### 19.3.2.1 Method 1: High-dose pentobarbitone

- Using 1 mL/5 kg bodyweight the solution (usually 200 mg/kg) is pre-loaded into as many 50 mL syringes as required.
- A reliable assistant should restrain the horse with a head collar/halter (do not wind the rope around the hand).
- A 14 G intravenous catheter is placed in the jugular vein (clipping and local anaesthetic may be helpful).

If necessary consider sedation using an  $\alpha$ -2 agonist at full sedative dose. Subsequent collapse may be delayed by 10-15 seconds or more if premedicated with sedative.

- The full volume of barbiturate solution is injected as fast as possible.
- Collapse is expected after 35-40 seconds.

Firm head restraint and pulling the head down and slightly forwards may help to make the horse take a step backwards.

- Death usually occurs by 1.5-2.5 minutes after collapse.

Occasional gasping may be seen after collapse.

#### **Problems/complications:**

##### **(i) Failure to inject volume fast enough.**

- Delayed, sometimes violent collapse, violent movement/panic may be encountered.

317

##### **(ii) Failure to restrain adequately.**

318

- Violent, uncontrolled collapse;

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Often rearing and going over backwards.

(iii) Inadequate dose.

- Prolonged time to death, repeated gasping.

19.3.2.2

### Method 2: Muscle relaxant, thiopentone (thiopental) and pentobarbitone

- Restrain with head collar or halter.
- Pre-place 14 G jugular catheter.
- Sedate if required.
- Administer 10 mg/kg thiopentone (thiopental) as 10% solution as fast bolus and immediately follow it with suxamethonium (succinylcholine) at 0.1 mg/kg.
- Collapse expected in 25-40 seconds (associated with localised or extensive, fine or coarse muscular tremors and prolapse of third eyelid).
- Immediately after collapse (when safe) administer 5 mg/kg pentobarbitone (200 mg/mL strength) as fast as possible.
- Sedative premedication delays responses.
- Death usually within 3 minutes of collapse.

#### Problems/complications:

(i) Multiple syringes.

- Important to keep protocol in mind and label the syringes.

(ii) Muscle tremors may be distressing.

(iii) Carcass disposal is problematical.

19.3.2.2.0.0.1

#### Note:

- It is possible to kill a horse with thiopentone (thiopental) alone. The horse should first be induced with a large overdose of thiopentone (thiopental) and, after induction, a dose of four times the calculated induction dose should be given intravenously.
- It may be necessary to repeat this dose again if by 3-4 minutes death has not intervened.

19.3.2.3

### Method 3: Cinchocaine and quinalbarbitone (secobarbital)

- Restrain with head collar/halter.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Pre-place 14 gauge jugular catheter.
- Clip and use local anaesthetic if indicated.
- Sedate if required.
- Inject calculated volume of proprietary mixture **over 10-15 seconds** from single syringe.

318

319

For horses under 145 cm (14.2 hh) use 25 mL (unless very fat/overweight or stocky).

For horses over 145 cm (14.2 hh) use 50 mL (very large horses may need 75 mL).

- Collapse occurs at 35-45 seconds after the start of injection.
- Restrain by firm hold on head and pulling head downwards.
- Death usually within 2 minutes of collapse.

19.3.2.3.0.0.0.1

### Note:

- The solution is thick and slightly viscid so do not use a thin needle – the kits contain a suitable wide bore catheter. Test it during syringe loading. Use of a narrow-gauge needle will inevitably lead to a slow injection or the syringe might burst creating an embarrassing situation.
- Premedication with sedatives delays collapse by 10-20 seconds.
- **Do not use xylazine (may be violent convulsions after collapse in some cases).**
- Corneal reflex is often retained for up to 2-3 minutes after all others have ceased.
- Occasional gasping and muscle movement (particularly in the upper limb) sometimes occurs; observers should be warned of this possibility.

### Problems/complications:

#### (i) Too slow injection:

- Normal collapse time but death delayed – possibly indefinitely.
- Possibly violent collapse and sometimes recovery to standing within a few minutes.
- The animal is effectively anaesthetised and the heart continues to beat.

#### (ii) Too rapid injection:

- Normal or delayed collapse followed by violent collapse/convulsions (heart stopped but inadequate barbiturate delivered to brain).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Reflexes may be sustained until death follows from cardiac arrest alone.
- Some of these animals will recover after some hours.

### 19.3.3 3. Alternative methods

If you find yourself in a position where a horse must be euthanised and you have nothing to do it with, do not attempt anything heroic. Take control of the situation and wait for the arrival of someone equipped to do the job! The police are very reluctant to help and in any case do not be tempted to use a police firearm – you have no certificate to handle it and so you will immediately render yourself liable to prosecution ... the police may bring the prosecution even if they have asked for your help! Attending police officers have no authority to issue 'temporary' firearms certificates.

319

If the owner of the horse cannot be located and the horse must be destroyed immediately on humane grounds explain to a police officer or other responsible person why it needs to be done and then write down the circumstances and ask for the witness(es) to sign the document. Given a reasonable degree of professional competence this will always be sufficient.

320

#### 19.3.3.1 Aortic severance

This method is much more difficult than it is suggested to be and can be EXTREMELY dangerous – DO NOT ATTEMPT THIS – it is far more difficult than it sounds and death is sometimes violent. Severance is sometimes accompanied by violent hind leg spasms – particularly if one or more of the pelvic nerves is severed at the same time.

**If this is the only option open then it is essential that the horse is either anaesthetised or very heavily sedated before any attempt is made.**

**It remains a dangerous procedure whether the horse is standing or recumbent.**

***Potassium chloride, magnesium sulphate and other combinations of electrolytes and anaesthetic agents***

**These are all more or less unreliable or sometimes can be positively dangerous/inhumane in the conscious horse and MUST NOT BE USED. They may however, be used on anaesthetised horses.**

##### 19.3.3.1.1 Note:

**It is virtually impossible to destroy a horse solely with ether, chloroform or halothane etc. and killing anaesthetised horses with these volatile agents is also very expensive, time-consuming and difficult. It should never be attempted no matter what the circumstances.**

### 20 Section 7 Bandaging techniques

All the required dressings and equipment should be readily to hand before starting any bandaging. Allow for some dressing loss (especially if horse resentful or in pain). One of the most effective measures for the relief of pain is a firm bandage that is logically and sympathetically applied. Even horses with fractured legs will find relief in immobilisation with a firm bandage and splint.

#### Tips:

1. Use cotton wool rolls NOT Gamgee tissue – the latter is almost impossible to apply without kinks and folds. Recent development of a narrower thickness of Gamgee tissue is more useful in the tertiary layer and is easier to manage than cotton wool.
2. Never apply high pressure if bandage is to be left on for >2-3 hours.
3. Pressure necrosis of skin following inappropriate bandaging (or casting) is a nightmare to treat and is often more serious than the original injury – tendon involvement is particularly unpleasant.
4. Any suggestion that the bandage is not comfortable MUST be viewed with concern and appropriate measures taken to replace or reposition the bandage.
5. There is a strong tendency to use heavy dressings where these are not really required. A light dressing may be better tolerated than a heavy one that restricts movement and is hot.

### 20.1 BANDAGE LAYERS

- (a) Primary wound dressing.
- (b) Secondary wound dressing (designed to retain the primary dressing in position) (e.g. soft cotton bandage such as 'Soffban' (Smith and Nephew UK)).
- (c) Tertiary dressings: Designed to cover and support the secondary dressing.
  - Cotton wool layer.
  - Conformable gauze bandage layer.
  - Absorbable, stretchable fabric (Vetrap).
  - Adhesive semi-elasticated bandage.
- (d) Supportive bandage to ensure the dressings do not slip or move during natural (restricted) movement.

321

### 20.1.1 1. Bandaging the foot and fetlock

322

#### Note:

- Bandage may 'ride up' so ensure top layer of adhesive is crossed under heels/foot.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- A single layer of Elastoplast-type adhesive tape should be applied over the top of the dressing to avoid bedding etc. falling into/under the dressing.
- Consideration must be given to the waterproofing of the dressing. Contamination with urine, faeces and soil/mud can significantly affect prognosis. Do not apply heavy-gauge polythene bags to the foot over dressings.

### 20.1.2 2. Bandaging the carpus (knee)

Any excessive pressure over the accessory carpal bone and the medial styloid process of the radius should be avoided because these are often the site of bandage sores that fail to heal. The use of elasticised 'zip-up' ('Pressage') bandages should be considered on cost and convenience grounds where support can be limited, e.g. skin wounds etc. Firmly applied bandages over the knee and exercise do not mix well as the bandages tend to fall or become distorted. A single layer of adhesive bandage (Elastoplast) applied to the skin at the top and bottom is sometimes helpful in keeping the bandage in position. A stable type bandage applied below the dressing may also keep it up.

### 20.1.3 3. Bandaging the tarsus (hock)

Any excessive pressure over the point of the hock, and the common calcanean (Achilles) tendon and the medial malleolus of the tibia must be avoided. Pressure wounds are common at these sites and they are invariably problematical during healing – many take months or never heal satisfactorily. These are the sites of many disasters in bandaged horses. Elasticised 'zip-up' bandages ('Pressage' bandages) should be considered on cost and convenience grounds where only limited support is required. Horses with firmly applied bandages over the Achilles tendon in particular should not be given any significant exercise – the bandages tend to fall or become distorted. A single layer of semi-elasticated adhesive bandage applied to the skin at the top and bottom is sometimes helpful in keeping the bandage in position.

322

Fig. 4.30 Bandaging the foot.

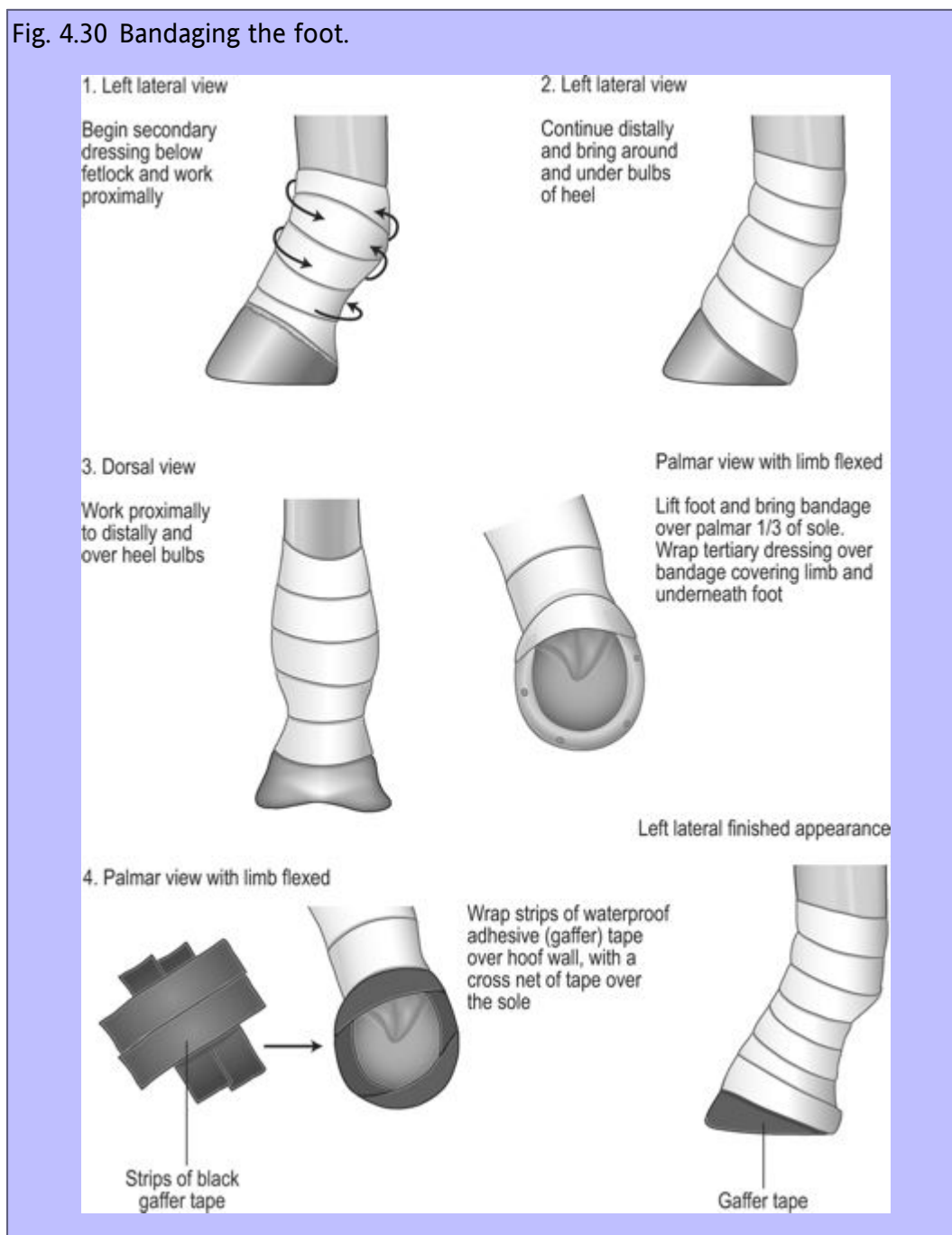




Fig. 4.31 Bandaging the carpus (knee).

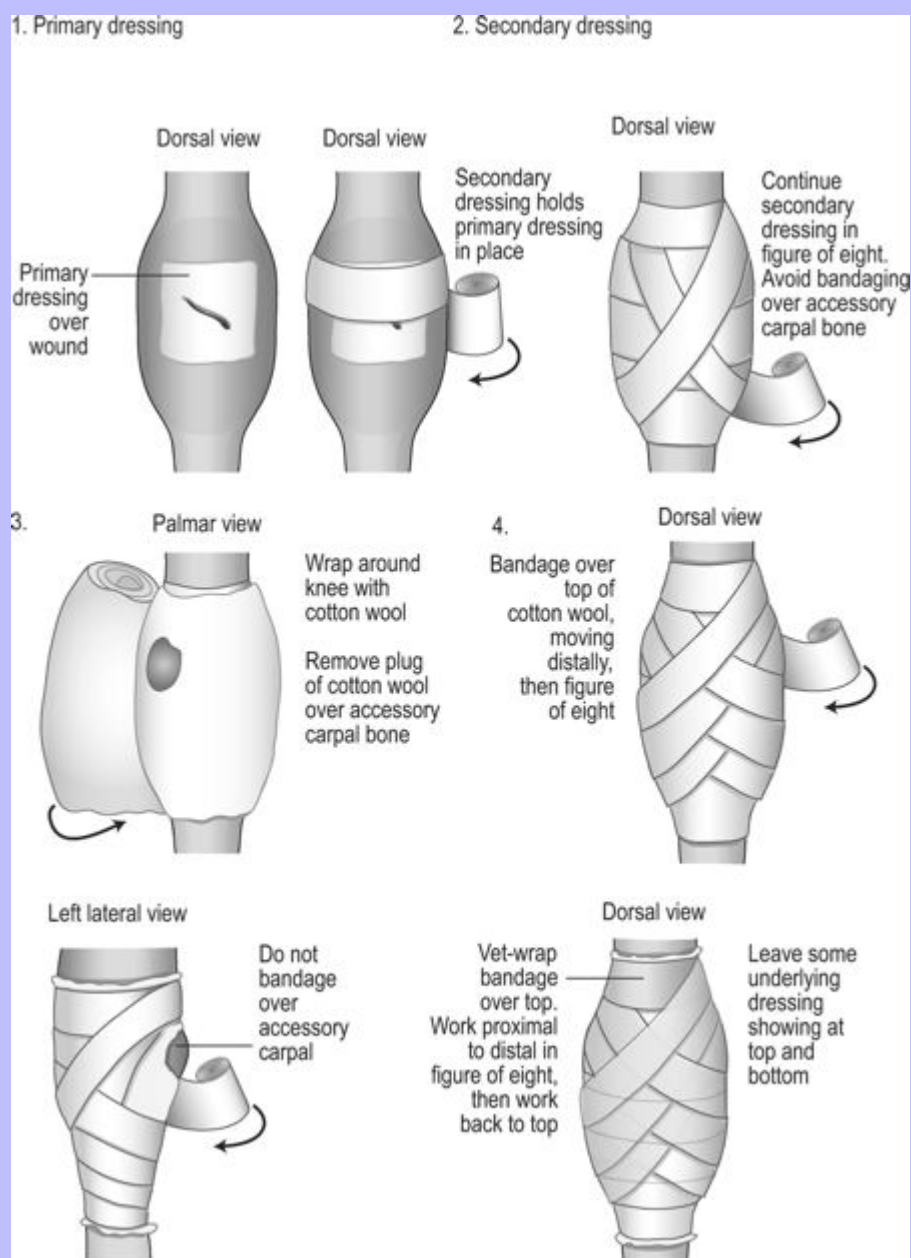


Fig. 4.32 Bandaging the (tarsus) hock.

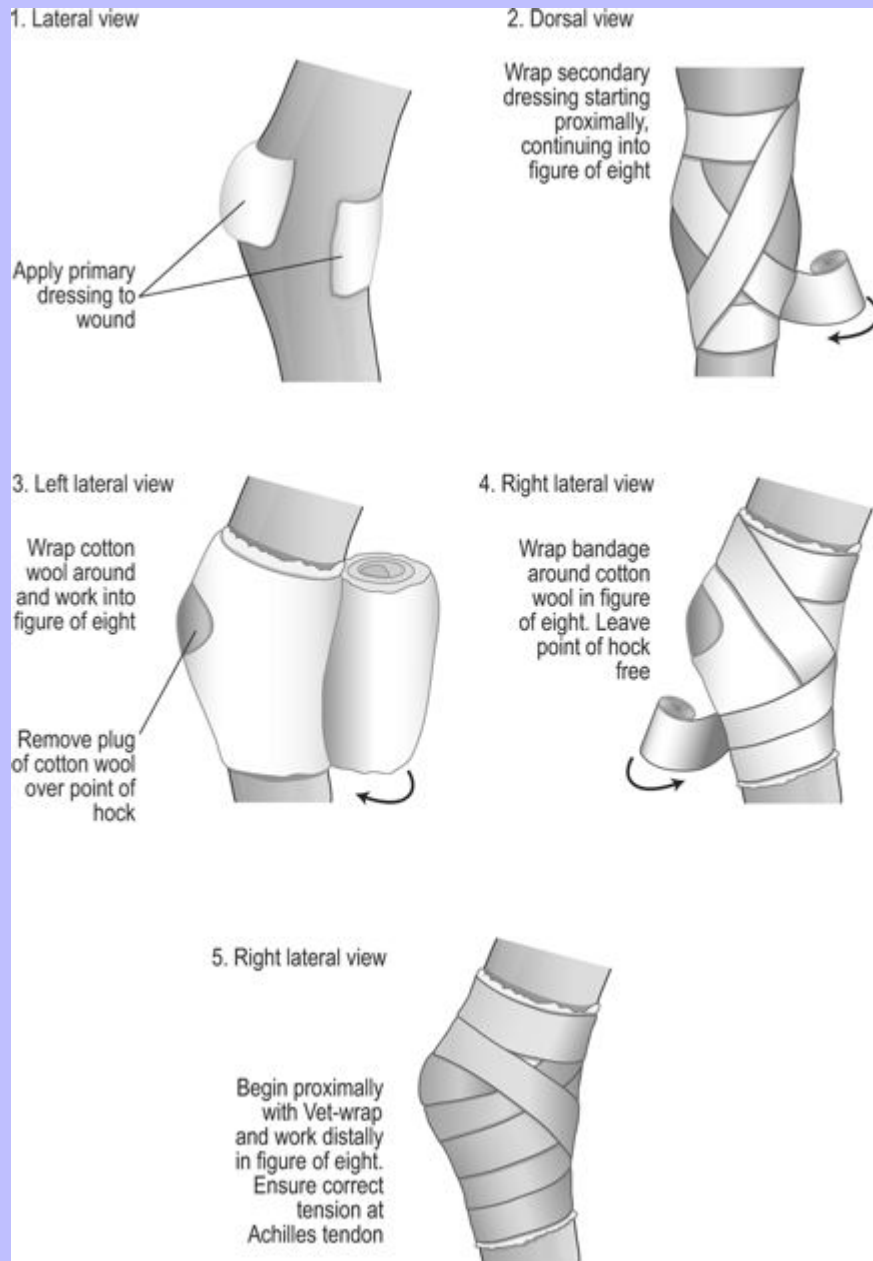
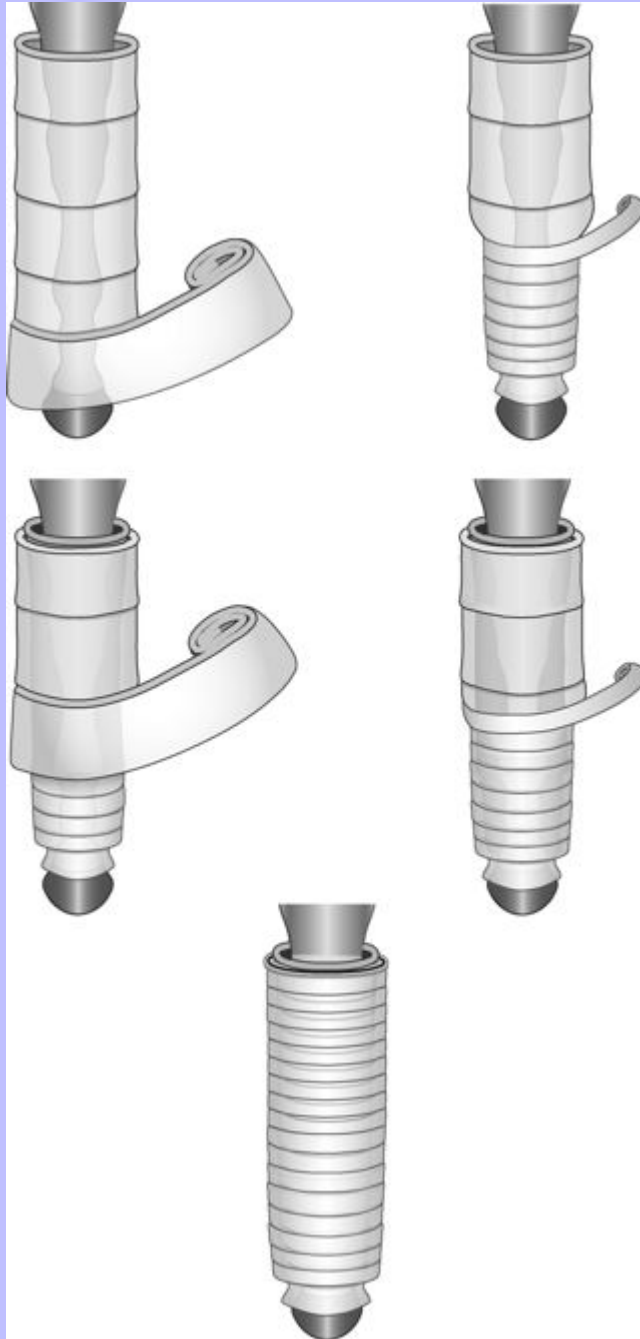


Fig. 4.33 The Robert Jones bandage.



### 20.1.4 4. The Robert Jones bandage

327

This was developed to produce temporary immobilisation of human limbs, and has several indications in equine practice:

- To provide first aid support for a fractured limb or disrupted suspensory apparatus giving stability and soft tissue protection.
- To provide pain relief and relieve anxiety.
- To control severe post trauma limb oedema by application of even pressure.
- To support a limb following removal of a more rigid external or internal fixation device.
- To protect implants and soft tissues during recovery from anaesthesia.

The principle of the dressing is compression of air-filled cotton wool to increase rigidity and spread pressure evenly. To achieve this, the Robert Jones bandage has to be multi-layered and bulky. Each layer of cotton wool approximately 2.5 cm thick is kept firmly in place with a gauze bandage, each layer being wrapped more tightly. It is important that the layers are built up carefully so that the pressure is uniform and there is no folding and distortion of the resulting 'tubular' support. Layers are applied until a total diameter of approximately three times that of the normal leg is achieved (20-25 cm for an adult, 15-20 cm for a foal).

#### Method:

1. Cotton wool is rolled onto the leg first over the narrower portions, i.e. the cannon and pastern to establish the initial base of the uniform tube that is critical to the strength of the bandage overall. The outer cotton bandage over this layer should not be pulled firmly but simply establish and stabilise the base layer.
2. Two layers of cotton wool are applied over the entire length to be incorporated with a firm cotton bandage applied over each **avoiding pressure points**. The bandages are pulled progressively tighter with each layer. It is important to avoid the major pressure points during the early layers.
3. Further layer of cotton wool over entire length (**including pressure points**).
4. Further bandages applied over entire length.
5. Successive layers of cotton wool and bandage to provide at least 4-6 layers.
6. Top layer of Elastoplast or broad nylon tape (carpet tape is effective and strong) – this must never be used on the lower layers.

**The completed Robert Jones bandage should be hard and should respond like wood to a firm flick with the finger. The bandage can be reinforced with splints of wood applied on the outer layers.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 20.1.5 5. Bandaging for other body regions

#### 20.1.5.1 Splint application

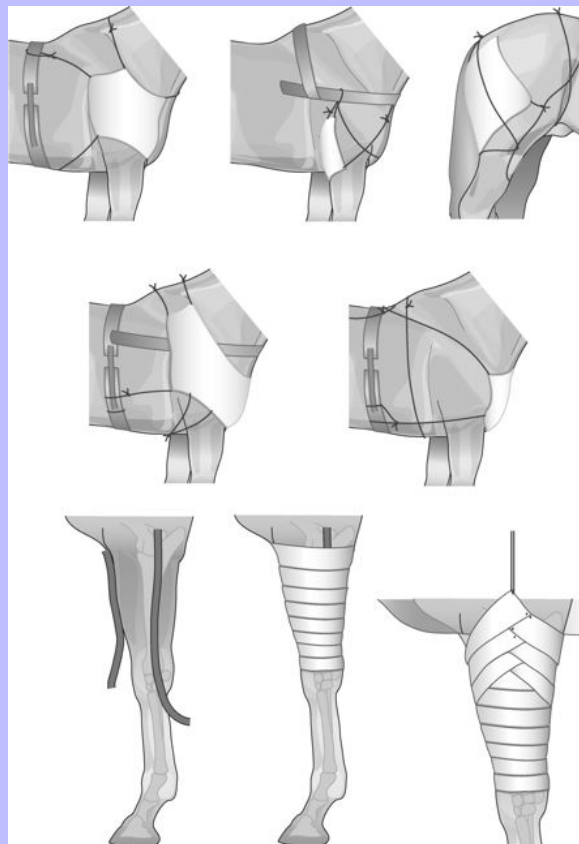
Splints are applied over the Robert Jones bandage with non-elastic adhesive tape to prevent shifting of the splint material within the bandage. Non-elastic tape does not expand and therefore increases the rigidity of the outer shell of the bandage. The tape should be applied as tightly as possible ensuring that the splint does not move during application.

The splinting materials that can be used include any lightweight, relatively strong, rigid material. Wood or plastics (such as guttering) are ideal although lightweight metal such as aluminium or flat steel also work well.

327

328

Fig. 4.34 Bandaging upper limb regions. (A) Shoulder dressing; (B) elbow dressing; (C) buttock dressing; (D) breast and shoulder dressing; (E) breast dressing; (F) upper forelimb dressing showing a retention mechanism; (G) upper forelimb dressing retained by sutures and a support strap.



328

### 20.1.6 Rigid limb immobilisation by means of cast application

This protocol relates to the use of Dynacast Pro (Smith and Nephew). The author is grateful to Dr C.M. Riggs and to Smith and Nephew Ltd. for their permission to base these notes on their pamphlet: 'rigid immobilisation of the equine limb – application of Dynacast optima' by Dr C.M. Riggs BVSc, PhD, DEO, DipECE, O, MRCVS, University of Liverpool.

Cast application is difficult in the standing horse and an optimal job is impossible unless the animal is motionless and relaxed. Where possible casts should be applied under general anaesthesia.

**A CAST OF ANY SORT SHOULD NOT BE APPLIED UNLESS THERE IS AN IMMEDIATELY AVAILABLE METHOD FOR ITS REMOVAL.**

#### 20.1.6.1 Indications

- Fracture fixation (sole or as support for internal fixation).
- Joint luxation/ligament damage (unstable joint/ruptured ligament).
- Support for damaged soft tissues, e.g. tendon/ligament strains.
- Severe distal limb lacerations/partial hoof avulsion.
- Correction of developmental or acquired limb deformities.

#### 20.1.6.2 Types of cast

- Foot only.
- Half limb (cast to proximal cannon) – commonest form used (easy to manage and monitor from day to day, best tolerated of extensive casts).
- Full limb (cast to proximal radius/tibia) – very difficult to manage and poorly tolerated in most cases.
- Tube cast (foals) (proximal fetlock to proximal radius/tibia).

#### 20.1.6.2.1 Note:

There is a significant difference in the application of an **orthopaedic** (rigid limb) cast and a **bandage** cast that is commonly used to provide some degree of immobilisation for a wound site. The latter is simply a sympathetically applied casting bandage over a properly constructed wound dressing.

#### 20.1.6.3 Equipment required

- Hoof knives, drill bit and length of wire, antibiotic aerosol spray, clippers, electric hair dryer.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Oscillating cast saw and cast splitters (**don't forget you have to remove the cast so do not put one on unless you know how it is to be removed!**).
- Wound dressings (as required) including:
  - Allevyn® foam (Smith and Nephew) for vulnerable pressure points.
  - Stockinet of suitable diameter.
- 2-4 rolls of Soffban® (Smith and Nephew).
- Orthopaedic padding (Smith and Nephew).
- Orthopaedic felt (adhesive).
- Towel clips.
- Casting material such as Dynacast Optima (3 rolls 7.5 cm, 3 rolls 10 cm).
- Thermoplastic mesh (2 rolls) (Vetlite®).
- Synthetic resin (Technovit®).
- Gloves and protective apron.
- Suitable anaesthesia/sedation (as appropriate).

329

330

20.1.6.4

### Technique of cast application

- Carefully prepare wounds etc. (cover with suitable sterile dressings).
- Clip limb to remove coarse hair likely to cause bunching.
- Clean and prepare foot – spray sole/frog with antibiotic aerosol.
- Drill holes in distal margins of heel and pass wire through (creates a handle for easy limb extension).
- Apply Allevyn Pad® to pressure points – the accessory carpal bone, calcaneus and cranial aspect of the hock for full limb casts. Padding over the fetlock or coronary band is generally not necessary.
- Apply two rolls of Soffban®, taking care to avoid wrinkles and excessive pressure – aim to get an even, smooth bandage.
- Measure and prepare stockinet so each half of the length is rolled onto itself towards the middle. Apply two layers of stockinet over Soffban® with a twist at the toe (the two free ends should now be above the site of the top of the cast).
- Carefully measure and apply a single fitted thickness of adhesive felt around the proximal end of the cast length. Avoid any overlap and excessive tension (clip in position with towel clips).
- Establish and fix limb in required position (assistant holds limb by wire loop and supports length).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Comfort Support Foam can be placed if desired – even pressure should be applied, avoiding any wrinkles. Each layer should overlap the previous one by half the width of the foam. Only one layer is needed.
  - Apply casting material (read instructions carefully first to ensure ideal timing and handling). Use 7.5 cm rolls first (better conformation to limb). Apply immediately starting at proximal end of cast, taking care to:
    - apply even pressure;
    - avoid wrinkles/folds;
    - overlap each layer by half the width of the tape;
    - take special care over fetlock and back of cannon;
    - apply subsequent rolls continuously without pauses or rests!
- 
- fold over the top half of the felt pad at the top of the cast and include it in the final layers (to produce a soft collar);
  - gently and continuously massage the cast with the palm of the hand (NEVER WITH POINTED FINGERS);
  - bubbling indicates curing of the resin;
  - always include the foot (in figure-of-eight pattern) and remove wire handles once cast is partially set.
- 
- Cover open top of cast with 1-2 layers of Elastoplast®.
  - Apply hot malleable thermoplastic (Vetlite® [hot]) to foot (form wedge at heel to correct foot position).
  - When dry apply layer of Technovit® to toe and solar surface to provide a very hardwearing bearing surface.

330

331

20.1.6.5

### Management of horse with a cast

- Box confined with support bandaging of contra-lateral limb (be very careful not to over-constrict this limb).
- Keep top of cast protected from ingress of hay/shavings water etc. – Elastoplast collar.
- Twice daily checks on cast (walk a few paces, temperature [hot/cold], smell, exudate, swelling at proximal end, evidence of pain/dullness etc.).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 20.1.6.6 Removal of cast

- Sedation or general anaesthesia (as appropriate).
- Plaster saw is essential – score first and then cut to full depth in small bites.

**Do not try to remove the cast until it can definitely be removed in one move (especially if the horse is conscious).**

### 20.1.6.7 Complications

- Pressure sores.
- Cast movement.
- Cast fracture/instability.
- Vascular obstruction (gangrene).

331

## 20.2 TRANSPORTATION OF EQUINE FRACTURE PATIENTS

332

Emergency first aid measures of fracture patients should be directed at minimising further damage to the injured limb and maintaining it in a condition that permits repair. Protective splints should be applied immediately before further diagnostics (radiography) are carried out to lessen the risk of further damage. If possible, the joint below and above the fracture should be immobilised.

- Probably the most effective analgesic for a fractured limb is immobilisation.
- Immobilisation must take account of the biomechanics of the fracture.

Incorrectly applied 'support' can make matters worse and a treatable fracture can become untreatable during transport to the specialist hospital and so careful attention must be paid to the specific needs of the fracture – even where the exact nature of the injury may not be known.

## 20.3 EMERGENCY ORTHOPAEDIC FIRST AID

### 20.3.1 Introduction

Any veterinary surgeon may be faced with an acute equine trauma case, whether in equine practice or not. Knowledge of how to apply first aid care to such cases will have a profound influence on their final outcome.

### 20.3.2 Initial evaluation

Initial assessment of the emergency needs to address:

1. Immediate risks to personnel.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

2. Risks to other animals.
3. Risks of exacerbating injury to animal.
4. Life-threatening risks to injured animal(s).

Immediate action may be necessary in order to extricate all involved from imminent danger (for instance from the edge of a busy road) before the injuries to any individual case can be attended to. Some Fire and Police services are trained to help and may be willing to do so, but take precautions that they do not themselves get injured.

**Conduct brief clinical examination (within possible limits) to establish presence/absence of life-threatening condition(s). Respiratory and cardiovascular function must be assessed.**

### 20.3.2.1 Note:

Horses behaving in an uncontrollable manner may require sedation – this should be avoided if possible. Xylazine (0.5-1.0 mg/kg) intravenously (or intramuscularly if IV not possible) is the sedative of choice. **Acepromazine should be avoided on account of its hypotensive effects.**

332

Once the initial situation has been brought under control specific injuries need to be examined and managed accordingly. Certain injuries carry a hopeless prognosis and warrant immediate humane destruction of the animal. These include:

333

- Fractures of long bones associated with severe soft tissue injury.
- Contaminated open fractures.
- Complete fractures of the femur or tibia in adults.
- Complete fractures of the humerus or radius in horses over 300 kg without breeding potential.
- Severe cranial or spinal cord trauma.

Some apparently hopeless soft-tissue injuries (such as open luxation of the fetlock joint) carry a reasonably good prognosis, as do some fractures of more distal long bones. If you are in doubt over the chances of successful treatment and/or the welfare implications of transporting the horse to a referral hospital do not hesitate to call the referral establishment for advice.

Some fractures can be difficult to diagnose – auscultation for bone crepitus (grating of bone fragments) with a stethoscope can be helpful.

The financial implications of any treatment need to be considered and discussed with the owner (if possible) **before** subjecting the horse to a harrowing journey.

### 20.3.3 First aid treatment

Acute orthopaedic injuries are broadly divided into four anatomical categories:

1. Skeletal.
2. Musculo-tendinous.
3. Synovial structures.
4. Neurological.

20.3.3.1

### Note:

Probably the greatest contribution to pain and anxiety relief is achieved by immobilisation of a fracture or injured limb. The principles behind this are fundamental to emergency management.

20.3.4

### Fractures of long bones

The major limiting factor for the successful treatment of fractures is often the soft tissue damage sustained at and/or after the initial injury. A horse with a fractured long bone may attempt to weight-bear on the affected limb, despite even gross instability. Resultant forces generated at the site of fracture will cause movement of bone fragments relative to one another and to surrounding soft tissues. Consequently a relatively simple fracture (with a good prognosis for surgical repair) may quickly be converted to a comminuted, open fracture associated with massive damage to surrounding soft tissues (and a hopeless prognosis).

333

The principal objectives of first aid for a horse with a fracture are:

334

1. To restrict further soft tissue injury.
2. To prevent penetration of the skin by a bone fragment.
3. To stabilise the limb:
  - preventing further bone damage;
  - relieving the anxiety that accompanies an uncontrollable limb in a horse.
4. To limit the risk of contamination through existing skin damage.

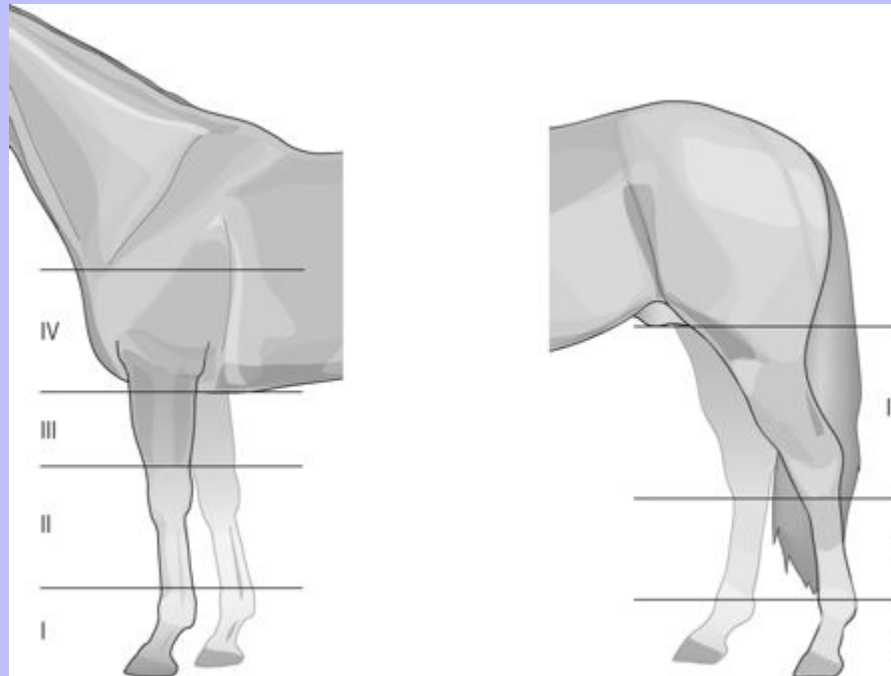
These objectives are best achieved by prompt application of appropriate bandages and splints to stabilise the limb. Practical, field techniques for achieving optimal stability of various fracture configurations rely on the use of readily available materials, are economical and may be applied with relative ease to the standing (sedated) horse.

20.3.5

### Splinting the equine limb

When considering the most appropriate method for achieving optimum stability through the use of bandages and splints the limbs may be divided functionally into four anatomical segments ([Fig. 4.35](#)).

Fig. 4.35 Regions of the limb divided according to different splint requirements.



334

### 20.3.5.1 Forelimb

335

### 20.3.6 Region I: Distal extremity to distal third of third metacarpal bone

Includes fractures of the first and second phalanges, the proximal sesamoid bones and the distal condyles of the third metacarpal bone (common sites for fractures among racehorses).

#### Biomechanics:

- The region is dominated, biomechanically, by the angle of the fetlock joint.
- If a fracture occurs in this region then there is a risk that the limb will bend around the fracture instead of the fetlock joint ([Fig. 4.36](#)).

#### Splinting:

- Aims to eliminate bending forces at fetlock (and hence fracture) by straightening the limb so that the dorsal cortices of the bones are all vertical and in axial alignment ([Fig. 4.37](#)).

Fig. 4.36 [See description in main text].

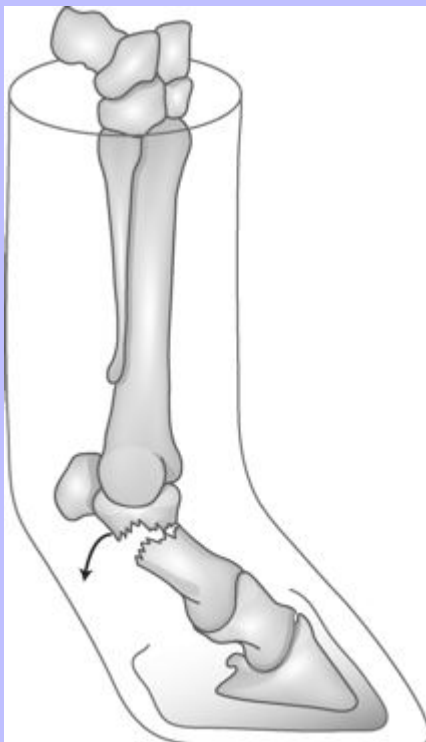
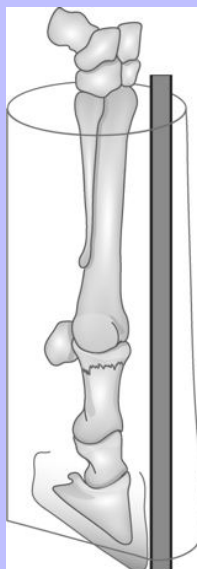


Fig. 4.37 [See description in main text].



### Application:

- An assistant supports the leg under the distal forearm so that it hangs with the fetlock straight and the toe pointing vertically.
- Two light layers of cotton wool are bandaged to the limb, from the proximal metacarpus to the ground.
- A splint (consisting of wooden board or plastic guttering and extending from the carpus to just proximal to the tip of the toe) is then firmly taped to the dorsal aspect of limb, fixing the phalanges and metacarpus in axial alignment.
- Further support bandages, or even casting tape (e.g. Dynacast-Optima, Smith and Nephew) may then be applied over the splint.

Care should be taken not to apply excess bandage between the limb and splint as this will compress and allow movement of the splint around the limb. The top of the splint must be carefully padded to prevent it from digging into the leg.

### 20.3.7 Region II: From mid metacarpus to distal radius

Includes fractures of the mid-shaft and proximal metacarpus, carpus and distal radius.

### Splinting:

- The objective is to utilise the proximal and distal limb to attach a splint that can immobilise the fracture.

### Application:

- A Robert Jones bandage is applied extending from the ground surface to as far proximal as possible (the elbow).
- The Robert Jones bandage must be applied in multiple, thin layers of cotton wool, each of which is firmly compressed by an elastic bandage (if the cotton wool layers are too thick they will squash as the horse 'uses' the limb and the whole bandage will loosen and the leg will become unstable). The diameter of the final bandage should be roughly three times that of the unbandaged limb.
- Rigid splints, extending from the ground to the elbow, are then firmly taped to the **lateral** and **caudal** aspects of the bandage using **non-elastic tape** (Fig. 4.38).

Fig. 4.38 [See description in main text].

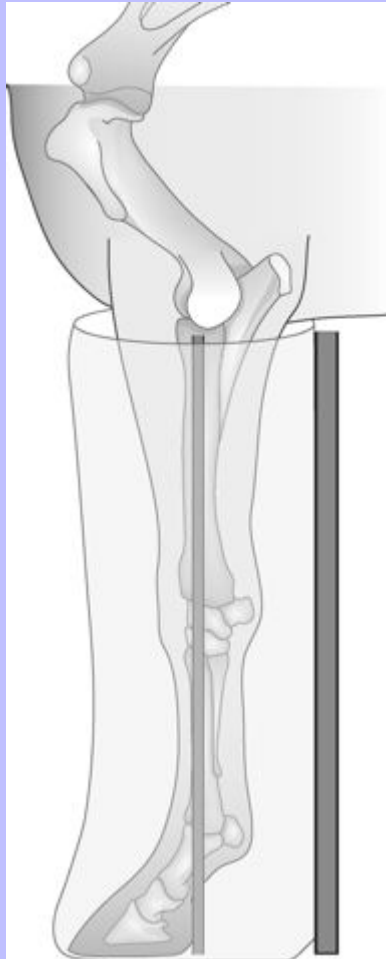
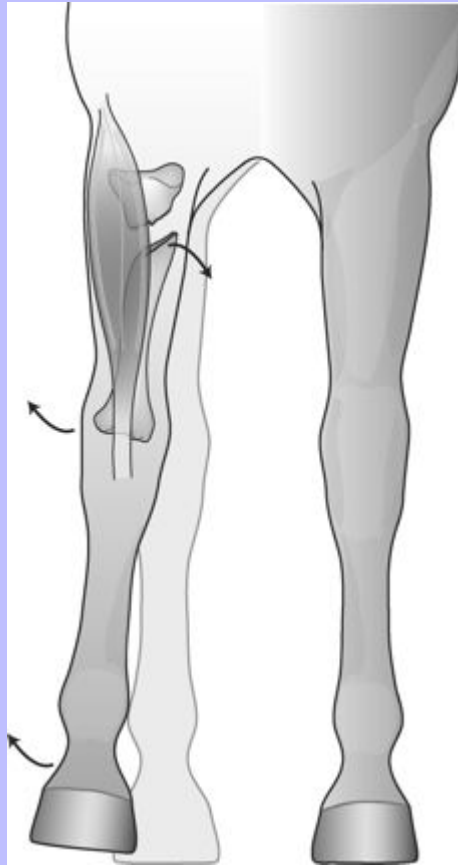


Fig. 4.39 [See description in main text].



### 20.3.8 Region III: From distal radius to the elbow joint

Includes fractures of the shaft and proximal aspect of the radius.

#### Biomechanics:

- The principal musculature of the distal limb lies on the lateral aspect of the leg. When a fracture occurs in this region the muscles no longer have an intact skeleton on which to act and they become abductors of the limb rather than effectors of extension or flexion.
- The medial side of the radius has no muscle cover and hence when the limb is abducted the skin is easily penetrated by the distal radial fragment as it rotates inwards (Fig. 4.39).

337

#### Splinting:

338

- The objectives of support for fractures in this region are to prevent abduction of the limb and to achieve maximum stability at the fracture site.

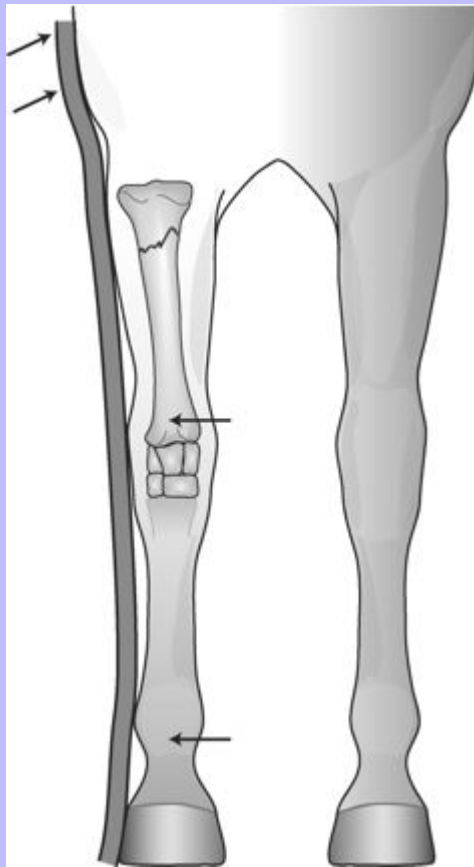


## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### Application:

- A Robert Jones and caudal splint should be applied to a limb as described for Region II above.
- The **lateral splint** should extend from the ground to the level of the horse's mid-scapula. Padding may be required around the splint as it overlies the rib cage and tape in a figure of eight around the body to hold the free end of the splint helps to stabilise it.
- The lateral splint extension prevents the distal limb from being abducted ([Fig. 4.40](#)).

Fig. 4.40 [See description in main text].



338

20.3.9 Region IV: Proximal to elbow

339

Fractures of the humerus, ulna or neck of scapula.

### Biomechanics:

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Fractures of these bones are well protected by muscle cover and are closely attached to the body on their deep surface. This minimises the need to protect the actual fracture.
- However, fractures in these locations disable the triceps apparatus, making it impossible for the horse to fix the elbow for weight bearing. This results in the horse being unable to control the limb.

### **Splinting:**

- The objective is to fix the carpus in the extended position so that the horse has greater control over the limb and can use it to balance with.

### **Application:**

- A simple padded bandage and a splint placed down the caudal aspect of the leg, with the carpus taped to the splint, is sufficient to maintain the carpus in an extended and locked position for weight-bearing support.

#### 20.3.9.1 Hindlimb

#### 20.3.10 Region I: Distal to the distal third of the third metatarsal bone

### **Application:**

- Can be treated in the same way as the forelimb.
- The dorsal splint can be difficult to apply and the horse may require sedation to prevent it from snatching the limb up while it is being handled.
- The leg is best held under the hock in slight extension by an assistant while the dorsal splint is applied.
- Care must be taken so that the proximal limit of the splint does not dig into the hock.

#### 20.3.11 Region II: From distal to proximal metatarsus

### **Application:**

- A lighter Robert Jones bandage is applied than in the forelimb (because it is more difficult to bandage the tarsus and the splints are more likely to slip).
- Splints are applied to the caudal and lateral aspect of the limb, using the *tuber calcis* as the proximal limit.

#### 20.3.12 Region III: The tarsus and tibia

### **Biomechanics:**

- Under normal circumstances the reciprocal apparatus causes the hock to flex and extend in unison with the stifle.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Following fracture of the tibia or tarsus the reciprocal apparatus will act on the fracture – flexion of the stifle causes overriding at the fracture site instead of hock flexion.

- The stifle cannot be fixed but the distal limb can be stabilised to minimise trauma to the fracture site.

339

- As in the forelimb, the principal musculature is located on the lateral aspect of the limb and hence the distal limb tends to be abducted.

340

### Application:

- A Robert Jones bandage is applied from the ground surface as far proximal as possible.
- The most stable splinting arrangement utilises a lightweight metal bar, bent to form a loop which follows the contours of the limb on its cranio-lateral and caudo-lateral aspects, firmly fixed to the surface of the Robert Jones bandage ([Fig. 4.41](#)). Thin concrete reinforcement rod or similar provides appropriate splinting material.
- It may not be possible to fabricate a splint as described above and a simple alternative is to position a straight splint over the lateral aspect of the limb, extending diagonally from the ground, across the hock to proximal to the stifle ([Fig. 4.42](#)).

Fig. 4.41 [See description in main text].

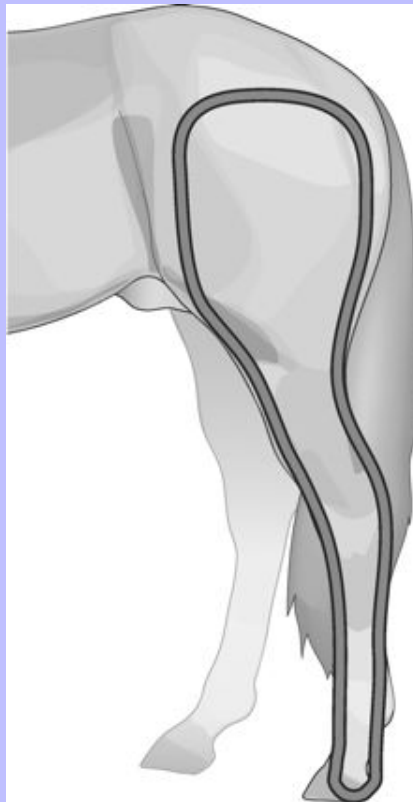
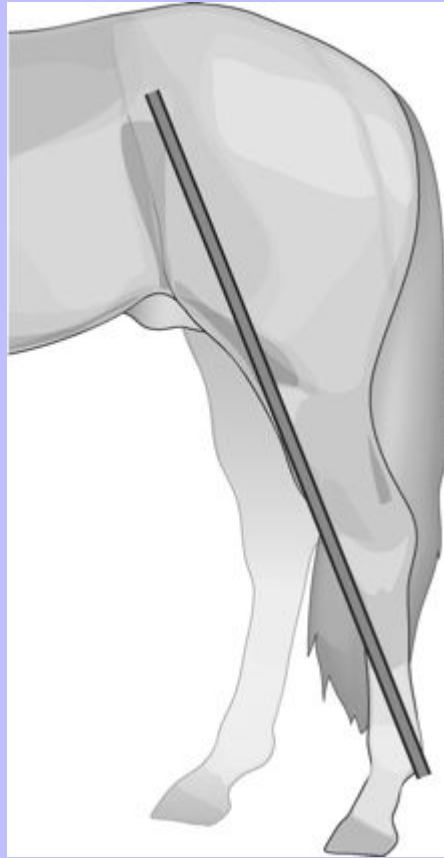


Fig. 4.42 [See description in main text].



340

### 20.3.13 Region IV: Femur

341

It is not possible to immobilise fractures of the femur by external splinting. However, the vast overlying muscle mass will provide a large degree of natural stability and will allow the horse to maintain some functional control over the limb.

#### **Other actions:**

- Support must be provided for the contralateral limb, which will have to bear double the load and hence will be at greater risk of injury. A firm support bandage, extending from the proximal metacarpus/metatarsus to coronary band, should be applied.

The risk of infection must be minimised by appropriate management of any open wounds and administration of systemic antibiotics.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Open wounds should be carefully debrided of obvious contaminants and lavaged with sterile saline or Hartman's solution. (A 1 litre bag of fluids with a small hole cut at the nozzle provides a useful means of lavage.)
- A sterile, hydro gel (Intrasite, Smith and Nephew) or antibiotic ointment should then be lightly applied to the wound. Sterile, non-adherent dressings (Allevyn, Melonin, Smith and Nephew) should be laid over the wound.
- If penetration of the skin has occurred, broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage should be started. A combination effective against gram +ve and gram -ve bacteria should be used (e.g. benzyl penicillin, 15 mg/kg, and gentamicin, 3 mg/kg, by intravenous injection).
- Analgesia should be provided in the form of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, alpha-2 agonists (e.g. xylazine) or opiates (e.g. butorphanol, 0.1 mg/kg, Torbugesic, Willows Francis). It is a good idea to discuss the choice of drug with the accepting referral centre as it may affect their anaesthetic protocol.
- Arrange referral to an appropriate centre:
  - make contact by telephone **before** sending case;
  - check on the requirements for transport;
  - write a brief referral note with details of all medication clearly described;
  - instruct owners to contact insurance company as soon as possible.

### 20.3.13.1 Transportation

- Horses will sometimes panic when first attempting to move after a large bandage and/or splints have been applied, especially to the hind limbs. They need to be given additional support at this time and someone holding the tail, in addition to one or two assistants on the head will greatly increase its stability.
- The horse should be moved the minimum distance (i.e. the transport vehicle should be brought as close as possible to the animal). Foals should be carried wherever possible.
- Lorries tend to provide a more stable ride than trailers but usually have a higher and steeper ramp. If loading/unloading facilities are available this should not be a problem. If a trailer is used it should be of the wider variety, ideally have rear- and front-loading doors and should have long, gently sloping ramps.
- **Horses with an injury to a fore limb should be loaded facing rearwards and those with a hind limb injury, forwards** (during transportation acceleration of the vehicle is more controllable than braking and hence the forces tend to be greatest on the forward-facing limbs).
- During transport the horse should be strictly confined with chest and rump bars or chains and partitions to squeeze it into as limited space as possible. This will minimise the effort required by the horse to maintain its balance and may provide it with an opportunity to rest. The horse should be tied with a generous length of free lead rope to allow it to use its head and neck to maintain balance.

341

342

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Modern ambulance trailers are becoming more readily available. These have the good features described above together with a broad belly-band to provide additional support for the horse in transit).

### 20.3.14 Tendon lacerations

- Partial or complete severance of tendons is a relatively frequent complication following lacerations to the distal limb in the horse. The tendons are relatively exposed and the surrounding soft tissues afford little protection. Such injuries most frequently occur at exercise and may be the consequence of interference between limbs or contact with a sharp object such as a flint or wooden stake etc.
- Damage to extensor tendons carries a relatively good prognosis and usually requires standard wound management with no attempt being made to repair the severed tendon.
- Lacerations to flexor structures (superficial digital flexor tendon, *SDF*, deep digital flexor tendon, *DDF*, or suspensory apparatus) are far more serious and carry a guarded prognosis. These structures are an essential component of the load-bearing apparatus of the limb and their failure may result in its partial or complete collapse.

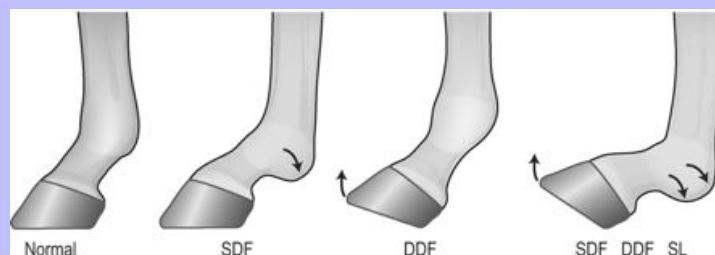
#### 20.3.14.1 Signs

- Clinical signs vary depending on the structures affected.
- The size of the skin wound correlates **poorly** with prognosis: a penetrating object which creates only a stab in the skin could well result in complete severance of both superficial and deep digital flexor tendons.
- When vital flexor structures have been involved lameness is usually severe (with the horse reluctant to bear weight on the limb).
- The stance adopted by the limb will reflect the structures involved (Fig. 4.43).

#### 20.3.14.2 First aid

Continued attempts by the horse to weight bear on the affected limb will result in increased tension in the damaged structures leading to further injury. First aid is directed towards minimising these detrimental forces.

Fig. 4.43 Position adopted by digit in various traumatic injuries involving the supportive structures.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

By straightening the distal limb so that the dorsal cortices of the phalanges are all vertical and in axial alignment all weight-bearing loads are removed from the flexor structures.

### Application:

- Open wounds should be managed as described above.
- The limb should then be bandaged and splinted as described for **region I** above.
- Antibiotic and analgesic therapy should be administered as described previously.

**It should be noted that attempts to reduce strains in the flexor structures by raising the heels of the foot are misdirected and contraindicated (Fig. 4.44).**

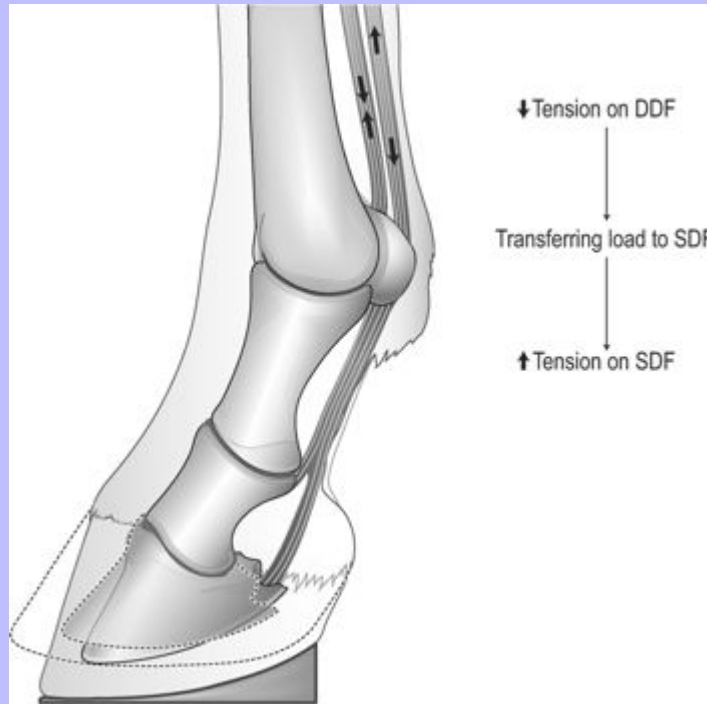
### 20.3.15 Penetration of synovial structures

- Diarthrodial joints, tendon sheaths and bursae rely on the lubricant properties of synovial fluid to achieve their functional requirements. Consequently they exist as separate compartments lined with a synovial membrane to produce and contain synovial fluid.
- Synovial fluid provides a medium within which many bacteria can flourish. In addition, the relative avascularity of synovial cavities renders bacterial infections within them functionally protected from normal immunological defence mechanisms.
- The inflammatory reaction that occurs within a synovial structure secondary to bacterial infection results in the production of destructive enzymes, which are extremely damaging to associated tissues (in particular articular cartilage). Unchecked these secondary effects of infection can rapidly lead to irreversible tissue damage and permanent functional impairment of the structure involved.
- The prevention of these potentially life-threatening complications relies on **early** diagnosis and implementation of appropriate treatment (consisting of systemic antibiotics and debridement/lavage of the structure involved). The prognosis for successful resolution decreases dramatically with increased time interval between injury and institution of appropriate treatment.
- In adult horses the most common route of infection of synovial structures is direct contamination following trauma.
- The risk of bacterial contamination of a synovial structure (joint, tendon sheath or bursa) **must** be considered with **any** laceration or penetrating wound in its proximity.

343

344

Fig. 4.44 Effect of heel elevation on the tension in the flexor tendons.



### 20.3.15.1 First aid

The risk of involvement of deeper structures must be evaluated for each injury, therefore knowledge of relevant anatomy is important.

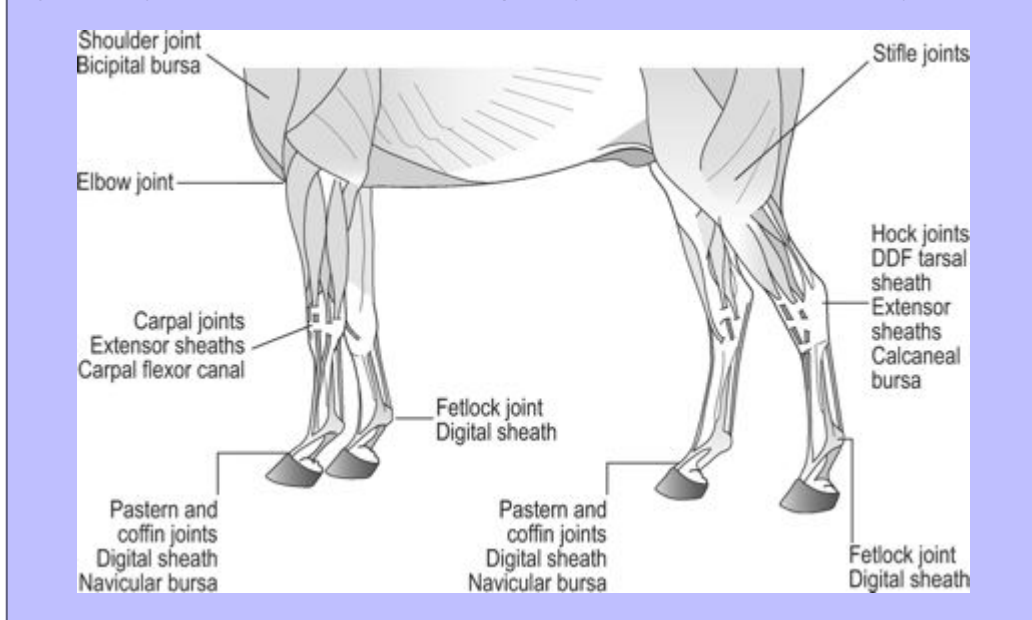
Synovial structures more frequently affected include (Fig. 4.45):

- Distal limb joints.
- Carpal and tarsal joints.
- Elbow joint.
- Flexor digital sheath.
- Flexor tarsal sheath.

344



Fig. 4.45 Synovial structures most frequently involved in traumatic injuries.



Deep wounds in the proximity of these structures should be treated with suspicion. Signs suggestive of their involvement may include:

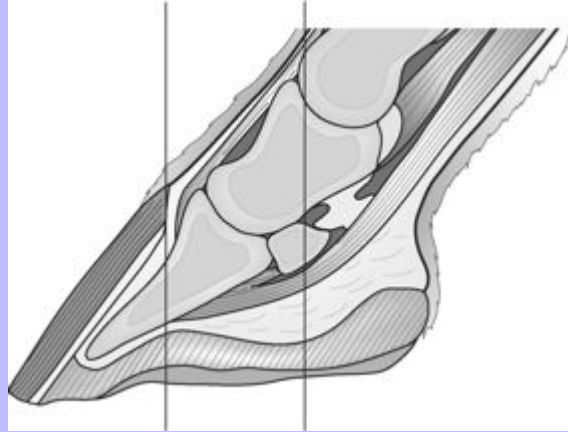
- Variable lameness.
- Synovial fluid leaking from the wound (may be visible as a spurt when the joint is flexed).
- Distension of the joint/sheath at a point remote from the initial injury.
- In severe lacerations articular cartilage or tendon within the sheath may be visible.

If there is serious concern that a synovial structure is involved the horse **must** be admitted or referred for further investigation. Wounds should be lightly debrided, lavaged and bandaged as described previously. Antibiotic and analgesic therapy similar to that already discussed should be considered.

### 20.3.15.2 Puncture wounds to the sole of the foot

- Penetration of the sole of a horse's foot by a sharp object is potentially life threatening. Contamination of the navicular bursa or distal inter-phalangeal joint may result in infection that is refractory to treatment and rapidly leads to irreversible damage to associated structures. Therefore all such injuries **must** be treated seriously.
- To stage the relative risk of penetrating injury the foot can be divided anatomically into three regions (Fig. 4.46).

Fig. 4.46 Regions of the foot with respect to sole penetrations.



Penetrations in the **mid third** of the foot run the greatest risk of:

1. Contaminating the navicular bursa.
2. Contaminating the distal inter-phalangeal joint.
3. Damaging the deep digital flexor tendon.
4. Damaging the navicular bone.

The risk of complicating injuries is determined also by depth/direction of penetration.

**Often the owner will have removed the penetrating object (nail etc.) before you arrive. If so, get them to keep it and to describe to you the depth and direction of penetration. If it is still in the foot, try and radiograph the digit with the object in situ.**

If from the site, depth and direction of penetration there is deemed to be a serious risk that a vital structure may have been affected, further investigations are indicated.

Prognosis for successful resolution of septic navicular bursitis decreases dramatically with increased interval between injury and onset of treatment. If there is serious concern that the navicular bursa, or associated structures, may have been penetrated the horse should be admitted or referred as soon as possible for further investigations.

### 20.3.16 Neurological injury

- Traumatic injury to the central nervous system (CNS) is relatively common in the horse.
- CNS trauma can result from collisions, penetrating wounds or falls. Severe cranial trauma is more likely in falls in which the horse rears over backwards, striking its occipital or parietal bones.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Injuries involving the brain stem may result in cardiovascular abnormalities, which can be rapidly fatal.
- Clinical signs vary widely in severity depending on the location and magnitude of the injury.
- Signs may increase or decrease in severity with time depending on subsequent pathophysiological changes within the damaged tissues. Ischaemia secondary to vascular disruption or small vessel thrombosis can lead to the release of inflammatory mediators resulting in further tissue damage, oedema and additional vascular compromise (in a vicious circle).

### 20.3.16.1 Evaluation

- Initial evaluation must be directed towards the most life-threatening factors: **airway, breathing, cardiovascular function**.
- A brief, but thorough, physical examination should be conducted for external signs of trauma.
- A neurological examination should then be performed in order to determine the location and, if possible, the extent of CNS damage.

### 20.3.16.2 Cranial trauma

Horses with cranial trauma should be evaluated for level of consciousness, cranial nerve deficits (especially pupil size, symmetry and response), alterations in respiratory pattern, posture and motor function:

- Coma, rigid extension of all four limbs, abnormal respiratory patterns, bilateral dilated pupils to hopeless prognoses.

### 20.3.16.3 Spinal trauma

Following close examination of the head, horses with spinal trauma should be subjected to a systematic neurological examination including evaluation of the gait and posture, neck and fore limbs, trunk and hind limbs, and tail and anus.

- A recumbent horse should be observed for the ability to rise:
  - If only able to raise head → cranial cervical lesion;
  - Head and neck but not thoracic limbs → C4–T2;
  - Able to achieve dog-sitting posture → caudal to T2.
- Upper and lower motor neurone lesions should be differentiated:
  - Flaccid paralysis with hypo- or areflexia → lower motor neurone;
  - Increased muscle tone, hyperactive spinal reflexes → upper motor neurone;
- Spinal reflexes may be evaluated by testing the response to pinching the distal extremity and observing flexion of the joints in the fore limb and patellar and flexor reflexes in the hind limb.

347

348

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Absence of cognitive response to pain stimulus suggests a loss of sensory pathways and is a poor prognostic indicator.

### 20.3.16.4 First aid

- Initial efforts should be directed to controlling life-threatening complications (although there may be little you can do).
- Sedation may be required in order to perform a clinical examination (xylazine, 0.1-0.15 mg/kg IV; 0.2-0.5 mg/kg IM).
- Convulsions may be controlled with diazepam (10-30 mg IV for foal; up to 200 mg for adult).
- Dexamethasone (0.1-0.2 mg/kg IV two to three times daily) is indicated to control inflammation and neural oedema and for the treatment of shock.

#### 20.3.16.4.0.0.1 Note:

This drug carries the risk of causing laminitis but its beneficial actions in the treatment of CNS trauma warrant this risk.

- Open wounds should be debrided and covered with sterile dressings.
- Broad-spectrum antimicrobial cover should be initiated as soon as possible e.g. trimethoprim-sulphadiazine (sulfadiazine) (15 mg/kg IV).
- Tetanus prophylaxis must be ensured.
- Neurological case should be moved with great care – ataxia or motor dysfunction may predispose to further falls which could exacerbate the injury.
- Transport considerations are similar to those already discussed. Loading and transport of recumbent horses is really only practicable in a specialised ambulance trailer.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 21 Section 8 Clinical techniques

349

#### 21.1 ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

The most useful lead configuration is BASE–APEX: this arrangement is less affected by movement and respiration.

RA (Right Arm): Right jugular groove 1/3 up neck.

LA (Left Arm) : Left lower thorax at apex beat (intercostal space 6).

RL (Right Leg): EARTH (any place remote but best to make equilateral triangle with other two, e.g. at withers).

1. Record 1 mV standard (ensure sensitivity is lowest possible at start).
2. Select speed (25 mm/sec) – useful to have one section at 50 mm/sec.
3. Select 'LEAD I'.
4. Select: RUN.

Table 4.7 Normal values

		P-wave duration (msec)	P-R interval (msec)	QRS duration (msec)	Q-T interval (msec)
Horse	Mean	140	330	130	510
	Range	(80–200)	(220–60)	80–170	320–640
Pony	Mean	100	217	78	462
	Range	85–106	209–226	66–86	420–483

From: Hilwig RW (1987) Cardiac arrhythmias. In: NE Robinson, ed. Current Therapy in Equine Medicine, Volume 2. WB Saunders, Philadelphia.

##### 21.1.1 Note:

1. Superimposed 50 mHz pattern from mains lights (fluorescent tubes etc.) or from mains supply if instrument is not effectively earthed – use 'EMG' filter and/or internal batteries.
2. EARTH electrode is important. If not effective wandering of base line with/without movement and inordinate 50 Hz interference are produced.
3. Ensure good gel/spirit contact at all sites (spirit contact will dry quickly).
  - **KEEP ACCURATE RECORDS AND RELEVANT ECG TRACE.**
  - **CLEARLY IDENTIFIED/DATED with technical data written onto trace (sensitivity/speed/power source/lead arrangement – particularly if other than normal).**

349

350

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 21.1.2 Interpretation

The following represent the parameters which are recorded at Liverpool University for routine ECG interpretation in the horse:

1. PULSE RATE = ?/min HEART RATE = ?/min

PULSE DEFICIT: YES/NO

2. JUGULAR PULSE: YES/NO

Description:

3. MUCOUS MEMBRANE COLOUR:

4. CRT = ?sec

5. GENERALISED SIGNS OF CHF? YES/NO

List:

6. Objective questions from ECG:

- Is there a P for QRS?
- Is there a QRS for every P?
- Are all the complexes the same?
- Are F waves present?
- Any pauses/irregularities?
- Any S-T slurring/depression?

7. Comments/diagnosis:

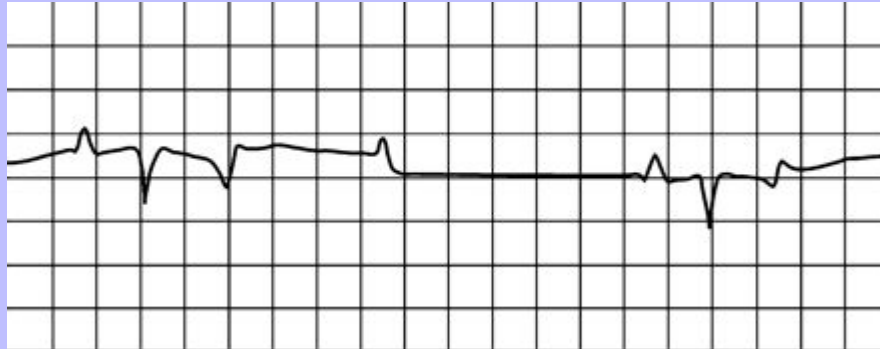
350

Fig. 4.47 Normal ECG trace obtained from a fit Thoroughbred horse.

351

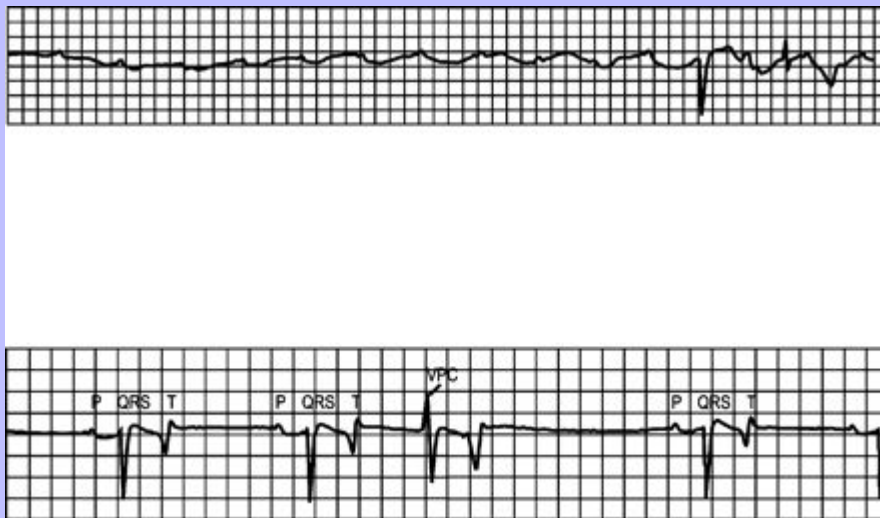


Fig. 4.48 Normal ECG trace obtained from a fit Thoroughbred horse showing common (benign) second-degree heart block.



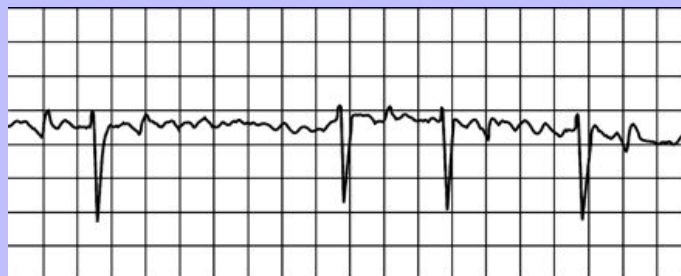
351

Fig. 4.49 ECG trace from third-degree (complete) heart block.



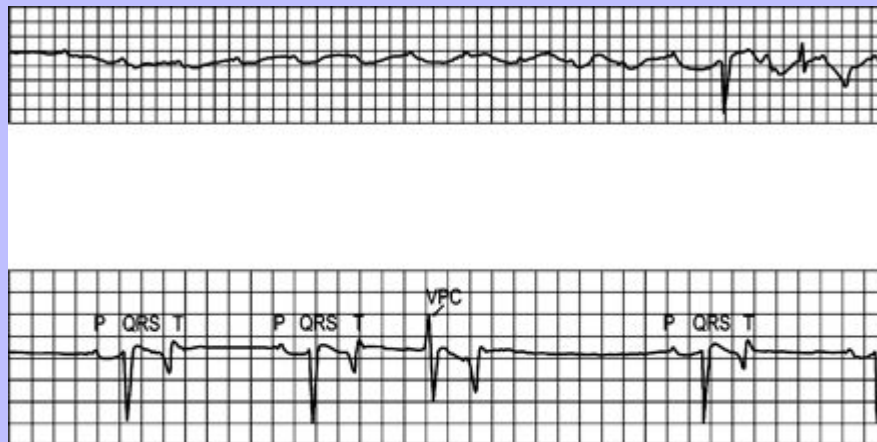
352

Fig. 4.50 ECG trace obtained from a case of atrial fibrillation.



352

Fig. 4.51 (Bottom) Complete A-V block – P waves are visible (arrows) and ventricular contractions are occurring at a much slower rate and completely independently. (Top) ECG trace showing ventricular premature contractions



## 21.1.2.1 NOTES:

(The following pages are blank to allow reader to stick any significant ECG traces here for future reference with the diagnosis given by a cardiologist – you may not have to consult with him/her on another case!)

## 21.1.3 Foetal electrocardiograph

**This is an effective method for determining the viability of a foal (in the later stages of pregnancy only).**

It is vitally important to establish the mare's normal electrocardiographic activity before attempting this procedure. It is probably impossible to eliminate the mare's ECG from the trace and the detectable activity from the foal is usually very faint. Record this according to the method described above.

Most useful lead configuration is BASE–APEX taken across the abdomen (less affected by maternal activity).

RA (Right Arm): Right sublumbar fossa.

LA (Left Arm): Ventral midline.

RL (Right Leg): EARTH (any place remote but best in perineum or in left sublumbar fossa).



Fig. 4.52 (top) ECG trace taken from a pregnant mare in the last trimester of pregnancy. (bottom) Foetal ECG trace showing the faint recordings of the foetal activity (F) with the more obvious maternal activity (M). The foetal rate is approximately 130 b.p.m. while the maternal rate is approximately 40 b.p.m.



356

357

1. Switch on all available filters and preferably use internal battery power for procedure to avoid interference.
2. Record 1 mV standard (ensure sensitivity is highest possible at start).
3. Select speed (25 mm/sec) – useful to have one section at 50 mm/sec.
4. Select 'LEAD I'.
5. Select RUN.

It may be necessary to adjust the position of the electrodes as the position/location of the foal may vary – even side of pregnancy may be important.

357

### 21.2 PASSAGE OF NASOGASTRIC TUBE

There are significant risks in the process of nasogastric intubation that can be almost entirely eliminated if appropriate care and precautions are taken. The procedure can be complicated by conditions that preclude swallowing such as pharyngeal paralysis or grass sickness, or when the oesophagus is obstructed or damaged.

**Note: It is extremely difficult to pass an orogastric tube and indeed there are few circumstances when that is required.**

#### 21.2.1 Procedure

- The horse **MUST** be properly restrained (ideally in stocks). Sedation or twitching may be needed but these sometimes add to the difficulty.
- A suitable size of tube should be used for the size of the horse; also the condition may dictate the type and size of tube to be used.
- Over-small tubes may kink and may not trigger a swallow when the tube arrives in the pharynx.
- Excessively large tubes will inevitably cause nasal trauma.
- Some plastic tubes are very rigid when cold so it may be useful to warm the tube slightly. Over-softening can, however, make the procedure more difficult.
- The end of the tube must be lubricated slightly with a suitable water-soluble inert jelly.
- The tube is inserted into the ventral meatus of the nose with the curve directed in a downwards direction so that the end slides smoothly along the ventral meatus.
- Passage along the middle meatus will usually result in impact with the delicate ethmoidal region and a heavy nosebleed is the inevitable result.
- The horse's neck should be flexed as the tube reaches the pharynx and as the horse swallows the tube is gently but firmly advanced into the oesophagus.

The position of the tube can be checked by:

1. Direct observation of the left upper jugular groove – the tube can be seen readily in most normal horses as it passes down the oesophagus.
  2. If the tube is in the trachea it cannot be seen in the jugular furrow and it may rattle inside the trachea. The horse **MAY** also cough although this is not a regular event.
  3. Blowing and sucking on the end of the tube is also a useful discriminator.
- The tube is correctly located in the oesophagus when the operator can blow but not suck on the tube.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- If the tube is in the trachea the operator can blow and suck on the tube.

- If the tube is kinked then neither blowing nor sucking is possible.

358

- Once satisfied that the tube is correctly located, it is advanced gently until it reaches the stomach. Gas or fluid may exit the tube – both are obviously gastric in nature.

359

- The tube should always be removed smoothly and slowly especially as it passes back through the pharynx.

### 21.2.2 Potential complications

1. **Resentment to passage attempts with rearing or stamping.** This should be controlled by sedation – sometimes a twitch will make matters worse in these individuals.
2. **Failure to enter the oesophagus.** This can be a part of the disease entity and is possible also if the patient is sedated. It also occurs if the tube is not handled correctly during the procedure. The neck should be flexed to ensure a suitable pharyngeal stimulus to swallowing is obtained.
3. **Nasal haemorrhage:** This occurs occasionally even with good technique but is then usually minimal. Where errors of placement result in severe ethmoid damage haemorrhage is usually severe. Most cases will stop eventually but it can be highly alarming and is a considerable hindrance to continued investigation. Occasionally haemorrhage occurs when the horse moves suddenly through no fault of the operator. Haemorrhage can also occur when the tube is withdrawn too quickly.
4. **Rupture of the pharynx** is an extremely rare event and is usually associated with poor-quality tubes or with sharp, damaged tubes.
5. **Oesophageal rupture** is even more rare. Usually if this occurs there is existing pathology such as necrosis or severe obstruction.
6. **Pharyngeal kinking** with delivery of the tube into the oral cavity. This can result if there is an early strong stimulus to swallowing and poor timing of the tube delivery. It can also occur with use of a small-diameter tube.
7. **Gastric knotting of the tube.** This rare event can occur if an excessively long length of tube is introduced into the stomach. This is a disaster that is almost impossible to resolve. It is useful to measure the tube and to use only tubes of suitable length for the horse.

### 21.3 PLACEMENT OF A SUBPALPEBRAL LAVAGE SYSTEM

Placement of a subpalpebral lavage system is an extremely useful therapeutic procedure. It permits medication of a horse with a painful eye or when there is patient resistance/objection and also precludes any rough handling that might be detrimental to the health of the damaged eye. It is a simple procedure that is under-utilised in practice.

#### 21.3.1 Procedure

- Sedation is essential in all cases.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Motor nerve blockade of the upper lid via an auriculopalpebral nerve block prevents blepharospasm of the upper eyelid and allows the eye to be examined without any force being applied.

359

- Sensory nerve block of the upper lid is essential and can be achieved by use of a frontal nerve block.

360

- It is essential also to anaesthetise the conjunctiva by instilling proxymetacaine or proparacaine into the conjunctival sac some 3-5 minutes before placement of the lavage system begins.

### 21.3.1.0.0.1 Note:

**The procedure cannot be performed without appropriate motor and sensory blockade – if necessary a general anaesthetic may be needed.**

- Once the effect of the nerve blocks has been confirmed a plastic disposable tongue depressor is introduced into the upper fornix of the conjunctival sac to protect the eye from damage during the procedure.
- The trochar/introducer is inserted into the conjunctival sac and the sharp point is gently run outwards to locate the rim of the orbit. It is then advanced through the conjunctiva, muscles of the eyelid and skin to emerge dorsolaterally.
- Depending on the system used the lavage catheter is drawn behind (or through) the trochar so that the footplate is pulled into the dorsolateral fornix of the conjunctival sac.
- The tube is glued to the skin of the upper eyelid and led away between the ears and down the mane (plaiting the mane provided suitable restraint for the catheter but it is sometimes helpful to suture the catheter in position).
- The delivery port is fastened onto the end of the tube and the lavage medication introduced at appropriate intervals.

### 21.3.1.1 Note:

**The subpalpebral lavage systems can be fitted from the lower lid (usually laterally) but while this may be more convenient in some respects the surface distribution of medications is not ideal.**

### 21.3.2 Potential complications

1. **Infection:** this should not occur but as it is almost impossible to sterilise the conjunctival sac, it does occasionally occur. Most cases are due to poor or sloppy technique.
2. **Ulceration of the cornea:** Poor placement of the conjunctival flange with a slack tube within the conjunctival sac can result in significant iatrogenic ulceration. This is an unacceptable complication and the tube should be removed and relocated.
3. **Fracture of the tube:** This may be manageable if the conjunctival/palpebral component is intact.

360

### 21.4 PARACENTESIS ABDOMINIS

#### 21.4.1 Procedure

- Clip/prepare midline, midway between umbilicus and xiphoid (most dependent part).
- Identify site of fluid pocket using linear ultrasound scanner (7.5 MHz).
- EITHER:
  - (a) Use 19 g 2" hypodermic needle thrust through linea alba. Twist and withdraw slightly and/or turn hub to encourage flow.
  - OR:
  - (b) Use guarded No 11 scalpel blade to make stab incision through skin to depth of about 1 cm into linea alba. Carefully thrust test cannula through linea alba.
- Collect into EDTA and plain and sterile plain tubes (twisting needle/cannula often helps).
- Assess colour, viscosity, and clarity immediately.
- Submit the specimen to laboratory for cytology (white cell count/differential cytology) and protein analysis (if required sterile sample for bacteriology placed in biphasic (blood) culture medium immediately).

#### 21.4.1.1 Comments:

1. Sampling from very young foals can be very difficult – the intestinal wall is often very fragile/thin and is easily damaged. In these cases it is a wise precaution to identify a pocket of fluid by ultrasonographic examination and insert the needle directly into the pocket.
2. Fat horses may be difficult to sample – may need a long needle, e.g. 7.5 cm spinal needle but this is also much more dangerous and less controllable.
3. Horses with severe/significant abdominal distension should not be sampled – risk of abdominal puncture and leakage. The risk of leakage in normal horses is low but is present.

#### 21.4.2 Potential complications

1. **Local infection in abdominal wall:** This is simply a matter of technique and ensuring asepsis.
2. **Perforation of intestine by needle or cannula.** This is rare but it is a significant possibility.
3. **Inadvertent entry into the gut with ingesta delivered via the paracentesis.** If this occurs the needle must be removed and relocated. Repeated puncture is a potentially harmful situation.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

4. **Bowel rupture** caused by movement of distended gut over the sharp end of the needle. This is probably unavoidable but is more likely if there is a distended viscus.

361

5. **Peritonitis:** This can arise from dirty technique or from bowel leakage into the peritoneal cavity.

362

### 21.4.2.1 Note:

**Most complications can be avoided by a combination of careful case selection (there is no point in performing this if the case is definitely going to surgery anyway) and by use of ultrasonographic guidance to identify a suitable pocket of fluid in a safe location.**

## 21.5 PARACENTESIS THORACIS

### 21.5.1 Procedure

- Prepare site on **both** sides (always tap both) at 7-9th I–C space at level of point of shoulder.
- Identify suitable pocket of fluid using ultrasound (preferably sector scanner).
- Local analgesia at site and stab incision in skin.
- Use trochar and cannula or 10 G I IV catheter, or 16 G needle as appropriate (all with three-way tap or one-way (Heimlich) valve). Insert off anterior edge of rib.
- Collect into plain sterile, EDTA and plain tubes.
- Assess quantity, colour, clarity, and odour immediately.
- Submit to laboratory for cytology, bacteriology and protein analysis. If bacteriology required place sample in biphasic (blood) culture bottle immediately.

### 21.5.1.1 Comments:

1. The pleural cavities of young horses are usually separated but become contiguous with age or with any degrees of pleural cavity infection/inflammation.
2. It is entirely possible that an old horse might have separated pleural cavities – therefore both sides should always be sampled – there may be significant differences in content, which might be very useful.

### 21.5.2 Potential complications

1. **Pneumothorax:** this can be avoided by correct technique and it is unlikely to occur except when no consideration is given to the maintenance of the pleural negative pressure. Puncture of the lung can also cause some degree of pneumothorax. Repeated punctures should be avoided. (Ultrasonography may help to identify a safe location.)
2. **Infection:** This can usually be avoided by careful asepsis throughout the procedure.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

3. **Haemothorax:** This is a very unusual event although cardiac puncture could occur it reflects very poor placement and poor technique.

362

### 21.6 TRANSTRACHEAL WASH/ASPIRATE

363

#### 21.6.1 Equipment

There are commercially available tracheal aspiration kits that are designed for this purpose and which include all the instruments required. Alternatively the following can be used:

- Suitable clipping/surgical scrub materials.
- Local anaesthetic agent (e.g. 2 mL mepivacaine solution).
- 10-12 gauge intravenous catheter or a small (sheep) trochar and cannula.
- Male dog urinary catheter (suitable to pass down the IV cannula).
- Syringes and saline solution.

#### 21.6.2 Procedure

- Clip/prepare site  $\frac{2}{3}$  down the neck. The trachea is usually palpable subcutaneously in the midline.
- Local anaesthetic agent (5-10 mL 2% lidocaine (lignocaine) hydrochloride for example) is injected in/under the skin in midline and between rings at selected site (tracheal rings easily palpable under skin).
- Pass wide gauge ( $\geq 12$  G cannula or a fine metal trochar and cannula) between rings into trachea (downward) and remove needle (be careful not to damage far side of trachea!) – leaving cannula directed downwards.
- Pass long flexible catheter (e.g. 16/18 G dog urinary catheter) downwards until cough induced (end of catheter now at carina).
- Introduce 20-40 mL sterile phosphate buffered saline (PBS).
- Immediately aspirate into sterile syringe while withdrawing catheter slightly (fluid accumulations at the thoracic inlet are sampled). Repeat the aspiration several times to obtain an effective harvest of fluid.
- Collect sample in plain sterile, EDTA and plain tubes.
- Submit to lab for bacteriology, cytology (if bacteriology is required place appropriate sample in transport medium or use blood culture (biphasic medium)).

#### 21.6.2.1 Comments:

1. Do not use a needle as a cannula, it may cut the catheter in half and leave a piece in the trachea!

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

2. A fine sheep trochar and cannula can also be used and has the added advantage of being firm and it cannot therefore be displaced/misdirected (upwards) by coughing. A stab incision through the skin with a scalpel blade is sometimes needed though!
3. Risks of procedure are minimal – localised infection at tracheal site is rare when due care is taken to ensure sterile technique.
4. Check first with laboratory on handling requirements – transport/postage causes marked degeneration of sample – laboratory may advise you to filter the sample through a gauze swab or to make smears immediately.

363

### 21.6.3 Potential complications

364

1. **Local infection** at site of catheter placement.
2. **Leakage of air from site** into subcutaneous tissues with localised emphysema.
3. **Chondroma formation** resulting from cartilage damage from poor placement.

364

### 21.7 BRONCHO-ALVEOLAR LAVAGE (BAL)

365

#### 21.7.1 Procedure

It is common practice to sedate the horse before performing this technique. This is less distressing for the horse and reduces the risk of coughing during the procedure.

##### 1. With BAL catheter (Foggarty catheter):

- Standing sedation (alpha-2 agonists and butorphanol are useful).
- Pass BAL catheter ('Foggarty BAL catheter', Bivona, USA) (available from Irish Equine Centre, Johnstown, Naas, Co Kildare, Ireland) into trachea (via ventral nasal meatus).
- Introduce as far as possible to wedge in airway (inflate cuff if present).
- Introduce 100-300 mL sterile phosphate buffered saline (PBS) under gentle pressure (lower volumes are now preferred).

##### 2. Via endoscope:

- This procedure is much easier but requires a very long endoscope (2 metres is the minimum effective length).
- Standing sedation (alpha-2 agonists and butorphanol are useful).
- Pass endoscope into the trachea via the ventral nasal meatus.
- Select the best site/side from clinical observations.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Introduce as far as possible to wedge in airway.
- Introduce 100-300 mL sterile phosphate buffered saline (PBS) under gentle pressure (low volumes are now preferred).

Withdraw fluid into sterile plain, plain and EDTA tubes (expect to harvest 50% of original volume used – sometimes less). A successful BAL is indicated by the presence of froth in the aspirate. Submit for cytology, bacteriology (transport medium or biphasic (blood) culture medium).

### 21.7.1.1 Comments:

1. Cease if coughing is severe.
2. Some horses are dull and may cough for 1-2 days following the procedure – lower volumes safer – fewer side effects.
3. Some horses are febrile for 24-48 hours after procedure.
4. May be performed using sheathed BAL catheter using an endoscope or via endoscope introduced until wedged.
5. Sterility of all equipment is important. It is very unwise to use the same apparatus for a second horse without full sterilisation first. Infectious respiratory disease can be severe if introduced directly into the lungs.
6. Check with laboratory before sending – delays may affect results and laboratory may want you to filter or otherwise prepare the sample prior to dispatch.
7. A successful washing is indicated by the presence of a foamy aspirate (suggestive of surfactant).
8. NORMAL washing contains alveolar macrophages, few degenerate neutrophils, epithelial/alveolar cells.

### 21.7.2 Potential complications

1. **Pulmonary infection** arising from non-sterile equipment or from retrograde infection during passage of catheter or scope.
2. **Many horses develop a transient fever** 24-72 hours after the procedure.
3. **Nasal or pulmonary haemorrhage** (very rare).

365

### 21.8 COLLECTION OF CEREBROSPINAL Fluid

366

Cerebrospinal fluid may be collected from:

- Atlanto-occipital site (fluid obtained from the cisterna magna).
- Lumbosacral site (fluid obtained from the sub-arachnoid space).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

Collection from either site has significant difficulties and requires special precautions. Full aseptic precautions should be used at both sites. Emergency procedures should be available to control convulsions or collapse (in standing sampling).

### 21.8.1 Procedure

#### 1. Collection via the atlanto-occipital site:

- General anaesthesia is obligatory. The horse is placed in lateral recumbency. The area over the occipito-atlanto-axial region is clipped and prepared for aseptic surgery.
- The site of entry is located in the midline at the centre of a triangle formed by the cranial margins of the wings of the atlas and the caudal extent of the nuchal crest (occipital protuberance).
- A 7.5 cm ( $\times 1.2$  mm) stilette spinal needle is introduced in the midline exactly perpendicular to the long axis of the spine and parallel to the ground. It is essential that the needle is precisely placed to remain in the midline plane.
- The needle is advanced for some 5-6 cm until a faint 'pop' is felt and resistance to introduction is much reduced. The stilette is then removed and the hub observed for egress of clear fluid.
- If no fluid is obtained the position should be carefully checked and the needle can be advanced slightly and rotated through  $90^\circ$  until fluid is obtained.
- If no fluid is obtained after two attempts the stilette is replaced and the procedure repeated from the start. Usually if fluid is not obtained the position or depth are wrong.
- As soon as fluid is seen at the needle hub a three-way tap is placed on the needle and closed to prevent excessive loss of pressure and fluid. A sample can then be obtained into a sterile syringe by slow aspiration. Free flow samples are usually safe so long as the intracranial pressure is normal.
- The needle is then withdrawn.

#### 2. Collection via the sacrolumbar site (subarachnoid space):

- This procedure can be performed in the standing horse. Indeed it is probably easier to perform in the standing, firmly restrained horse (stocks are essential). Sedation may be required but excessive ataxia can make accurate placement more difficult.
- The skin over the lumbosacral space is clipped and prepared aseptically. (Note: The dorsal spines of L6 and S1 are usually not palpable – they are shorter than those on either side.)
- A small dermal and subcutaneous bleb of local anaesthetic is placed at the site and a small stab incision is made with a scalpel.
- A stilette 15 cm spinal needle ( $\times 1.2$  mm) is introduced in the midline immediately caudal to the dorsal spine of L6.

366

367

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- In most horses the ideal site is on the line joining the cranial edges of the two tuber sacrale and cranial to a line joining the caudal edges of the two tuber coxae.
- The needle is advanced exactly in the midline and exactly vertically (an assistant is useful in correcting the angle).
- The needle can be advanced with little resistance up to 12-13 cm (9-10 cm for ponies). A firm resistance is felt as the needle penetrates the dorsal inter-arcuate ligament.
- Loss of resistance and often a slight jerk from the horse (or tail movement) is felt and fluid usually issues from the needle as the stylet is withdrawn.
- Flow is sometimes sluggish and a needle aspiration may be helpful.
- If bone is felt or if no fluid is obtained then the needle should be withdrawn almost completely before starting again.
- The needle is withdrawn as soon as a suitable sample is obtained.

The fluid is observed immediately for evidence of colour change or cloudiness (it should be water clear).  
Samples of the fluid are placed in:

1. Blood culture medium (for bacteriological examination).
2. EDTA (for cytology).
3. Plain tubes (for biochemical analysis).

### 21.8.2 Potential complications

1. **Infection** (avoided largely by aseptic technique).
2. **Haemorrhage** due to vascular trauma within subdural space (potentially dangerous but also complicates analysis).
3. **Rapid drop in CSF pressure with herniation of brain** (avoided by ensuring use of fine needle with tap).
4. **Convulsions on recovery** (avoided by use of anticonvulsants for recovery period and possibly over ensuing 24 hours).

367

### 21.9 BIOPSY

368

#### 21.9.1 Bone marrow biopsy aspirate

Bone marrow aspiration is under-utilised and is a useful method of investigation of non-regenerative anaemia because juvenile red cells are confined to the marrow. Reticulocytes are not present in circulating blood.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

21.9.1.1

### Procedure

- Full asepsis essential.
- Best site is in the mid line, in the mid sternum region where the outer cortex of the sternebrae is thin.
- Alternative sites include: wing of ilium, rib (both of these are more difficult).
- Use bone-marrow punch (can sometimes use 12/14 G needle but inclined to break off) and aspirate using 20 mL syringe.
  - (i) AVOID excessive pressure for long periods.
  - (ii) Large blood flow undesirable (marrow difficult to find!).
- Collect into EDTA (with egg albumin) and make smear immediately (fix immediately with alcohol).
- For bone marrow biopsy use biopsy needle and place bone marrow core biopsy directly into formal saline.
- Stain Giemsa (1:100 for 24 hours OR Leishman's or Wright–Giemsa).

21.9.1.2

### Interpretation

- Normal erythropoiesis is suggested by a myeloid:erythroid ratio of less than 1.5 i.e. there are three times as many red cell series cells as white.
- A regenerative response is indicated by a ratio of less than 0.5.
- Bone marrow cytology is very difficult to interpret – do not attempt this unless you have extensive equine experience in this field.
- The megakaryocyte count in the marrow is used to indicate the platelet generation status in cases of low circulating platelet numbers.

21.9.1.2.1

### Comments:

1. Discuss with clinical pathologist before performing technique to ensure suitable handling of sample (some prefer direct smears fixed with alcohol to be sent) but sometimes difficult to extract marrow from sample so suitable carrier medium and rapid transfer are important.
2. Failure to obtain suitable depth of buffy coat means excessive haemorrhage into sample.

21.9.1.3

### Potential complications

1. **Infection** (osteomyelitis).
2. **Penetration through sternebrae into chest.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 3. Haemorrhage (especially if clotting defect is present).

368

#### 21.9.2 Liver biopsy

369

##### 21.9.2.1 Procedure

- Full asepsis is essential.
- RIGHT SIDE is most convenient but low down on the left is also possible where the liver is small.
- Best site = centre of quadrangle formed by:
  - Line from point of elbow to point of hip.
  - Line from point of shoulder to point of hip.
  - 13th rib.
  - 10th rib.
- **Preferably locate and confirm the presence of the liver and its location (depth and direction) by ultrasonography of region (or laparoscopy). The outline of the liver may also be percussible on the right side.**
- Local analgesia of skin and intercostal muscles and pleura.
- Stab incision with No. 11 blade adjacent to cranial edge of rib (BLOOD VESSELS ALONG CAUDAL EDGE).
- Insert 'Tru-Cut' biopsy instrument horizontally and through pleural space on expiration. 'Feel' each anatomical layer as instrument is advanced. Liver capsule is firm and liver usually denser than other tissues.
- Withdraw (open) cutting sheath of instrument and then advance cutting blade firmly without moving inner part.
- Remove sample in closed instrument. Usually not necessary to suture site. Administer antibiotic/tetanus cover.

##### 21.9.2.1.1 Comments:

1. Latest forms of Tru-Cut type biopsy instrument (Cook UK Ltd) have spring-loaded cutting apparatus, which makes procedure much easier but they are expensive. These instruments are recommended because of the ease of use. It is better to get a suitable biopsy first time rather than have repeated attempts.
2. Older-type biopsy needles relying on vacuum are unreliable and may damage tissue sample. They are also much wider.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

The site can be identified by using a long length of string held in the middle at the point of the hip (external angle of ilium) and the two ends drawn forward to the point of the shoulder and the point of the elbow. Counting in from the eighteenth rib is the best method of establishing the position.

21.9.2.1.2

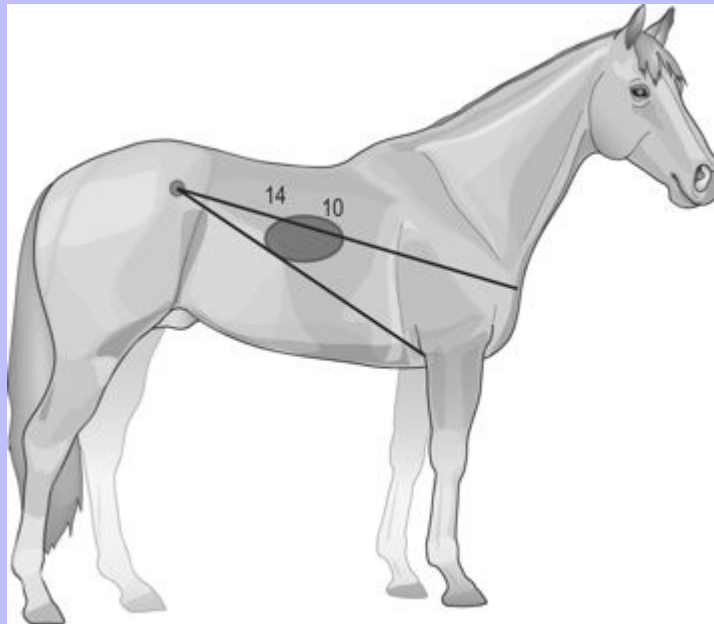
### IMPORTANT:

**The diagram should in no way remove the necessity for positive identification of the location of the liver by percussion, ultrasound, or laparoscopy.**

369

370

Fig. 4.53 Liver biopsy site showing major landmarks.



21.9.2.1.3

### Note:

- (i) Coagulation status should be checked first.
- (ii) If chosen site is further back then instrument needs to be angled progressively more downward and forward and length of instrument needs to be longer. Biopsy taken at the 14th intercostal space requires a much longer instrument, which should be aimed at opposite elbow.
- (iii) Ultrasound guidance should be employed if available (if not available the case might be best referred to a specialist centre). Dubious defence if things go wrong if not used!
- (iv) Failure to obtain biopsy sample after two attempts usually means something is wrong – liver too small, instrument too short, positioning incorrect.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- (v) Puncture of gut is a potentially serious hazard but a single clean puncture is seldom life-threatening.

### 21.9.2.2 Potential complications

1. **Infection** in pleural or peritoneal cavity.
2. **Abdominal haemorrhage**.
3. **Penetration of large colon** with tearing of wall or simple contamination from puncture site.

370

### 21.9.3 Lung biopsy

371

#### 21.9.3.1 Procedure

- Full asepsis essential. RIGHT or LEFT SIDE.
- Best site = level with shoulder joint in 8/9th rib space.
- Site can be confirmed or specifically selected with ultrasound guidance.
- Local anaesthetic in and under skin at site (anterior/cranial edge of rib – BLOOD VESSELS ALONG CAUDAL EDGE).
- Stab incision with small scalpel blade.
- Insert 'Tru-Cut' biopsy instrument horizontally through intercostal muscles and parietal and visceral pleura and into lung (usually about 8 cm is enough distance).
- Withdraw and then advance cutting blade and remove sample in closed instrument.
- Place sample in formol-saline (or in blood-culture medium if culture required).

#### 21.9.3.1.1 Comment

Latest forms of Tru-Cut biopsy instrument have spring-loaded cutting apparatus, which makes procedure much easier but they are very expensive and are 'single use'.

#### 21.9.3.2 Potential complications

1. **Danger of pneumothorax minimal** (but existent).
2. **Some pulmonary bleeding** is almost inevitable – transient epistaxis 1-4 hours later may be seen. Rarely significant but if severe can be life-threatening.
3. **Do not exercise horse for 48 hours (minimum).**

371

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 21.9.4 Skin biopsy

372

#### 21.9.4.1 Procedure

- Clip hair short but DO NOT SHAVE.
- Wash skin gently (do not scrub) and do not use alcohol-based antiseptics.
- Local analgesia (2% lidocaine (lignocaine) without adrenaline (epinephrine)) ring block (well away from selected site) or use regional anaesthesia if practicable.
- Wedge biopsy obtained using scalpel (include normal and lesion tissues). Or use punch biopsy instrument (according to requirements).
- Lesions such as skin nodules, sarcoid, granulation tissue etc. are best biopsied in the centre.
- Shave biopsies are preferred for diagnosis of pemphigus etc. – check with laboratory and if such samples are obtained remember to tell the lab so that appropriate sections can be cut.
- Skin scrapings and groomings (obtained by brushing with a tooth/nail brush onto a piece of cardboard or paper) are also useful for investigation of parasitic/fungal infections (place in brown paper envelope or in sterile universal bottle).
- Ensure that diagnostic tissue is obtained. Several biopsies may be required.

#### 21.9.4.1.1 Comment

Some lesions are dangerous to biopsy by excision – impression smears or swab-based scrapings (squamous cell carcinoma of cornea) or fine-needle aspirates (melanoma) are better in these conditions.

372

### 21.9.5 Rectal biopsy

373

The correlation of pathological disease of the intestine with the findings from a rectal biopsy has been questioned. Rectal biopsy is said to be helpful in the investigation of diarrhoea or weight loss syndromes or where proliferative/infiltrative enteropathy is suspected. However the technique is, at present, the only way a biopsy of any of the intestine can be obtained without laparotomy. The procedure is easily performed on the standing (sedated horse).

#### 21.9.5.1 Procedure

- Sedate and restrain appropriately. It is not necessary to use an epidural anaesthetic for the technique.
- Wash the perineum carefully with antiseptic wash and tie the tail out of the way (preferably within a tail bandage or sleeve).
- Introduce a lightly lubricated gloved hand **up to the wrist only**, into the rectum and evacuate the faeces.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Using a sterile endometrial, biopsy instrument (Yeoman's basket-jawed forceps, or purpose-made rectal biopsy instrument) into the cupped hand within the rectum. The hand should not be inserted beyond the wrist.
- A mucosal fold of the dorso-lateral rectal wall is gently grasped between thumb and forefinger and the instrument advanced to grasp the fold of mucosa just in a slightly dorsolateral position to the grasped fold.
- Taking a biopsy from the dorsolateral position avoids interference with the more prominent dorsal vasculature while maintaining the dorsal position that is an important part of the technique.
- The jaws of the instrument are closed firmly and the specimen is removed.
- Biopsy specimens required for bacteriological examination must be taken first and placed directly into Amies' charcoal medium.
- For histopathology the specimen is placed in a container with appropriate fixative.
- Usually formal saline is used but Bouin's solution can be used. Advice from the pathologist should be sought if in doubt about the best fixative for the case in question.

21.9.5.2

### Interpretation

- Positive changes that show definitive pathology are highly suggestive of bowel disease in the more proximal bowel but negative findings are much less helpful. A negative finding does not preclude the presence of infiltrative or infectious pathology.
- Significant findings include pathological bacteria and infiltrative inflammatory and non-inflammatory diseases.
- Many false or misleading results can be obtained including mild eosinophilic infiltration and mild mucosal and submucosal inflammation.
- The risks from the procedure are minimal and are increased by inappropriate sedation/restraint, too deep a biopsy site and poor instrument maintenance.
- Antibiotics may be used prophylactically but they may not be strictly needed.

373

21.9.5.2.1

### Comment

The instrument must be extremely sharp and well maintained.

374

21.9.5.3

### Potential complications

1. **Rectal tears** are more liable to develop if dorsal or more particularly ventral biopsies are taken. A blunt instrument is more liable to cause tearing.
2. **Peritonitis** may develop if the biopsy is taken too far forward, i.e. in the peritoneal rectum.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

3. **Bleeding** is a particularly unusual complication.

### 21.9.6 Ileal biopsy

Ileal biopsy is a definitive method for diagnosis of equine dysautonomia (grass sickness) and may also be useful in other infiltrative diseases. However, biopsy requires a laparotomy (usually under general anaesthesia). There are reports of standing laparotomy biopsy but this should not be undertaken without very careful thought and surgical care.

#### 21.9.6.1 Procedure

- The ileum is identified by tracing the ileo-caecal fold from the caecum and the ileum is exteriorised.
- The proximal end of the ileum is identified as the point at which the ileocaecal fold disappears.
- An 8-10 cm length of ileum is gently clamped off with bowel clamps proximally and distally and the area packed off with saline-soaked surgipads.
- A full-thickness (transmural) biopsy of around 3-4 mm width and 2-3 cm in length is excised longitudinally midway between the anti-mesenteric border and the mesenteric border.
- The incision is closed in two layers using a Cushing's inverting suture pattern and the site irrigated copiously with warm sterile saline.
- The bowel is returned to the abdomen and after any other appropriate procedure is completed, the laparotomy is closed in the normal way.
- The biopsy is placed immediately into 10% formol saline, for submission.

#### 21.9.6.2 Interpretation

- The quality, quantity and location of the myenteric neurones are assessed.
- Interpretation requires considerable pathological skill but the results have a high specificity and sensitivity for grass sickness.

#### 21.9.6.3 Complications

1. **Peritonitis should not occur** when this procedure is performed properly.
2. **Stricture formation may occur** if the biopsy is taken transversally (i.e. radially).

374

### 21.9.7 Testicular biopsy

375

Testicular biopsy is indicated during investigation of reproductive failure or where obvious palpable or ultrasonographic pathology is present. Wedge biopsies can be obtained but this requires a much higher degree of invasion.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 21.9.7.1 Procedure

- The procedure can be performed on the standing horse but this requires local anaesthesia and that may complicate both the biopsy and the procedure. It is best therefore performed under general anaesthesia using a Tru-Cut biopsy instrument.
- Full aseptic precautions are essential and simultaneous ultrasonographic guidance is helpful.
- The needle is inserted into an identified location and triggered to obtain a core biopsy.
- This is placed in Amies Charcoal medium if infection is suspected and/or into Bouin's fluid for histological examination.

### 21.9.7.2 Interpretation

Interpretation requires considerable pathological skill.

### 21.9.7.3 Complications

1. **Intra-testicular haemorrhage** through inadvertent perforation of the testicular artery.
2. **Local abscessation/orchitis.**
3. **Adhesions** that prevent normal thermoregulation.

375

### 21.9.8 Muscle biopsy

376

Muscle biopsy is indicated in some generalised conditions but also in some focal muscle disorders.

Generalised indications for muscle biopsy include:

- Polysaccharide storage myopathy (usually semimembranosus muscle is selected as a representative sample).
- Equine motor neurone disease (usually the caudalis dorsalis coccygeus muscle is chosen).
- White muscle disease.

Localised conditions for which muscle biopsy is indicated include:

- Focal muscle atrophy.

### 21.9.8.1 Procedure

- The skin overlying the chosen site is prepared for aseptic surgery.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Local anaesthetic is infiltrated in such a way as to avoid direct insertion of anaesthetic agent into the chosen site (this will negate any benefit from the procedure).
- The skin is incised over the site to ensure adequate exposure of the muscle.
- Two parallel incisions are made along the length of the muscle running WITH the line of the fibres, to a depth of around 1 cm.
- The muscle is lifted from the underlying muscle belly and undermined carefully for the full length of the biopsy.
- The two ends are cut with a scalpel to release the muscle biopsy.
- The specimen is immediately placed on a cooled saline-soaked swab for a minute or two before placing in formal saline.
- The skin incision is closed routinely in two layers.

21.9.8.1.1

### Note:

Biopsy instruments designed to obtain muscle biopsies via a cutaneous puncture are available but the biopsies are probably of less use.

21.9.8.2

### Interpretation

Specialist muscle pathology labs must be used. In the UK this is available at:

The Muscle Pathology Laboratory

University of Edinburgh Field Station

Royal Dick Veterinary School

Easter Bush

Roslin

Midlothian

Scotland

21.9.8.3

### Complications

There are no significant complications.

376

### 21.9.9 Endometrial biopsy

Endometrial biopsy is a routine procedure in equine stud farm medicine. It is indicated in the investigation of infertility or in the routine examination for breeding soundness. Mid-diestrus is the best stage to obtain diagnostic information.

**BIOPSY MUST NOT BE ATTEMPTED OF COURSE IF THE MARE IS PREGNANT!**

**PRIOR TO ANY INTRAUTERINE PROCEDURE THE POSSIBILITY OF PREGNANCY MUST BE ELIMINATED!**

#### 21.9.9.1 Procedure

- Suitable restraint is essential (stocks/chute) with or without sedation as indicated.
- The tail is wrapped and tied out of the field of view and the rectum evacuated of faeces.
- A rectal and ultrasonographic examination is performed to eliminate pregnancy as a cause of non-oestrus.
- The perineum is carefully washed. The lips of the vulva are carefully dried with a sterile paper towel.
- Using a (sterile) gloved hand introduced into the vagina the uterine biopsy instrument (Yeoman's Basket Biopsy Instrument) is introduced through the cervix into the uterus.
- The cervix may be drawn caudally with the index finger to straighten the uterine body.
- Once the instrument is located into the uterine body, the hand is withdrawn and introduced into the rectum.
- The forceps are palpated per rectum and the instrument is advanced into the previously identified location (horn, bifurcation or body) and the uterine wall is gently pressed into the open jaws of the instrument (which may be held sideways to facilitate the biopsy procedure).
- The jaws are closed firmly and the instrument is withdrawn.
- A fine bacterial swab is used to obtain a bacteriological sample from the biopsy before opening any formalin-containing receptacle in the vicinity.
- The biopsy specimen is lifted out of the basket with a fine needle (NOT forceps) and placed in Bouin's Medium or formal saline.
- The specimen is submitted for routine histology.

#### 21.9.9.2 Interpretation

- A specialist laboratory is advised.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Interpretation can be very difficult and a full signalment and history is essential with the submission.

377

21.9.9.3

### Complications

378

1. **Haemorrhage is rare.**
2. **Perforation of the uterus and/or rectum** are potential complications but are very rare if the procedure is properly performed.
3. **Intrauterine adhesions** may occur at the site.

21.10

### BLOOD CULTURE

Blood culture is under-utilised in practice and is of particular value in diagnosis and management of foal (and adult horse) septicaemia, cerebrospinal fluid infections and joint infections, where conventional swabbing and culture methods are often unrewarding. The method is used to amplify the bacterial numbers in samples in which there are few organisms. Usually a relatively large amount of blood (or synovial fluid or cerebrospinal fluid) is required to obtain a diagnostic culture and sensitivity and the blood culture method using a biphasic culture medium offers this opportunity. As much fluid as possible should be collected. Sometimes only a few millilitres are possible.

21.10.1

### Procedure

- The sample is obtained as aseptically as possible (to avoid contaminating bacteria). The skin should be allowed to dry thoroughly after spirit-based swabbing of the site (this will avoid false-negative cultures from the antiseptic effects of the spirit).
- The sample is transferred aseptically to the culture medium using a new sterile needle.
- The bottle is gently swirled and culture is begun in an incubator.

21.10.2

### Interpretation

Culture results may be known by 24-36 hours but it is sometimes longer. Therefore there is merit in instigating the process as soon as possible in the course of suspect disease.

21.10.2.1

### Comment

- Blood cultures are usually negative if any antibiotic has been used prior to sampling.
- Cultures are easily contaminated unless suitable precautions are taken.

378

21.11

### ROUTINE DIAGNOSTIC NERVE BLOCK SITES

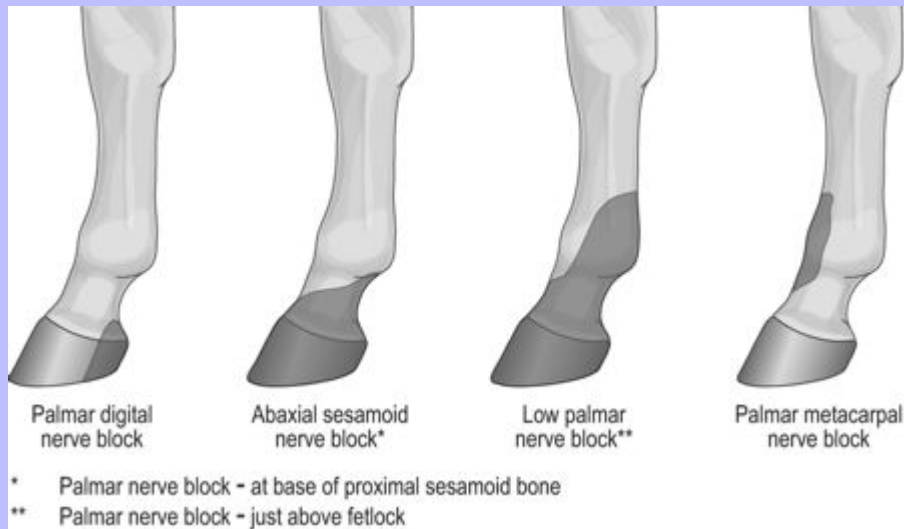
379

Nerve blocking is a useful technique in diagnosing the source of pain in a lame horse and is also useful as a means of achieving analgesia. Its effective use requires knowledge of the anatomy of the limb and some basic skill and competence. Restraint of the horse during blocking is important for personal safety and use of an experienced

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

handler and a twitch is advised. Difficult horses may require sedation with an alpha-2 agonist, preferably xylazine. However, sedatives can make the horse ataxic and lameness evaluation becomes more difficult, therefore their use should be avoided where possible. All nerve blocks must be performed as aseptic procedures.

Fig. 4.54 Skin areas desensitised by diagnostic nerve blocks.



### 21.11.1 Note:

The areas of desensitisation depicted are as a rough guide only and the clinician should be aware that diffusion of local anaesthetic solution might result in a greater portion of the limb being desensitised than was originally intended. The palmar digital block in particular will desensitise not only the palmar third of the foot, but also the sole and the majority of the coffin joint.

379

Fig. 4.55 Theoretical distribution of the major nerve pathways in the forelimb from the mid-radius distally.

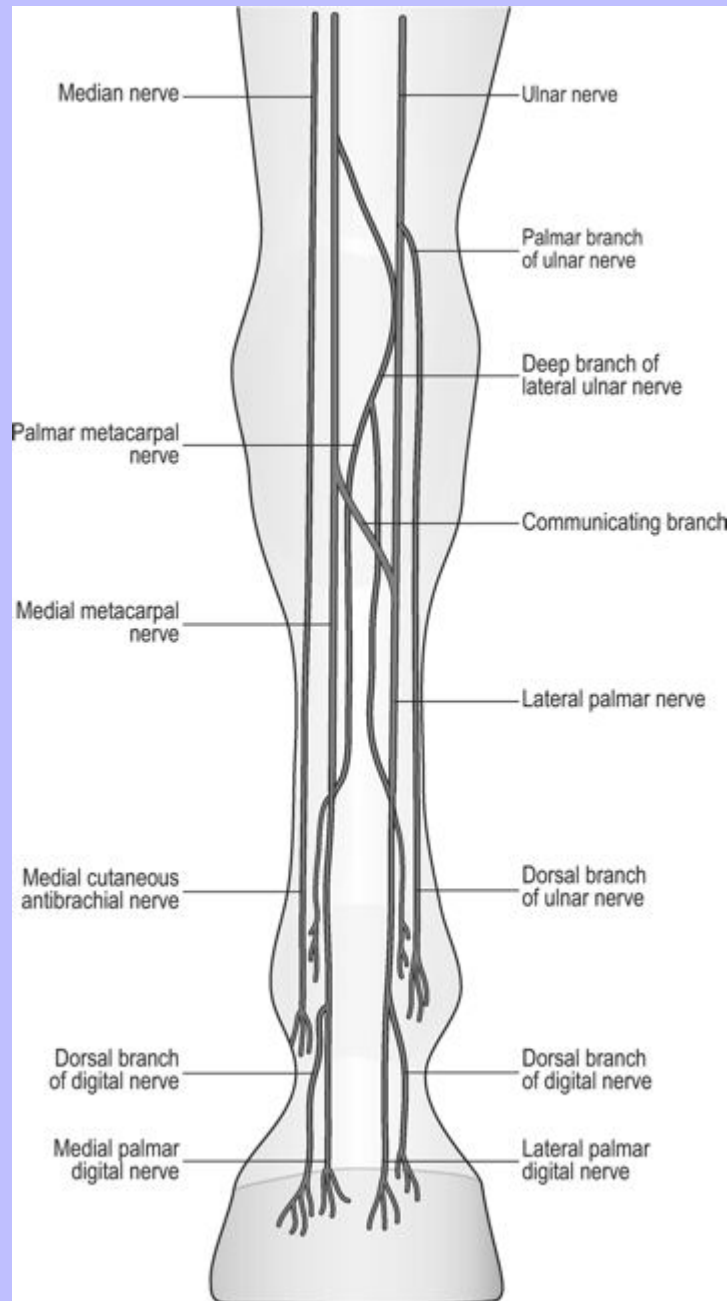




Fig. 4.56 Diagram of nerve block sites on the distal limb of the horse.

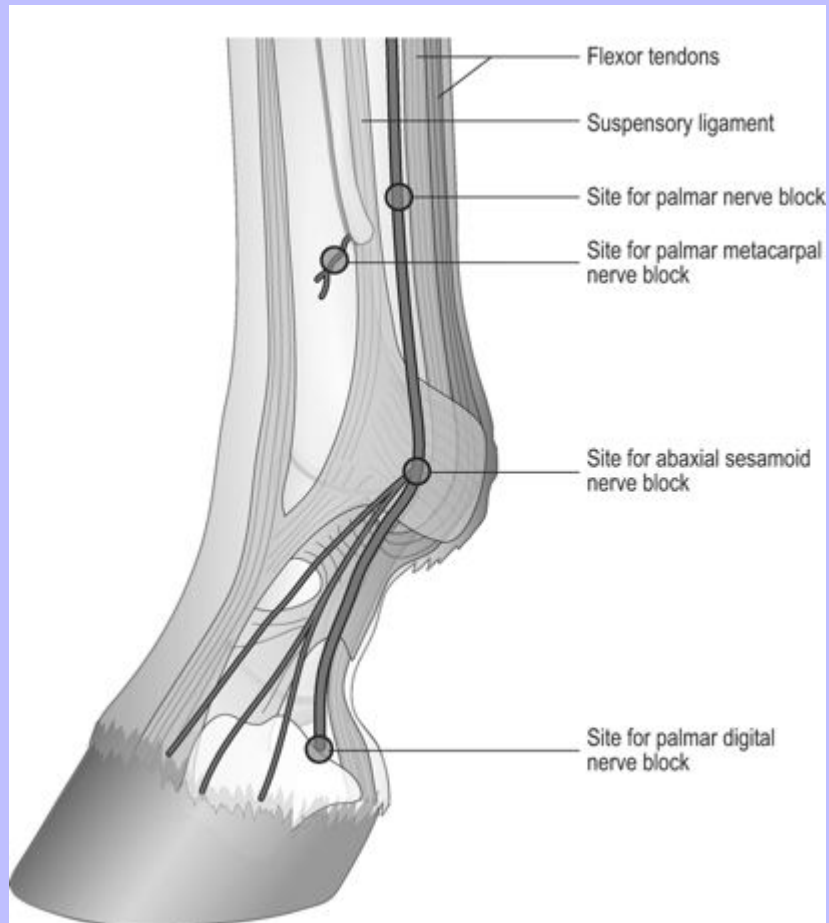


Fig. 4.57a Location of perineural (regional) analgesia of the palmar/plantar digital nerves – side view.

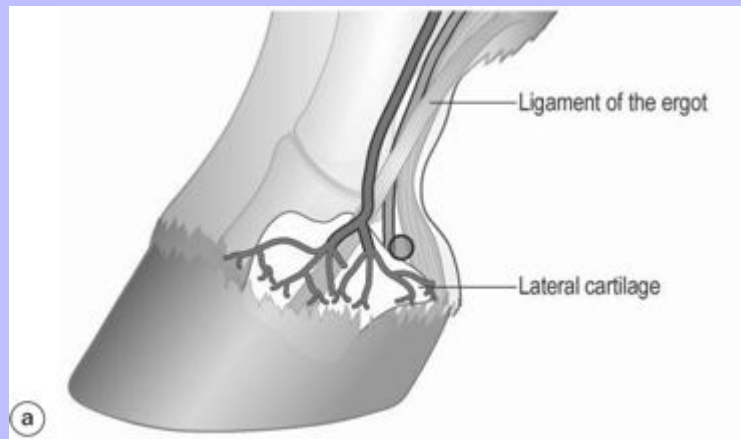


Fig. 4.57b Location of perineural (regional) analgesia of the palmar/plantar digital nerves – back view.

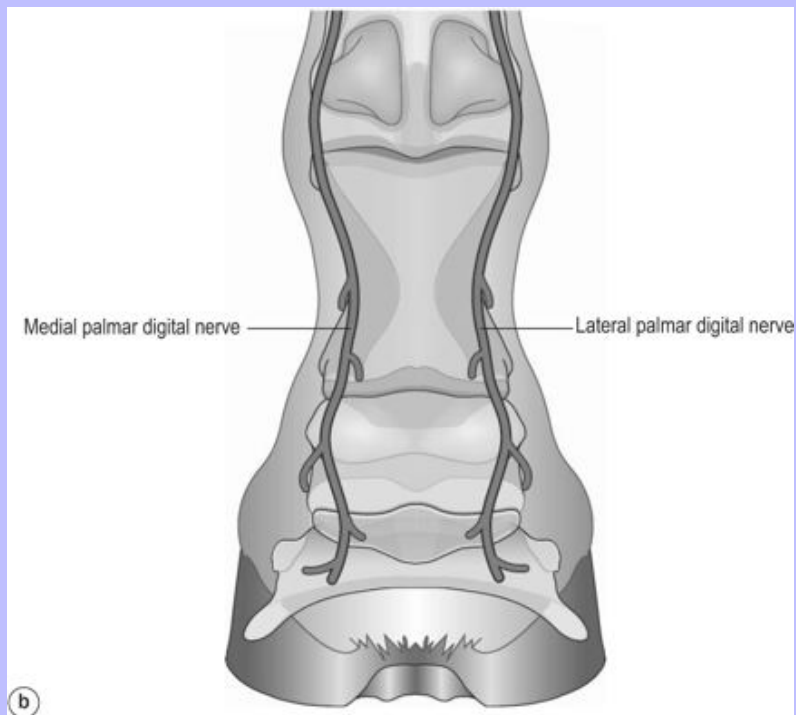


Fig. 4.57c Two views, i and ii, of a laterally performed injection on the palmar digital proximal site (injections are also performed medially).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Aim:** To block the lateral and medial palmar/plantar digital nerves at the level of the distal pastern.

The neurovascular bundle is easily palpable on the abaxial aspect of the deep digital flexor tendon (DDFT) in the pastern region of most horses. To perform a PD nerve block, a 25 gauge 16 mm needle is inserted subcutaneously over the neurovascular bundle just proximal to the collateral cartilage and 2 mL local anaesthetic is injected both medially and laterally.

383

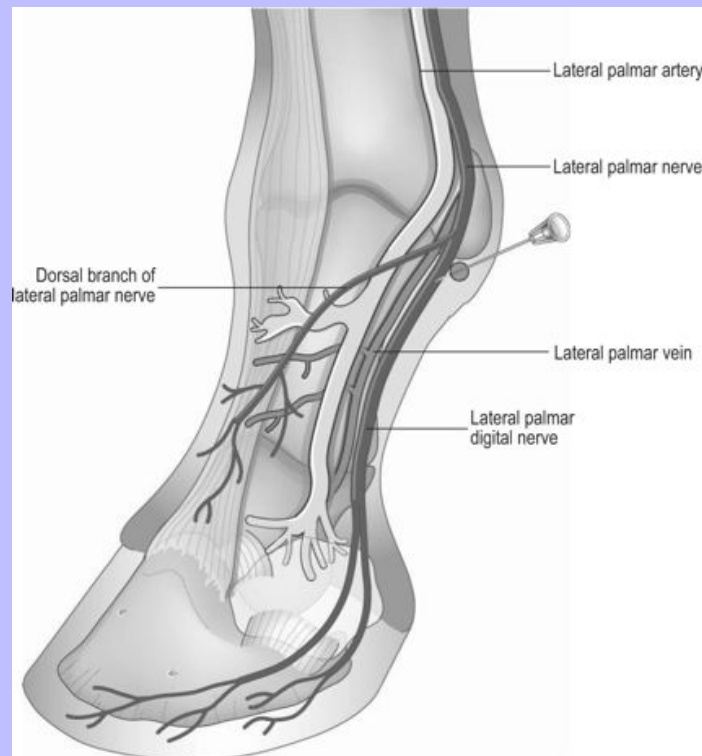
21.11.4 Abaxial sesamoid block

384

384

385

Fig. 4.58 Abaxial sesamoid block. (i) shows the normal abaxial site and (ii) shows the low abaxial site (injections are performed both medially and laterally).





**Aim:** Block the lateral and medial palmar nerves at the level of the proximal sesamoid bones.

The neurovascular bundle is easily palpable on the abaxial surface of the proximal sesamoid bone and can be rolled between finger and thumb. A 25 gauge 16 mm needle is used to inject 2 mL local anaesthetic subcutaneously over each neurovascular bundle.

385

21.11.5 Low four/low six point block

386

Fig. 4.59a Needles positioned for a low palmar (plantar) nerve block – lateral view.

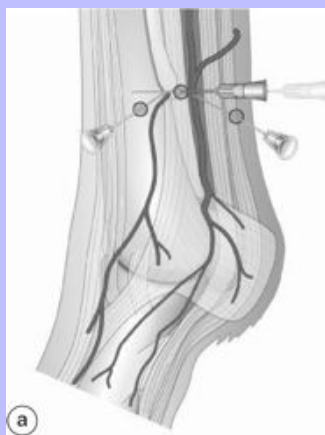


Fig. 4.59b Distal left metacarpal region demonstrating an alternative technique for low palmar (plantar) analgesia – transverse view.

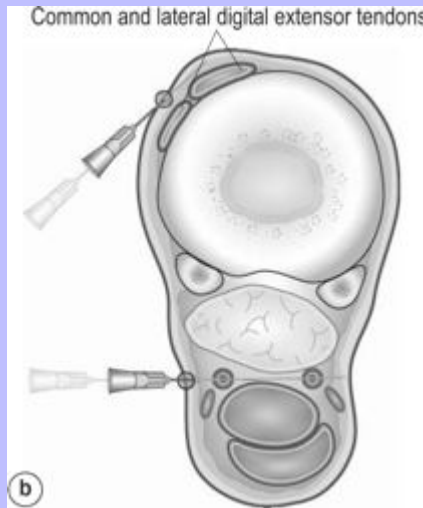
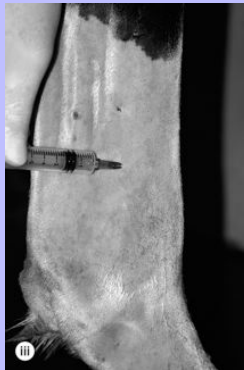


Fig. 4.59c Sites i and ii are common to front leg (low 4 point block). The hind leg analgesia receives the additional block at site iii (low 6 point block). Blocks are performed both laterally and medially.



21.11.5.1 Forelimb – low 4 point

**Aim:** Block the lateral and medial palmar nerves and lateral and medial palmar metacarpal nerves just proximal to the fetlock.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

The palmar metacarpal nerves are blocked by injecting 2 mL local anaesthetic immediately distal to the distal button of each splint bone using a 25 gauge 16 mm needle. The palmar nerves are blocked by injection of 4-5 mL local anaesthetic subcutaneously between the DDFT and suspensory ligament using a 22 gauge 25 mm needle. The palmar nerves can be blocked either at the level of, or proximal to, the level of the button of the splint. It may be advised to block the palmar nerves at a more proximal level, e.g. mid-metatarsus region in order to avoid inadvertent penetration of the digital flexor tendon sheath. An alternative approach to blocking the palmar nerves involves advancing a longer needle palmar to the DDFT to inject both lateral and medial palmar nerves from a lateral injection site.

### 21.11.5.2 Hindlimb – low 6 point

**Aim:** Block the lateral and medial plantar nerves, lateral and medial plantar metatarsal nerves and medial and lateral dorsal metatarsal nerves just proximal to the fetlock.

The medial and lateral plantar and medial and lateral plantar metatarsal nerves are blocked in much the same way as their forelimb counterparts. In the hindlimb it is important to perform a subcutaneous circumferential ring block on the dorsal aspect of the metatarsus at the level of the buttons of the splint bones. This addition blocks the medial and lateral dorsal metatarsal nerves.

387

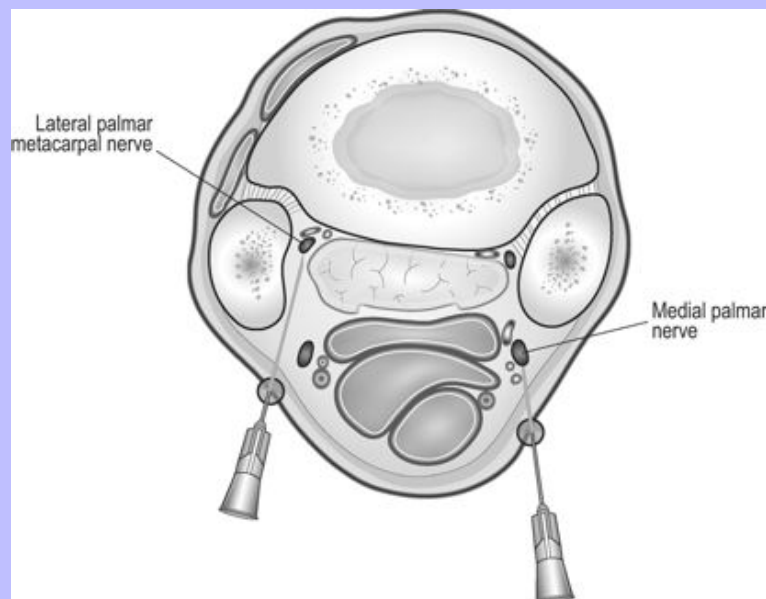
### 21.11.6 Subcarpal (high palmar nerve block)

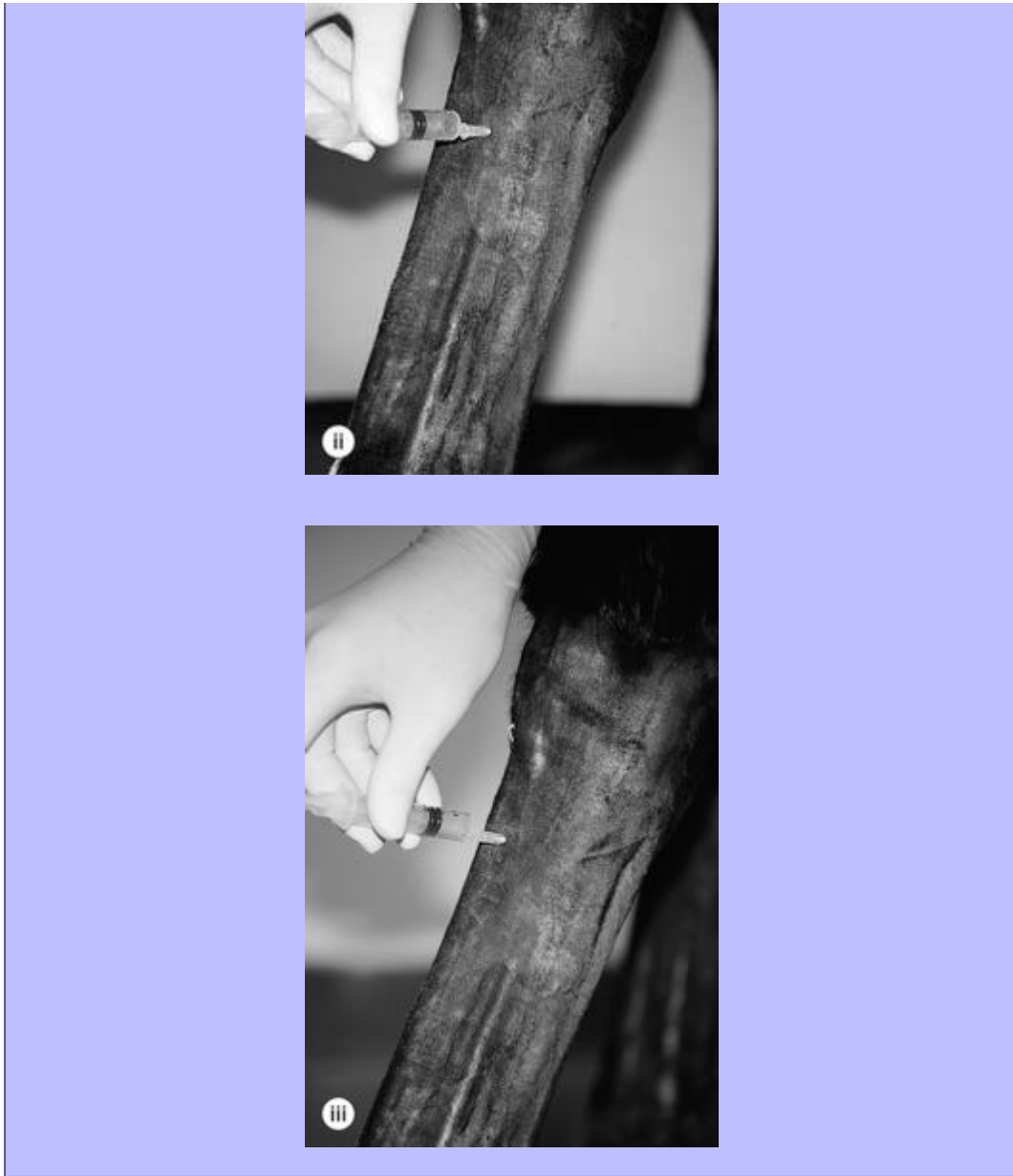
388

Fig. 4.60 Subcarpal (high palmar/high 4 point nerve block) – transverse view of the left metacarpal region. (i) shows a flexed view of the high 4 point

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

block on the right fore leg while (ii) and (iii) show the high 4 point block on the left fore leg.





388

**Aim:** Block the lateral and medial palmar nerves and lateral and medial palmar metacarpal nerves just distal to the carpus.

389

The medial and lateral palmar metacarpal nerves are blocked using a 20 gauge 40 mm long needle. The needle is inserted axial to each splint bone and advanced until contact with the palmar cortex of MCIII is achieved. 5 mL local anaesthetic solution is deposited in each location.

The medial and lateral palmar nerves are blocked using a 22 gauge 25 mm needle inserted between the DDFT

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

and suspensory ligament. 3-5 mL local anaesthetic solution is injected medially and laterally.

In some cases, it may also be indicated to inject local anaesthetic in order to locally infiltrate the origin of the suspensory ligament.

If desired, a circumferential ring block can be added to this block to abolish dorsal skin sensation, e.g. to allow suturing of wounds.

**NB** It is important to remember that inadvertent injection of the carpometacarpal joint may also occur. Therefore if this block is positive, the response should be compared to that after middle carpal joint analgesia.

389

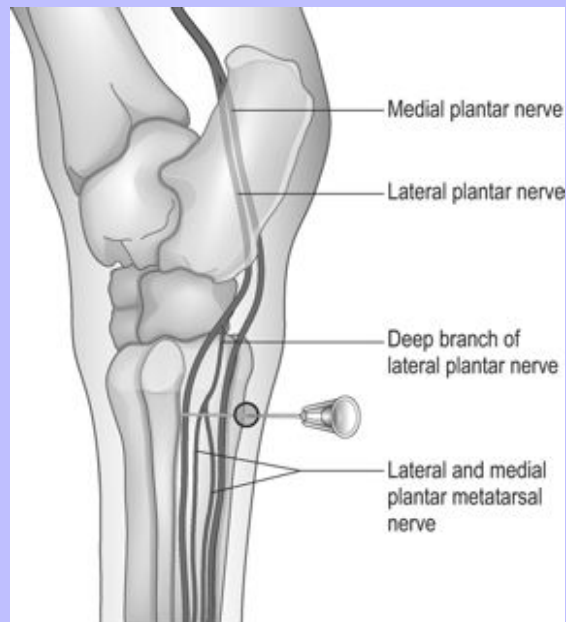
---

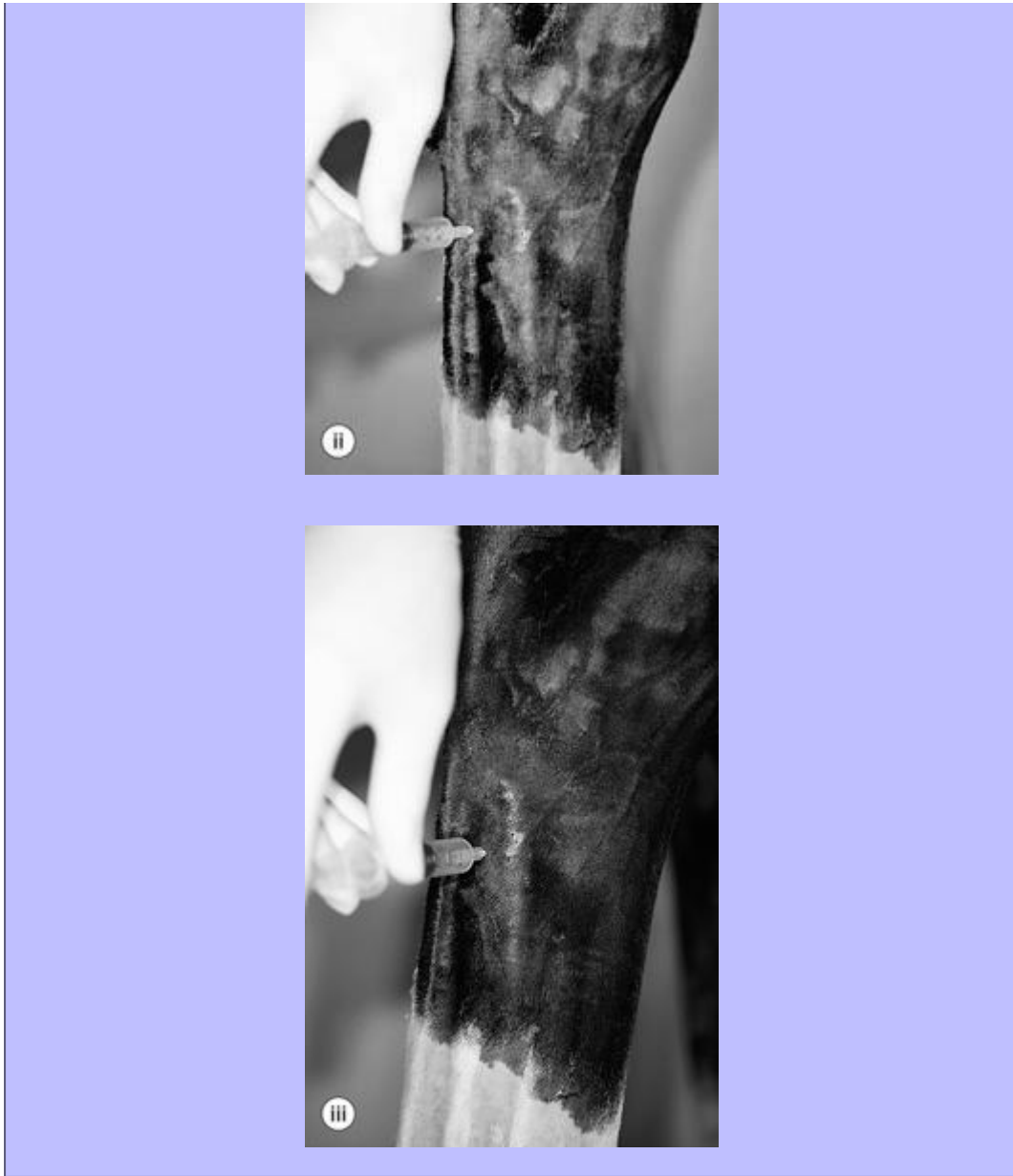
### 21.11.7 High plantar nerve block

390

Fig. 4.61 High plantar/high 6 point nerve block; performed both medially and laterally. (i), (ii) and (iii) show the high 6 point nerve block technique

on the right hind leg.





390

391

**NB** As in the forelimb, the potential to inadvertently infiltrate synovial structures exists. Inadvertent injection of the TMT is less common than injection of the carpometacarpal joint in the fore limb, but there is a possibility of injection of the tarsal sheath. This should be considered when interpreting results.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Aim:** Block the lateral and medial plantar and lateral and medial plantar metatarsal nerves just distal to the tarsometatarsal joint.

A single injection site is used on the lateral and medial aspect of the limb to block both the plantar and plantar metatarsal nerves.

A 20 gauge 40 mm needle is inserted just distal to the tarsometatarsal joint and axial to MTIV and advanced until contact is made with MTIII. 5 mL local anaesthetic is injected to block the lateral metatarsal nerve and, as the needle is withdrawn, a further 5 mL local anaesthetic is deposited in order to block the lateral plantar nerve, which lies more superficially between the DDFT and suspensory ligament. In order to block the medial plantar and medial plantar metatarsal nerves, the same procedure is repeated on the medial aspect of the limb, with the needle being inserted just axial to MTII.

In some cases it may also be indicated to infiltrate the region of the origin of the suspensory ligament.

If desired, a circumferential ring block can be used to abolish dorsal skin sensation, e.g. to allow suturing of wounds.

391

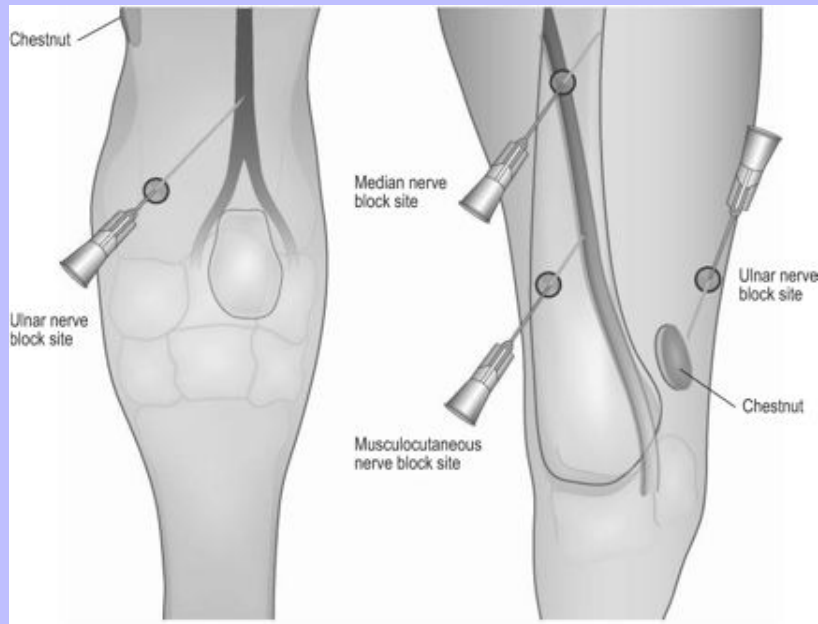
---

### 21.11.8 Median and ulnar nerve block

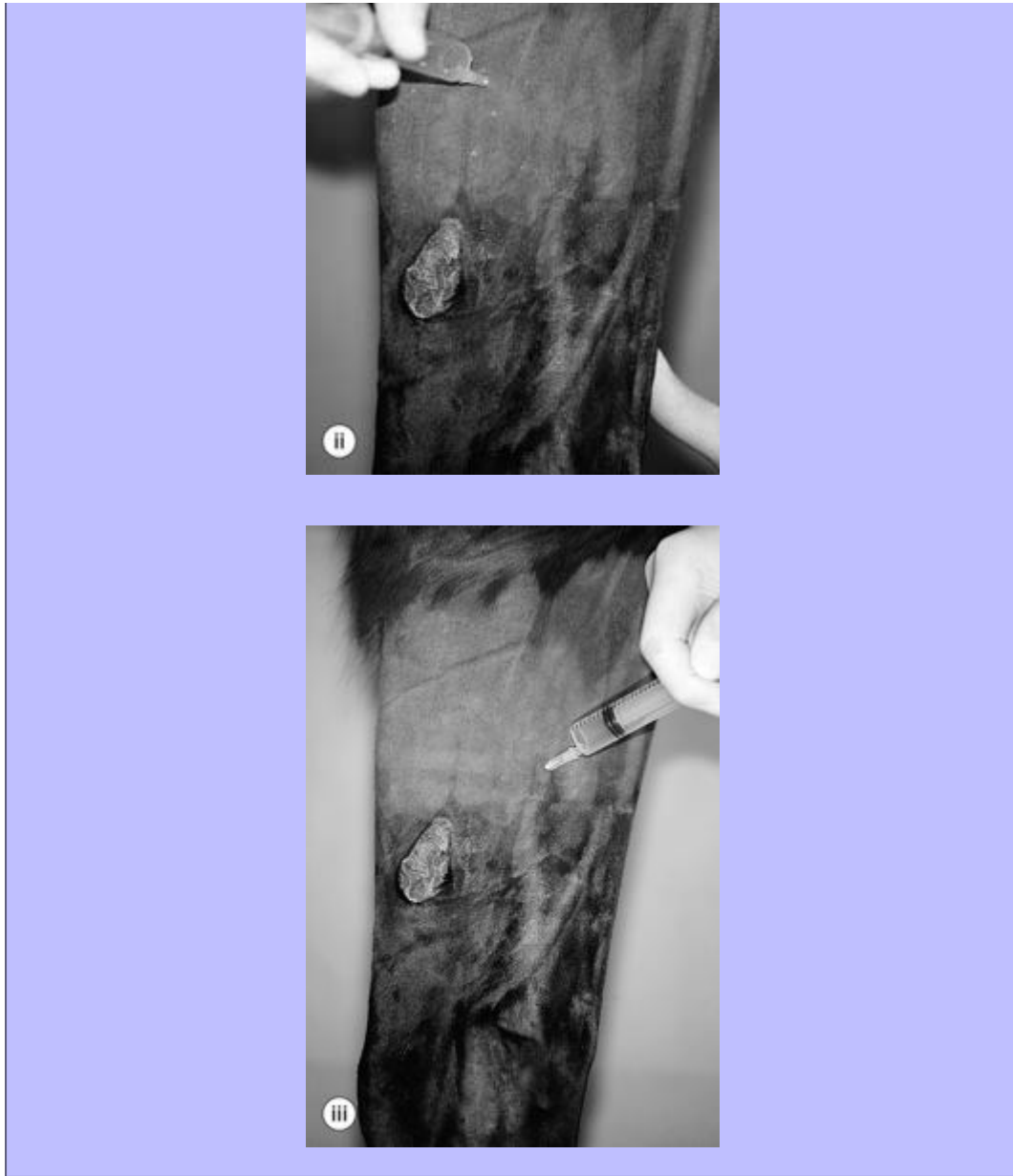
392

Fig. 4.62 Ulnar, median and musculocutaneous nerve block. (i) shows the ulnar nerve block; (ii) the median nerve block and (iii) the

musculocutaneous nerve block site.







392

**Aim:** Block the median and ulnar nerves in order to desensitise structures distal to the mid-antebrachium.

393

21.11.8.1 Median

A 19 gauge  $\times$  40 mm needle is inserted in a lateral direction 5 cm distal to the elbow joint, just below the pectoralis superficialis m. on the medial aspect of the limb and along the caudal aspect of the radius. 10 mL local anaesthetic is injected. The median artery and vein run caudal to the nerve and may be inadvertently

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

local anaesthetic is injected. The median artery and vein run caudal to the nerve and may be inadvertently punctured.

### 21.11.8.2 Ulnar

A 21 gauge × 25 mm needle is inserted perpendicular to the skin 10 cm (one handbreadth) proximal to the accessory carpal bone in the palmar midline (in the groove between the *ulnaris lateralis* and *flexor carpi ulnaris* muscle bellies). 10 mL of 2% lidocaine (lignocaine) is used.

### 21.11.8.3 Musculocutaneous

Rarely, and usually for therapeutic reasons, it may be indicated to block the musculocutaneous nerve.

The nerve may be blocked before it branches at a site over the lacertus fibrosus. The nerve is usually easily palpated and a 21 gauge 25 mm needle is used to inject 5 mL local anaesthetic subcutaneously.

Alternatively, 3 mL local anaesthetic is injected subcutaneously over the accessory cephalic and cephalic veins at the level of the mid-antebrachium.

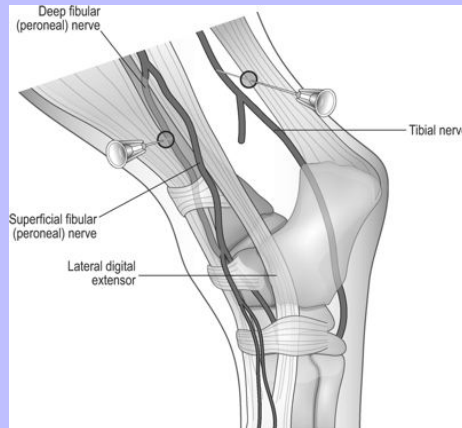
393

### 21.11.9 Tibial and fibular (peroneal) nerve block

394

Fig. 4.63 Fibular (peroneal) and tibial nerve block – lateral view of the left crus and tarsus. (i) shows the fibular nerve block site while (ii) shows the

tibial nerve block site.



**Aim:** Block the tibial and fibular nerves in order to remove deep sensation from the distal hindlimb.

21.11.9.1 Tibial

A 19 gauge 25 mm needle is inserted on the medial aspect of the limb 10 cm proximal to the point of the

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

hock, just caudal to the deep flexor tendon and cranial to the common calcaneal tendon. Approximately 20 mL of local anaesthetic should be injected at several sites in this area.

### 21.11.9.2 Fibular (peroneal)

A 21 gauge 50 mm needle is inserted on the lateral aspect of the limb 10 cm above the point of the hock in the groove formed by the lateral and long digital extensor muscles. The needle should be advanced until it contacts the tibia. Blood often appears at the hub and may indicate accurate needle placement. 10-15 mL local anaesthetic is injected to block the deep fibular nerve. As the needle is withdrawn, a further 5-10 mL local anaesthetic is injected more superficially to block the superficial fibular nerve.

395

### 21.12 SITES FOR SYNOVIOCENTESIS

396

#### Note:

1. Ensure all equipment is available including clipping and scrubbing – it must all be readily to hand.
2. All intra-articular injection or aspiration MUST be performed with full aseptic precautions including skin preparation and surgical scrub-up with sterile gloves.
3. Use only fully sterile equipment and if in doubt don't do the procedure!
4. Use only preparations specifically indicated for joint injection.
5. Use needle diameter/length consistent with joint (spinal needles are ideal for larger/deeper joints).
6. Inject the joint with an appropriate volume of anaesthetic agent. If the horse has been sedated to allow injection allow suitable recovery period.
7. If a needle breaks off – do not panic. The risk is low if appropriate restraint is used. Locate it by ultrasound and remove it (it may need a general anaesthetic).
8. Bandage the joint after the procedure (if possible) and confine the horse for a day or two.
9. If a joint becomes painful, hot and swollen within 24 hours of the injection take appropriate action in case of sepsis. (Analyse synovial fluid urgently and if necessary flush joint as emergency procedure.)

### 21.12.1 Coffin joint

Fig. 4.64a Lateral view (see also (i)) of needle insertion in the coffin joint.

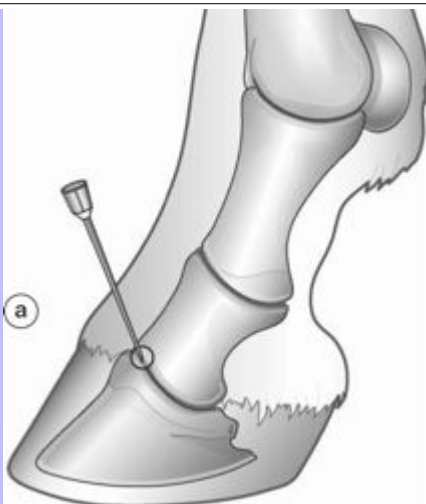


Fig. 4.64b Dorsal view (see also (i)) of needle insertion in the coffin joint.



396

397

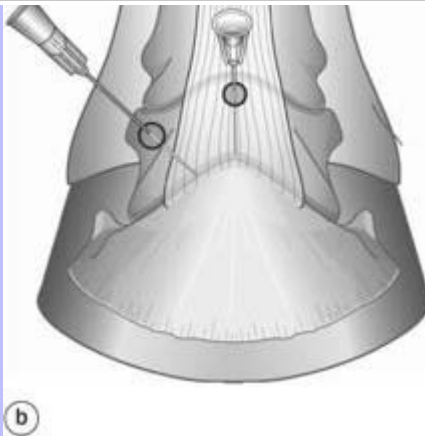
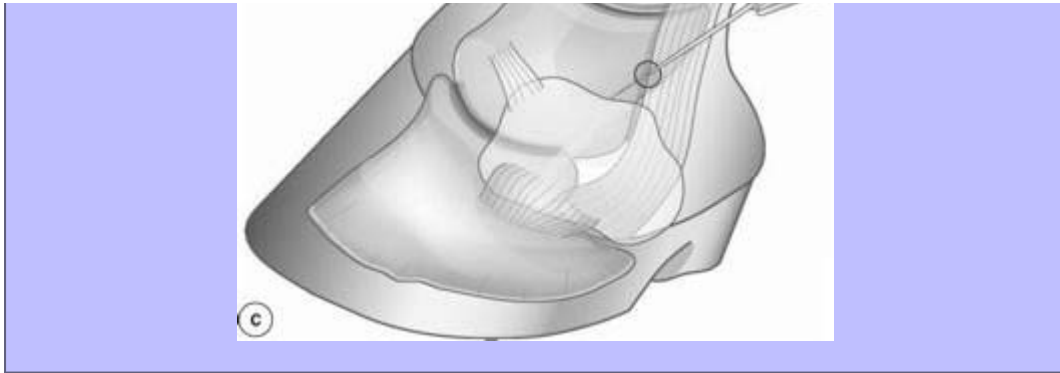


Fig. 4.64c Notch into which needle is inserted in the coffin joint.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition



**Requirements:** 20 gauge 40 mm needle.

**Difficulty:** Simple – best to insert when weight bearing.

**Method:**

1. 1-2 cm above coronary band, 2 cm away from midline. The needle is inserted distally and axially.
2. Dorsal midline through the common digital extensor tendon. The needle is angled slightly distally from horizontal.

397

21.12.2 Navicular bursa

398

Fig. 4.65a Lateral view showing two techniques for synoviocentesis of the navicular bursa of the foot. The upper needle shows it placed in the

depression between the heel bulbs and advancing the needle in a dorsodistal direction. The lower needle and (i and ii) shows the needle placed just proximal to the hairline between the bulbs of the heels using the navicular position as a guide.

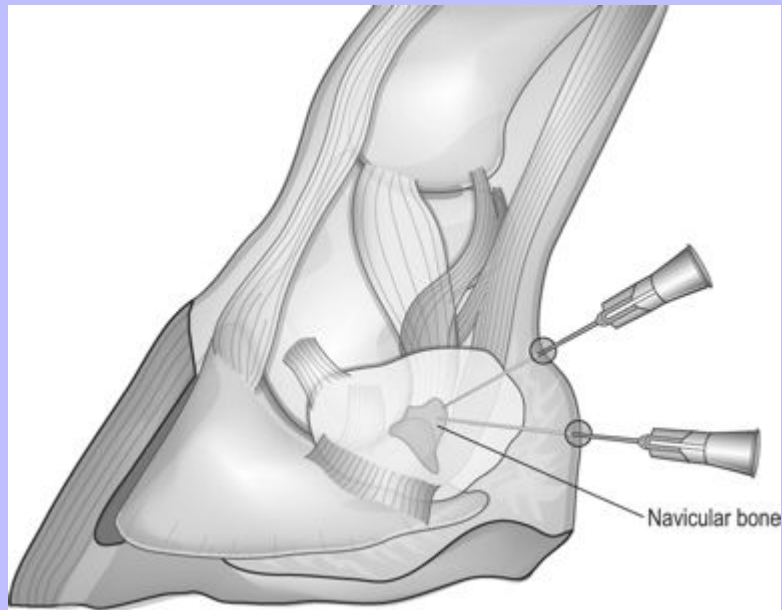
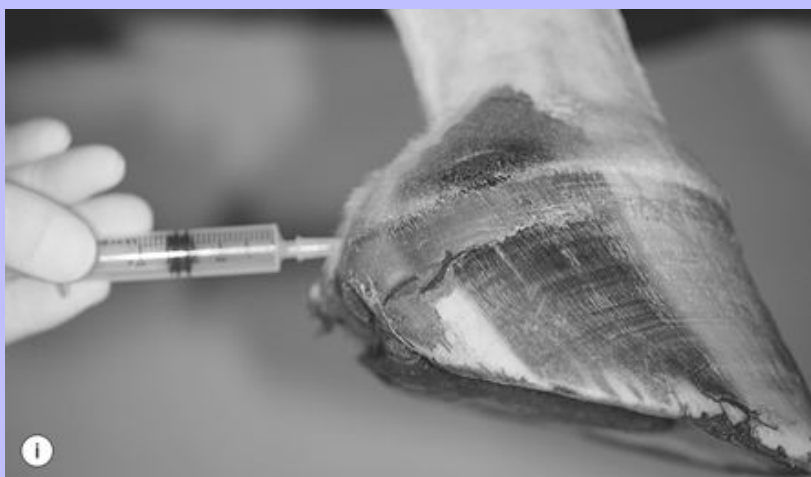
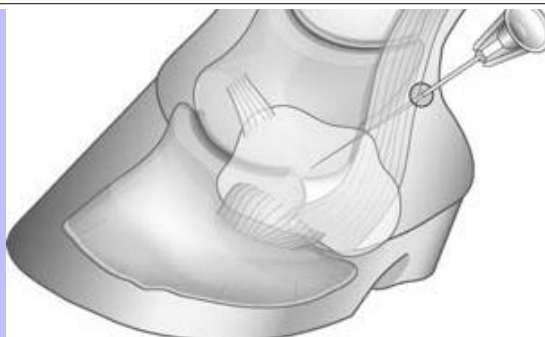


Fig. 4.65b Palmaro (plantaro) lateral view of the digit showing the approach for synoviocentesis of the navicular bursa.







398

**Requirements:** 19 gauge 90 mm spinal needle, 25 gauge 16 mm needle (skin bleb).

399

**Difficulty:** Moderate.

**Method:** Skin bleb 1 cm above coronary band between heel bulbs. Insert needle to 'navicular position', i.e. halfway between dorsal and palmar coronary band and 1 cm distal to this point until bone is encountered.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

halfway between dorsal and palmar coronary band and 1 cm distal to this point, until bone is encountered.

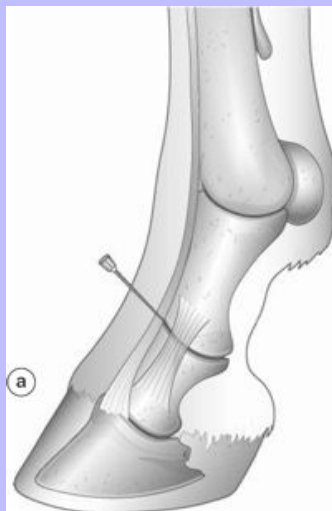
Radiographic control and use of non-ionic contrast medium (Omnipaque) is recommended.

399

### 21.12.3 Pastern (proximal interphalangeal) joint

400

Fig. 4.66a Lateral view of the nerve block site at the pastern (proximal interphalangeal) joint. (i) shows the dorsal view at the same site.

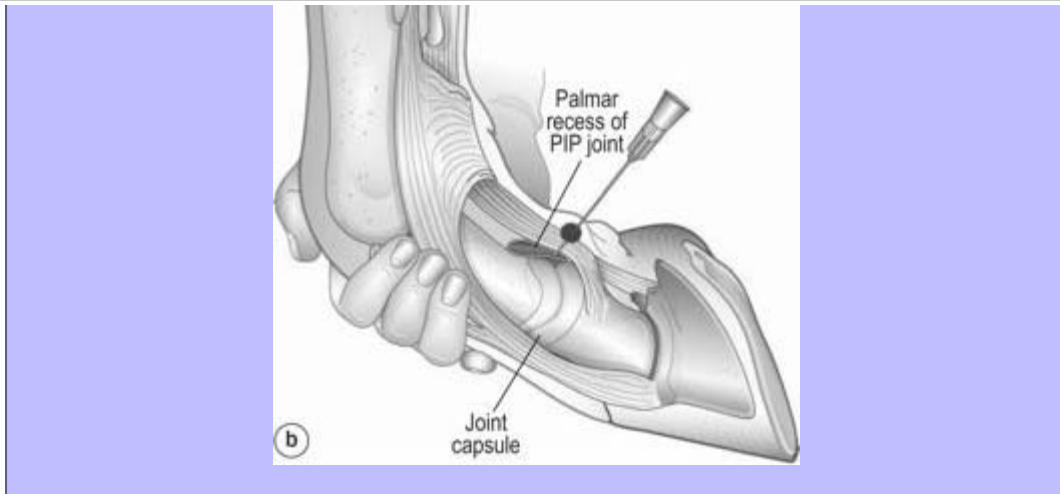


400

Fig. 4.66b Flexed lateral view of the nerve block site at the pastern (proximal interphalangeal) joint.

401





**Requirements:** 21 gauge 50 mm needle.

**Difficulty:** Moderate – best to insert when weight bearing.

**Method:** Insert needle abaxial to the CDE tendon at a site just distal to the level of the distal palmar/plantar process of the proximal phalanx. The needle is advanced slightly distally and axially into the joint.

**Note:** Synovial fluid is only rarely retrieved.

401

### 21.12.4 Fetlock (metacarpo/metatarso-phalangeal) joint

402

Fig. 4.67a Lateral view of proximopalmar approach to the fetlock (metacarpo-phalangeal joint) (i). (ii) shows a dorsal view of the dorsal

approach to the joint. This is also performed while weight-bearing.



**Requirements:** 20 gauge 25 mm needle.

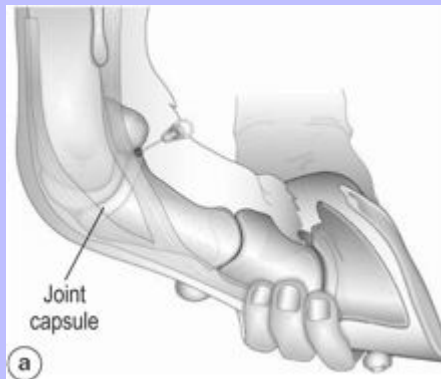
**Difficulty:** Easy (commonly injected/sampled).

402

403

Fig. 4.67b Preferred site (see also (i)) for fetlock (metacarpo/metatarsophalangeal) joint arthrocentesis in the flexed position

position.



### **Method:**

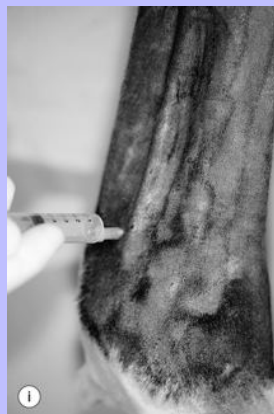
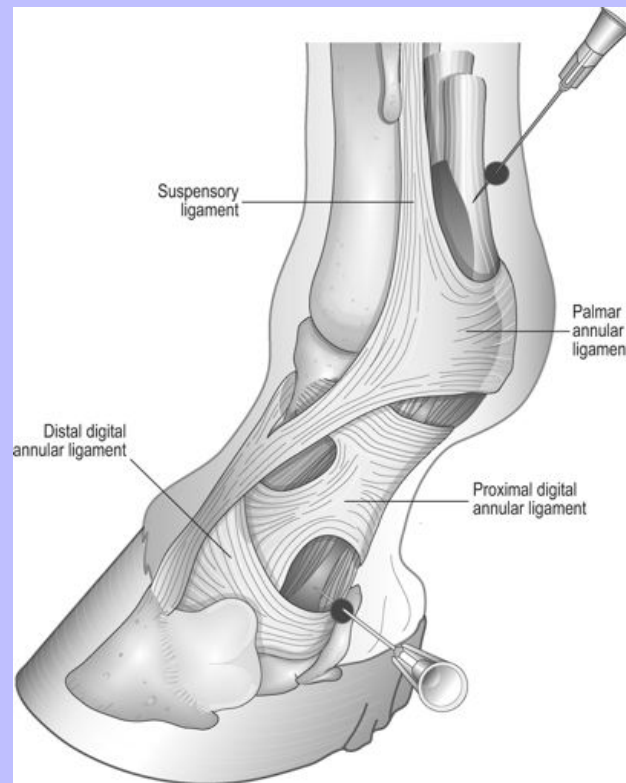
- **Proximo-palmar approach:** Approach via lateral palmar pouch of joint capsule – located between splint button, caudal aspect of cannon and cranial to suspensory ligament. Often useful to press on medial pouch to distend lateral one. Enter slightly downwards and forwards. Injection is easy at this site, but the presence of synovial villi and haemorrhage can complicate arthrocentesis.
- **Lateral approach:** Approach between the lateral palmar/plantar surface of the cannon bone and dorsal articular surface of the lateral proximal sesamoid bone, through collateral ligament. Horse should be non-weight-bearing and the joint should be flexed. This approach results in less haemorrhage and is therefore ideal for arthrocentesis.

403

101

Fig. 4.68 Lateral view of the digit indicating sites for synoviocentesis of the proximal (top site) and distal (bottom site) aspects of the digital flexor tendon sheath. (i) shows the proximal site while (ii) shows the distal site

SITE.





404

**Requirements:** 20 gauge 25 mm needle.

405

**Difficulty:** Easy/moderate.

**Method:**

- **Proximal to palmar/plantar annular ligament.** The needle is inserted proximal to the annular ligament and palmar/plantar to the suspensory ligament. This is useful for injection when the proximal DFTS is distended, but the presence of synovial villi make this site unreliable for synoviocentesis.
- **Palmar/plantar distal approach.** The needle is inserted in the palmar/plantar aspect of the palmar/plantar pastern region in the outpouching between the proximal and distal digital annular ligaments. This approach is easier when a DFTS effusion exists.
- **Palmar/plantar axial sesamoidean approach.** The fetlock is held in flexion and the needle is inserted axial to the palmar/plantar border of the proximal sesamoid bone and palmar/plantar to the neurovascular bundle. Synovial fluid can usually be obtained from this site when there is no DFTS effusion.

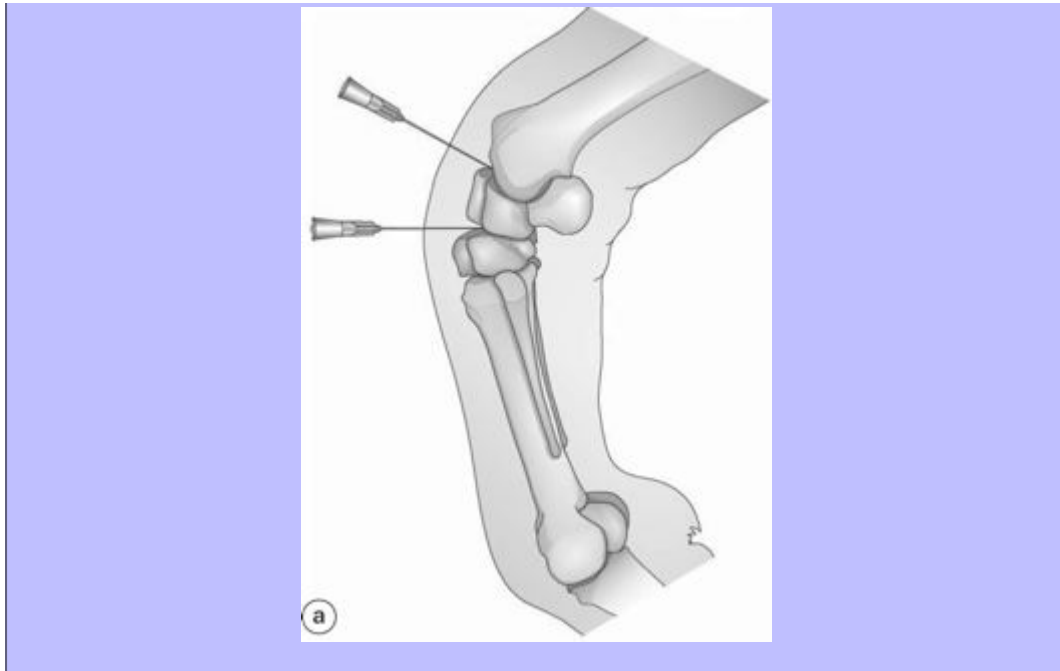
405

## 21.12.6 Carpal joints

406

Fig. 4.69a Flexed lateral view (see also (i)) indicating the nerve block sites at both carpal joints: (top) radiocarpal joint site and (bottom) intercarpal joint site.



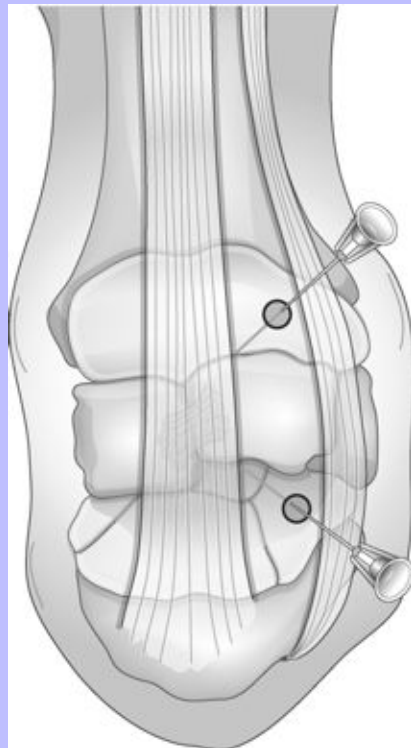


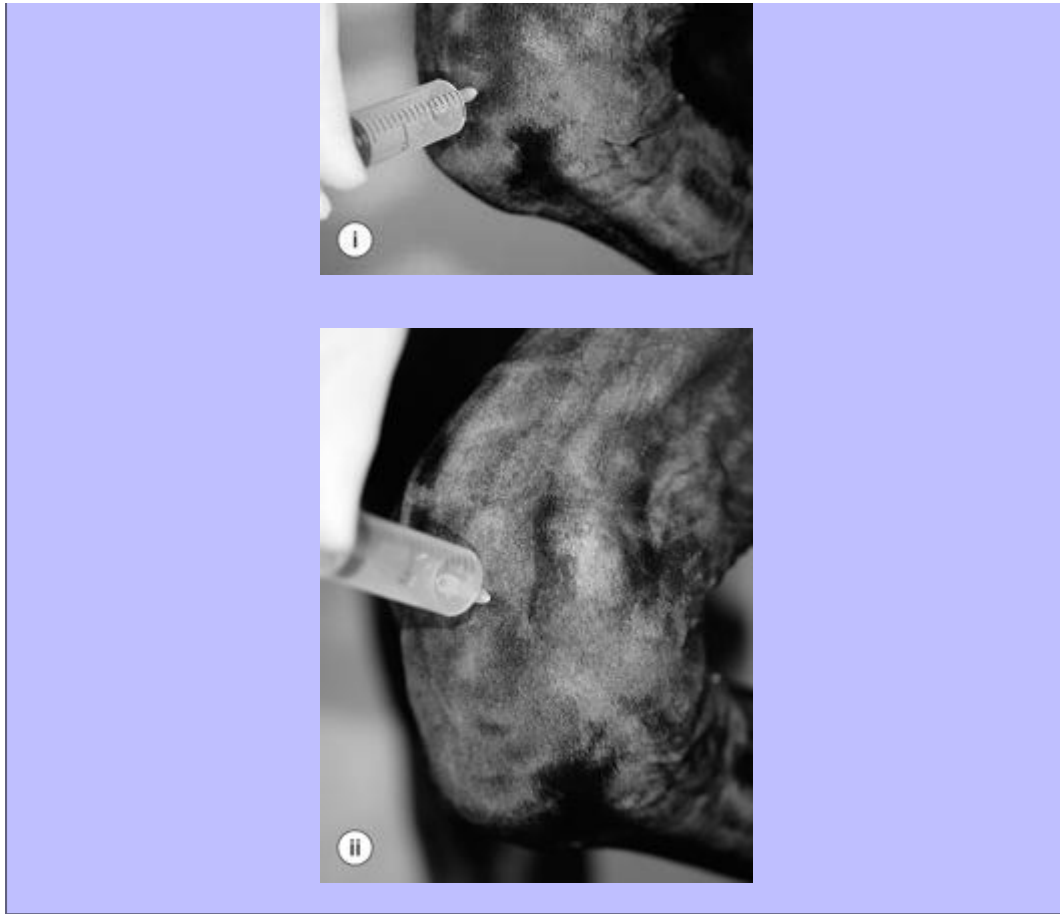
406

407

Fig. 4.69b Dorsal view of the left carpus in a flexed position showing the nerve block sites of the intercarpal and radiocarpal joints. (i) shows the site at the intercarpal joint while (ii) shows the site at the radiocarpal joint.







**Requirements:** 20 gauge 40 mm needle.

**Difficulty:** Simple.

**Method:** Both radiocarpal and intercarpal joints entered with knee flexed. Introduce needle midway between palpable bones between the *extensor carpi radialis* tendon (which is in midline) and common digital extensor tendon. Joint entered after 0.5-1 cm.

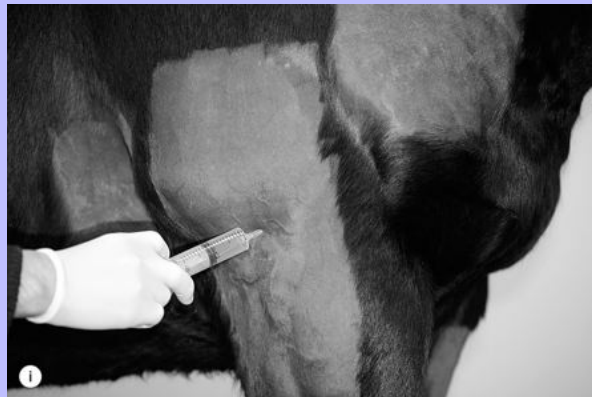
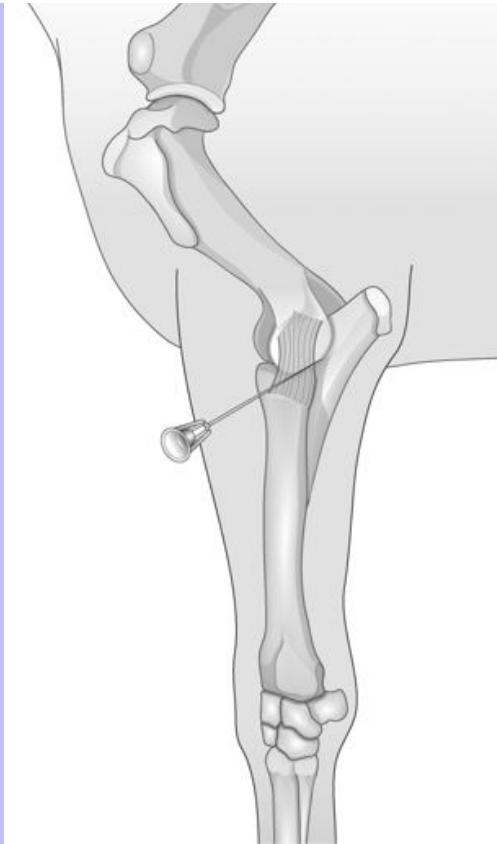
**NB** Carpo-metacarpal joint communicates with intercarpal joint.

407

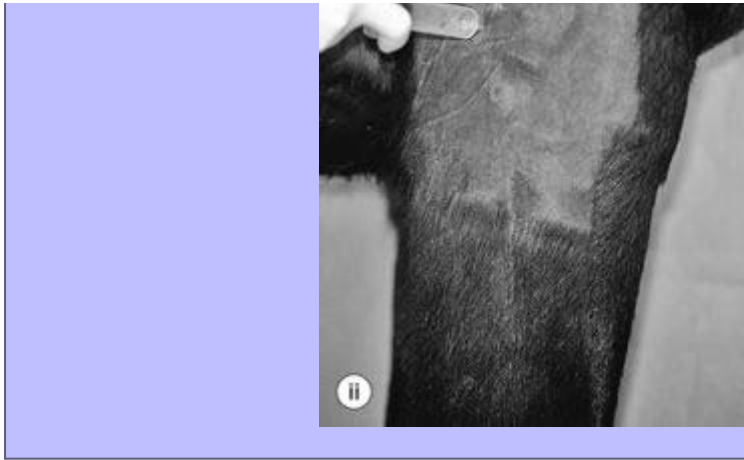
21.12.7 Humeroradial joint

408

Fig. 4.70 Humeroradial joint nerve block: (i) and (ii) show the injection site at this joint.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition



408

**Requirements:** 19 gauge 90 mm spinal needle.

409

**Difficulty:** Moderate.

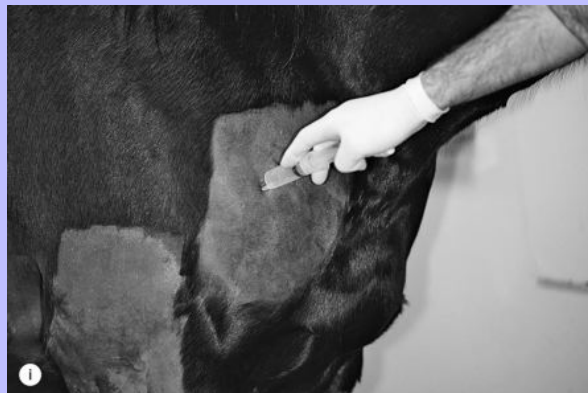
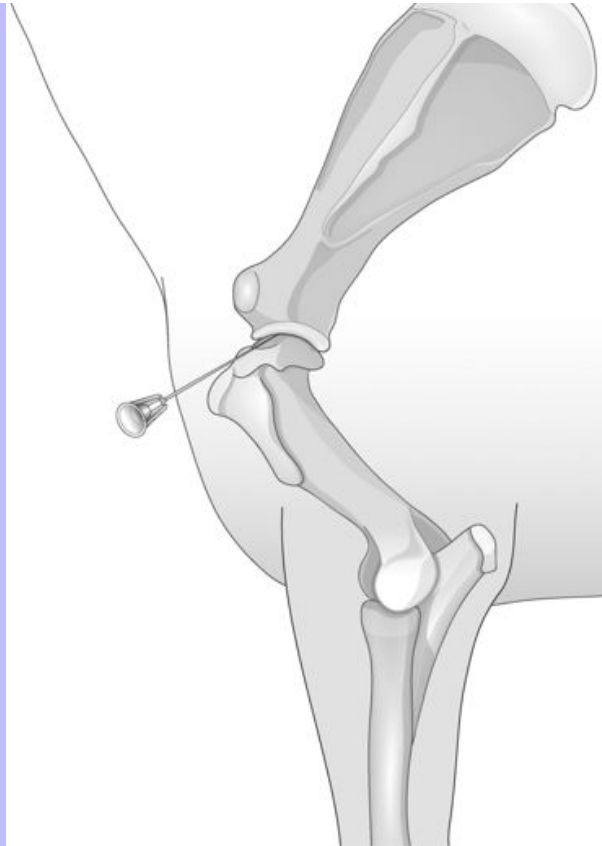
**Method:** The needle is inserted in the palpable depression cranial to the olecranon and caudal to the lateral humeral epicondyle. The needle is advanced against the caudal margin of the collateral ligament distally, slightly cranially and medially.

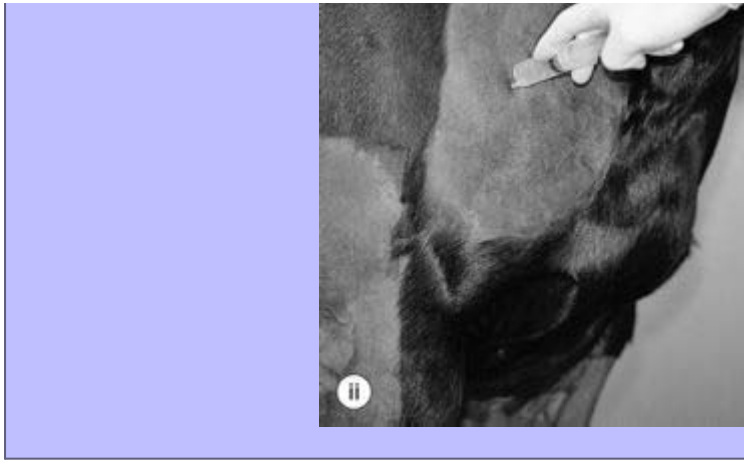
409

### 21.12.8 Scapulothoracic joint

410

Fig. 4.71 Scapulothoracic joint nerve block: (i) and (ii) show the injection site at this joint.





410

**Requirements:** 19 gauge 90 mm spinal needle.

411

**Difficulty:** Difficult (deep).

**Method:** Palpate lateral humeral tuberosity and feel the deep groove between the cranial and caudal prominences. Insert needle into this notch directed towards opposite elbow, i.e. caudomedially and distally.

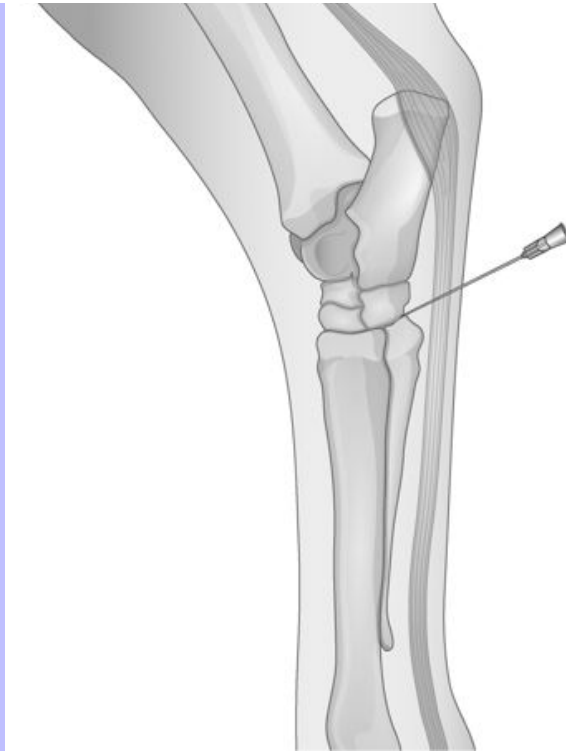
411

### 21.12.9 Tarsometatarsal joint

412

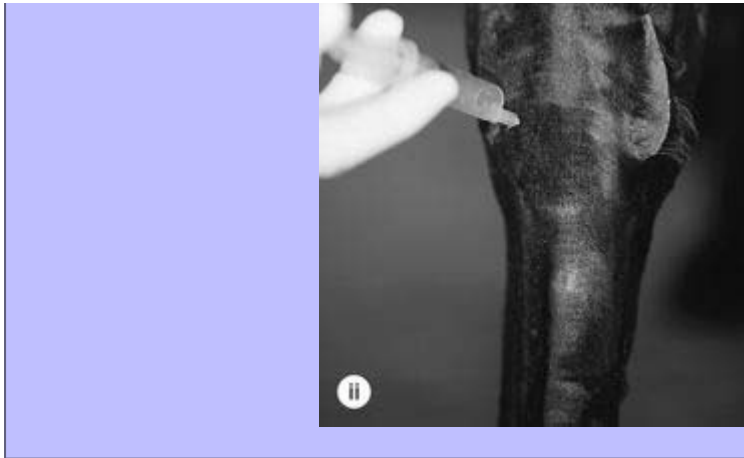
Fig. 4.72 Tarsometatarsal joint nerve block on the hind leg (see (i) which also shows the injection site). (ii) shows the same site but on the fore leg.







## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition



412

**Requirements:** 19 gauge 40 mm needle.

413

**Difficulty:** Moderate.

**Method:** The needle is inserted just proximal to the head of MTIV and in a small depression between the head of MTIV and the distal aspect of the 4th tarsal bone. The needle is angled 45° distally and 45° dorsally. First 3-4 mL enter easily.

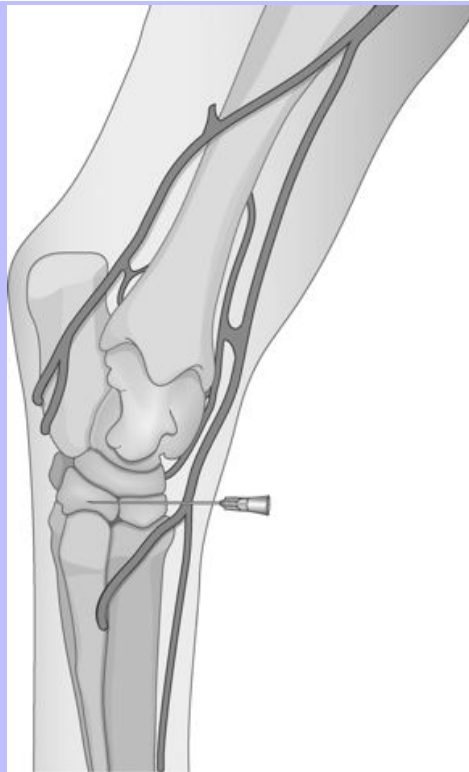
**NB** The TMT communicates with the distal intertarsal joint in only 8-35% of normal horses, therefore this should be injected separately.

413

### 21.12.10 Distal intertarsal (centrodistal) joint

414

Fig. 4.73 Distal intertarsal (centrodistal) joint nerve block. (i) and (ii) show two different views of the injection site at the distal intertarsal joint. The approach is made from the medial aspect.





414

**Requirements:** 23 gauge 16 mm needle.

415

**Difficulty:** Moderate/difficult.

**Method:** The needle is inserted at a site 1 cm proximal and 1 cm dorsal to the head of MTII. The joint space is small but discernible if palpated with a fingernail in most horses. The needle is introduced at a right angle to the axis of the leg. If injection is not easy, the needle should be directly in a slightly plantar direction.

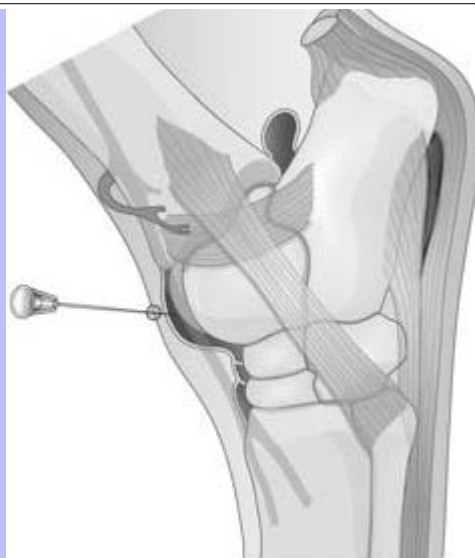
415

### 21.12.1 Tarsocrural (tibiotarsal) joint

416

Fig. 4.74 Diagram and (i) show the tarsocrural (tibiotarsal) joint nerve block site.





**Requirements:** 20 gauge 40 mm needle.

**Difficulty:** Simple.

**Method:** Enter either medial or lateral to saphenous vein 2-3 cm below medial malleolus.

**NP:** The tarsocrural joint and proximal intertarsal joints communicate in all horses.

### 21.12.12 Femoropatellar joint

Fig. 4.75a Arrangement of the stifle joint showing communicating joints (femoropatellar and femorotibial).

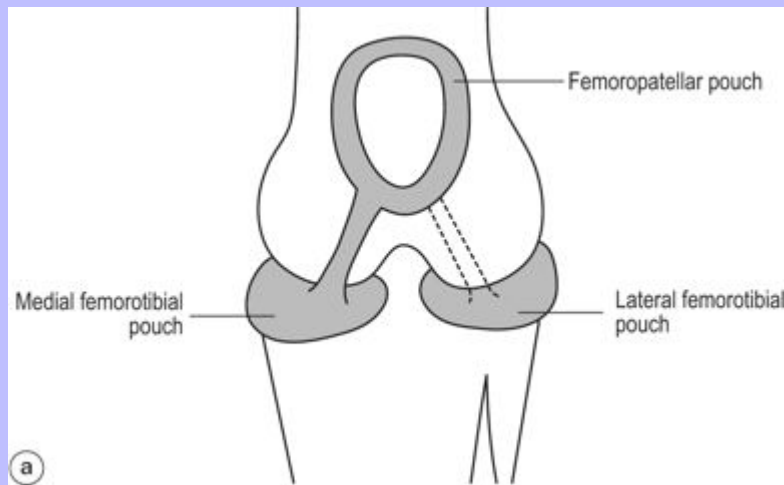
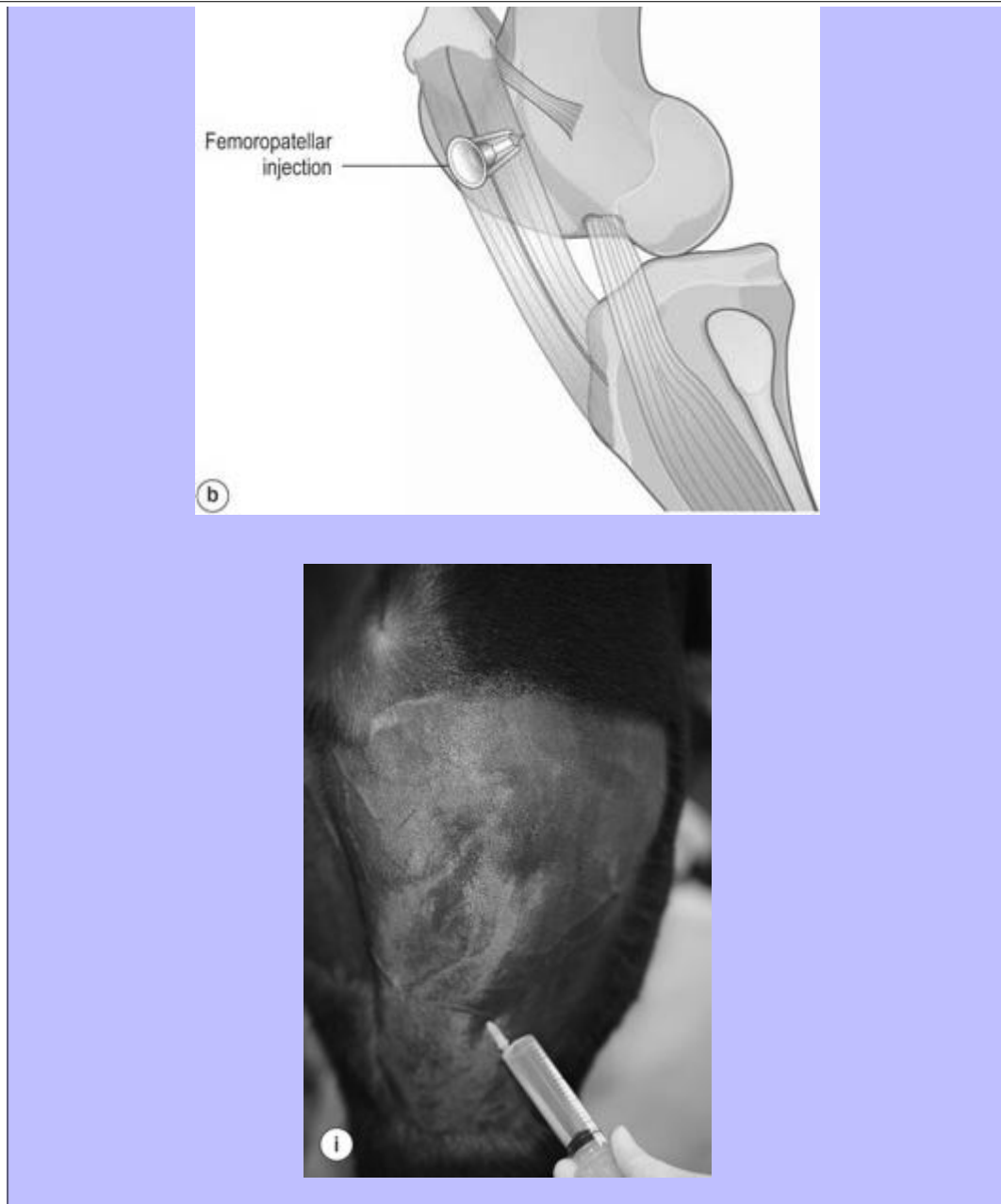


Fig. 4.75b Lateral (see also (i)) femoropatellar injection site.





417

**Requirements:** 20 gauge 40 mm needle.

418

**Difficulty:** Moderate (resented by patient).

**Method:** Landmarks used are proximal end of tibial crest, medial and middle patellar ligaments and patella. Needle inserted 2.5-3.5 cm above the tibial crest, midway between the middle and medial patellar ligaments, or between the middle and lateral patellar ligaments with the needle directed slightly proximally. The needle is

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

advanced until joint fluid is obtained or articular cartilage of the distal femur is encountered.

21.12.12.1 **Note:**

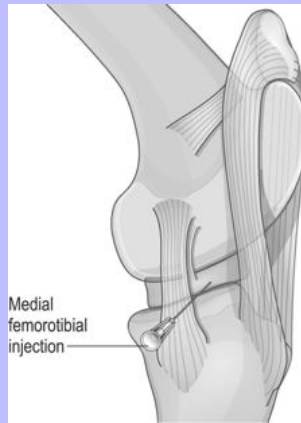
The three compartments of the stifle joint do not necessarily communicate, and for reliable diagnostic analgesia all three compartments should be injected independently.

418

21.12.13 **Medial femorotibial joint**

419

Fig. 4.75c Medial (see also (i)) femorotibial injection site.



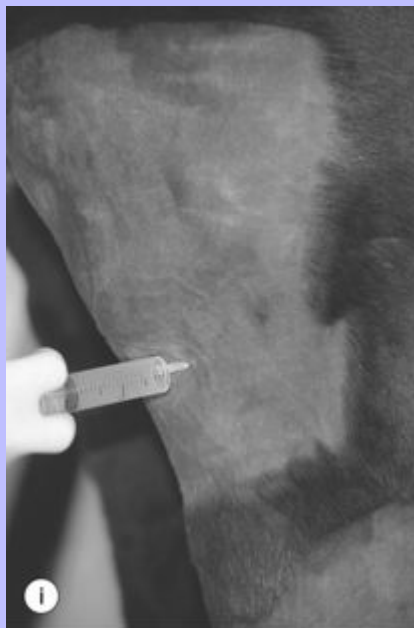
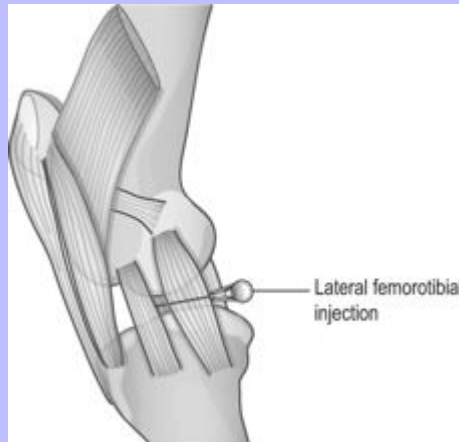
**Requirements:** 20 gauge 40 mm needle.

**Difficulty:** Moderate (resented by patient).

**Method:** Landmarks used are proximal end of tibial crest, medial and middle patellar ligaments and patella. The needle is inserted perpendicular to the skin, at a site caudal to the medial patellar ligament, cranial to the medial collateral ligament and 2 cm proximal to the tibial plateau.

419

Fig. 4.75d Lateral (see also (i)) femorotibial injection site.



**Requirements:** 20 gauge 40 mm needle.

**Difficulty:** Difficult.

**Method:** The needle is inserted horizontally caudal to the lateral patellar ligament and cranial to the long digital extensor tendon 1-2 cm proximal to the tibial plateau. An alternative injection site is caudal to the long digital extensor tendon and cranial to the lateral collateral ligament 1-2 cm proximal to the tibial plateau.

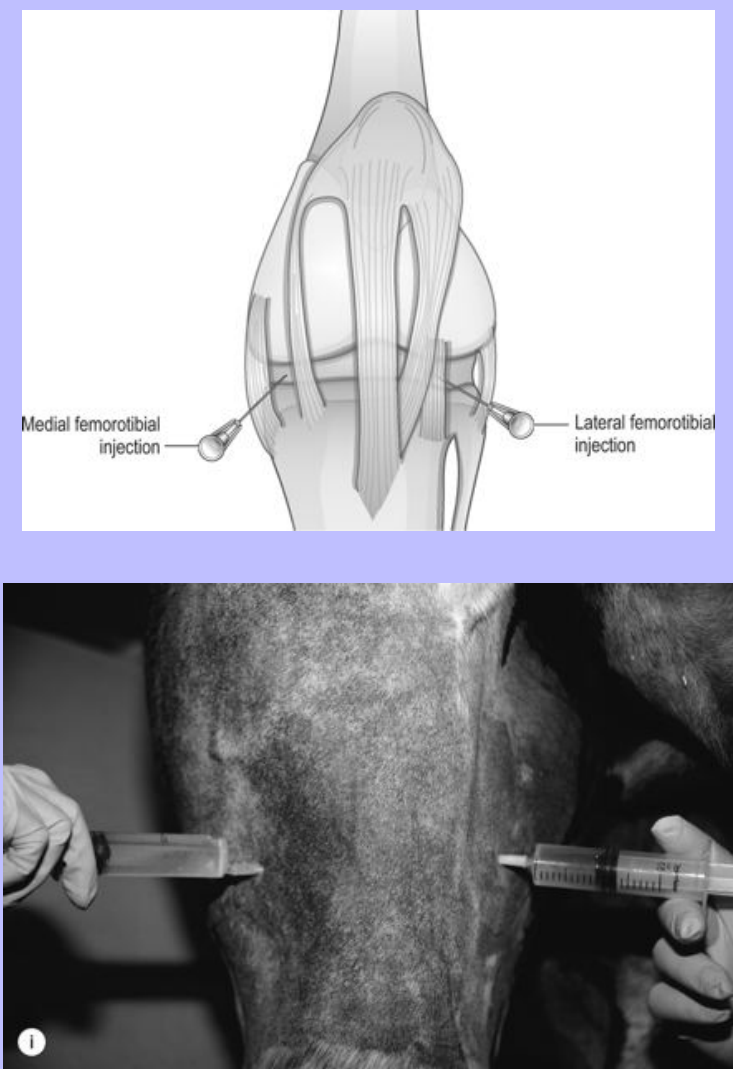


**NB** In contrast to the medial FT and FP joints, an effusion is rarely palpable in this joint.

420

Fig. 4.75e Dorsal view (see also (i)) of both the medial and lateral femorotibial injection sites.

421



421

Table 4.8 Local anaesthetic agents

422

Agent	Onset (min)	Duration (h)	Relative potency	Irritancy
Lidocaine (lignocaine)	5	1–2	1	
Mepivacaine	11/12	2–4	1	Less
Prilocaine	5	1–2	1	=
Bupivacaine	11/12	4–8	2–4	Less

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Procaine	15	<1	0.5	=
----------	----	----	-----	---

\* Compared with lidocaine (lignocaine) hydrochloride.

21.12.15 Guide to volumes of lidocaine (lignocaine) hydrochloride (2%)/mepivacaine hydrochloride (2%) used

Table 4.9 Regional nerve block

Nerve block	mL 2% lidocaine (lignocaine)/mepivacaine
Palmar digital	2.0
Palmar	5
Palmar metacarpal	3–5
Median	10–20
Ulnar	10
Musculocutaneous	10
Superficial fibular	10–15
Deep fibular	10–15
Tibial	15–25

422

Table 4.10 Bursal/thecal anaesthesia

Site	mL 2% lidocaine (lignocaine)/mepivacaine
Navicular bursa	5
Digital flexor tendon sheath	10

423

Table 4.11 Intra-articular anaesthesia

Nerve block	mL 2% lidocaine (lignocaine)/mepivacaine
Coffin joint	5
Pastern joint	5
Fetlock joint	10
Intercarpal joint	5–10
Radiocarpal joint	5–10
Elbow joint	20
Shoulder joint	20–30
Tarsometatarsal joint	3–5
Intertarsal joint	3
Tibiotarsal joint	10–20
Femoropatellar joint	20–30
Medial femorotibial joint	20–30
Lateral femorotibial joint	20–30

### 22 Section 9 Sign of impending parturition

The majority of Thoroughbred conceptions are closely monitored and the 'expected foaling date' can be readily predicted. However, 'normal' gestation lengths can vary widely (320-400 days) and some mares 'habitually' foal early or late. In paddock-bred mares service and therefore foaling dates are often unknown and foaling may occur 'unexpectedly'.

Regular observation of the mare allows the owner to identify changes which indicate the proximity of foaling, enabling the attending veterinarian to be informed in reasonable time. Most foalings are normal and occur without interference but knowledge of imminent foaling allows careful observation and rapid intervention if required.

Table 4.12 Natural indicators of impending parturition

Time before birth	Signs
~3 months	<b>Increased abdominal size</b> (increasingly lateral asymmetry)
2 weeks–2 days	<b>Teat elongation</b> and mild mammary enlargement with obvious udder development usually in last 2 days
4–2 days	<b>Pelvic relaxation</b> and prominent tail base (as pelvic ligaments slacken)
2–1 day	<b>Teat 'waxing'</b> (wax candles) usually indicate imminent foaling = UNPREDICTABLE <b>'Milk' calcium concentrations</b> in excess of 10 mmol/L indicate imminent foaling (generally that night or tomorrow) = RELIABLE
Few hours	Associated with onset of <b>stage 1 labour: Behavioural changes</b> – restlessness, repeated flank watching, lying and rising, isolation, inappetence, sweating (very similar to signs of mild spasmodic colic) <b>Colostrum leakage/ejection</b>

### 23 Section 10 Neonatal assessment and scoring of foals

#### 23.1 EVALUATION OF THE NEWBORN FOAL

Evaluation of the newborn foal is very important as it provides the first and earliest opportunity to assess its potential viability. It also allows a veterinarian to assess whether there is anything that needs to be addressed immediately e.g. provision of oxygen, artificial (positive pressure) ventilation, blood transfusion, antibiotics etc.

##### 23.1.1 APGAR<sup>1</sup> scoring system

Foals are best scored at 1-3 minutes of age. Note however that foaling mares exhibit a natural period of tranquility following the expulsion of the foal (foal usually still has hind legs in birth canal). During this stage the foal's umbilical circulation is still very active (a pulse is still palpable in umbilical artery) and the uterus is actively contracting. This causes a progressive arterial resistance and an active return of the foal's venous blood into its systemic circulation. This is a very important stage of delivery and disturbances to assess foals at this stage may be counterproductive. Early rupture of the cord resulting from early disturbance of the mare may result in significant deprivation for the foal. Up to 1 litre of circulating blood may be left in the placental circulation when rupture is rapid. Adaptation must under these circumstances be abrupt and this allows little scope for interference in the event of a problem.

##### 23.1.1.1 Note:

1. Provided problems are recognised early even some seriously depressed foals can be saved with early effective intensive care. Some conditions arise before birth so accurate history and careful clinical assessment is vital! Owners can be taught to assess the foal at birth – this does not reduce the necessity for a full examination as soon after birth as possible.
2. Many high-risk foals look relatively normal at birth and up to 12-18 hours of age. Once problems develop, deterioration is usually rapid. This makes early recognition of problems and important management procedure.
3. Newborn foals which are high risk or which show any evidence of respiratory or neurological (or other) compromise should be subjected to APGAR scoring system at regular intervals over the first 30 minutes. Apparently normal foals should be scored once only and then left alone.

#### Normal birth weight of Thoroughbred foals:

- 42-46 kg (primiparous mares).
- 48-52 kg (multiparous mares).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 4.13 Normal foal assessment at birth

Time	Temp (0° C)	Pulse (/min)	Resp (/min)	Notes
0–1 min	37.0–37.5	70	70	Hypoxia/metabolic + resp acidosis
5–30 min	36.8–37.0	120	50	Cord rupture/shivering/righting – attempts to stand/sucking reflex
30–60 min	37.5–38.2	140	40	Co-ordination + standing, maternal recognition
1–2 h	38.0	120	35	Teat seeking, follows mare COLOSTRUM IDEAL
2–12 h	38.0	100	35	Meconium/urine <sup>*</sup> passed COLOSTRUM ESSENTIAL
12–48 h	38.0	90	30	Bonding. Closure of FO + DA NO more colostral absorption

\* Note: first urine usually passed by colt foals 5–10 hours; filly foals 8–12 hours.

Table 4.14 Birth (APGAR) (assessed in first 5 minutes of life)

Score/value	0	1	2
Heart rate	Undetectable	<60	>60
Respiratory rate	Undetectable	Slow/irregular	Regular >60
Muscle tone	Limp	Flexed extremities	Sternal recumbency
Nasal response	Nil	Grimace/movement	Sneeze/rejection
<b>Interpretation:</b>			
Normal foals score: 7–8			
Moderate depression: 4–6			
Marked depression: 1–4			
DEAD: 0			

428

### Methods for measurement of IgG in plasma of foals include:

429

- Zinc sulphate turbidity test (see p. 46).
- Single radial immunodiffusion test (SRID).
- Latex agglutination test.
- Glutaraldehyde test.
- ELISA (CITE) test.
- Total protein assay electrophoresis.

1 Vaala WE, Sertich PL (1994) Management strategies for mares at risk for periparturient complications. Veterinary Clinics of North America 10:237-265.

## 23.2 REFERRAL OF FOALS TO A SPECIALIST CENTRE

Many diseases and conditions can be effectively treated on the farm but this will depend on:

## Section 10 Neonatal assessment and scoring of foals

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- The facilities available for nursing of both mare and foal.
- The number of support staff available and their ability and experience (enthusiasm is seldom in short supply – at least in the early stages of the nursing).
- The experience and facilities of the clinician.
- The condition of the foal and the mare and their tolerance of transportation (e.g. some mares may not tolerate transport and so might jeopardise the foal and its handlers).
- The specific needs of the parent, e.g. splinting of a fractured leg, control of seizures, correction of hydration and electrolyte status.
- The distance to the centre and the time the journey is likely to take.

23.2.1

### Considerations prior to referral of a sick foal to a specialist unit<sup>2</sup>

1. **An early decision** to refer is clearly better than undue delay. There is little rationale in sending a dying foal, which has little or no hope of surviving the journey, let alone the rigors of an intensive care regimen. The mare and the foal should be considered together and individually; not just the condition that is of most concern e.g. has the foal got ‘bent’ legs or a septic joint etc. which might influence the prognosis markedly.
2. **Referral should be considered seriously.** A journey may make the condition worse. It is wise to seek advice from the referral hospital early if there are doubts about the necessity to transport the foal. The referral centre will be grateful for continued contact in the early stages; they may be able to give advice and avoid transporting the foal unnecessarily. This will also give the centre useful information before the arrival of the foal.
3. **Consider whether proper care can be given on the farm.** Drugs and equipment (including laboratory support may be essential to the survival of the foal in some cases but in others minimal supportive equipment may be needed). The environment should be conducive to maintenance of body temperature and hygiene for example.

429  
431

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Table 4.15 Sepsis scoring

	Factor	4	3	2	1	0	Score
<b>HISTORY</b>	High risk foaling		Yes			No	
	Pre/dys-mature (gestational days)		<300	300–310	311–330	>331	
	Neutrophils ( $\times 10^9/L$ )		2.0	2.0–4.0	4.0–8.0	Normal	
<b>HAEMATOLOGY</b>	Band neutrophils ( $\times 10^9/L$ )		> 0.2	0.05–0.2		<0.05	
	Toxic neutrophils ( $\times 10^9/L$ )	++++	+++	++	+	0	
	Fibrinogen (g/L)		>6.0	4.5–6	3.0–4.5	<3.0	
<b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>	Glucose (mmol/L)		<3.0		3.0–4.5	>4.5	
	IgG (g/L) <sup>#</sup>	< 2.0	2.0–4.0	4.0–6.0	6.0–8.0	>8.0	
	Petechiae/scleral injection <sup>*</sup>		+++	++	+	Nil	
<b>CLINICAL SIGNS</b>	Pyrexia ( $^{\circ}C$ )			> 39 $^{\circ}C$	38–39 $^{\circ}C$	Normal	
	Hypotonia/coma/depression/convulsion			Marked	Mild	Nil	
	Uveitis/diarr./dyspnea/joint ill/wounds		Yes			No	
							<b>Total score</b>
SCORE (90% accurate): $\geq 11$ = SEPSIS; $< 11$ = NON-SEPSIS.							
* Not associated with trauma							
# Zinc sulphate turbidity.							

- Are the correct drugs, fluids and catheters available?
- Is a suitable stomach tube or foal feeding tube available?
- Can oxygen be administered easily and safely over the full 24-hour day?
- Is a **respirator** available?
- **Assuming that all the equipment for the particular foal is present does the clinician have experience in their use/administration?**
- Is there **suitable, experienced help** available to maintain the effort after the clinician leaves the premises?

**If NO to any of these – refer immediately and expedite departure!**

- The likely cost** of the procedure must be discussed with the owner/stud manager. Foal intensive care is a very expensive affair and the implications (win or lose) need to be considered before starting out.
- The nearest referral centre with known expertise and the facilities to cope should be selected.** There is no point in sending the foal to another similarly equipped or experience practice just to shift responsibility for the foal to someone else.
- Phone and discuss** the case early (preparation is maximised and guidance can be given which might save the foal's life or may prevent an unnecessary journey).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

7. **A written record of all clinical findings** and any procedures (including the timing and doses of any drugs given) should be sent with the foal. The letter should be signed by the clinician and it should include contact numbers and addresses.
8. All specimens taken (e.g. peritoneal fluid, blood or joint fluid) should be packed accordingly and sent with the foal.
9. **The placenta** should be sent if available (packed on ice in a clean, sealed plastic bag).
10. If the mare is not accompanying the foal, **some milk/colostrum** should be obtained and sent with the foal.
11. **Interested insurance company** should be **informed**; this is often forgotten in the heat of the moment and failure to comply with policy procedures may create difficulties later on.
12. **As soon as laboratory results become available these should be sent by fax or email to the referral centre.**

2 Geiser DR, Henton JE (1986) Transportation of the equine neonatal patient. Equine Practice 8:19-24.

431

### 23.3 TRANSPORTATION OF THE SICK OR INJURED FOAL

432

The most significant aspects are<sup>3,4</sup>

#### (a) Restraint and protection from self-inflicted or other trauma.

- If the mare and foal cannot be safely transported together consider sending the foal first and follow with the mare in another transporter.
- Physical support helps if the foal is amenable to this. Sternal recumbency is the best physiological supportive position and this should be maintained during recumbency as far as possible.
- If the foal is in pain and thrashing or convulsing, suitable medication to control pain and seizures should be given (see p. 103).

Seizure control is usually best using diazepam at 5-20 mg to effect in 5-mg increments<sup>5</sup>.

DO NOT USE ACEPROMAZINE or XYLAZINE.

Handlers may be instructed to administer repeat doses during travel via an intravenous catheter.

It is always wise to check the blood glucose of any convulsing neonatal foal prior to and during transportation (if possible).

#### (b) Prevention of hypothermia.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Take rectal temperature before starting and take appropriate measures to restore to normal, e.g. blankets, bottles and rectal gloves filled with warm water and tied.
- Do not put the foal onto hot surfaces – application of direct heat can harm the circulation and cause skin damage/thermal necrosis.
- It is sometimes possible to have the foal in the heated cab and still within sight of the mare.

**(c) Maintenance of blood glucose and prevention of nutritional depletion (energy, fluids and electrolytes are earliest and most significant requirements).**

- Maintenance of normal blood glucose is particularly for recumbent or weak foals.
- Blood glucose should be checked before departure with a dextrose stick.
- If blood glucose is less than 2.5 mmol/L and the journey is likely to be longer than 1-2 hours it is wise to place an intravenous catheter and administer warm 5% glucose solution at 4 mL/kg bodyweight/hour. It is probably unwise to administer a large bolus of glucose intravenously at the start of the journey as this might easily induce a rebound hypoglycemia.

432

- Administration of 200-250 mL mare's milk or colostrum by stomach tube is helpful if the foal has not been feeding and if there is no nasogastric reflux.

433

**(d) A sample of the colostrum should be sent with the foal so that the specialist centre can assess its quality.**

- A sample for analysis will be helpful especially if the foal is less than 18 hours old.

**(e) If the foal has any respiratory compromise<sup>6</sup> it should not be left in lateral recumbency.**

- Sternal recumbency is very helpful to normal lung function.
- Oxygen should be administered if:
  - the respiratory rate is less than 30/min or greater than 80/minute;
  - mucous membranes are pale or cyanotic;
  - there is any evidence of respiratory tract infection.
- A nasopharyngeal tube is easy to insert and is well-tolerated by foals. A direct oxygen line into the trachea inserted percutaneously is also available.
- Oxygen can be administered directly via a normal cylinder with a pressure-limiting valve. A demand valve can also be used.

23.3.0.0.0.1 **Note:**

- A normal E size cylinder will provide a flow rate of 5 litres per minute for 1 hour.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- If a facemask is used ensure that it has a release/overflow valve or that the fit is loose enough to avoid the foal rebreathing.
- If sternal recumbency cannot be sustained then the foal should be held in sternal recumbency for at least some of the time and should be turned from side to side at 30-minute intervals.

**(f) Unless the foal is already known to be infected, it is probably wise to delay the administration of antibiotics.** However, if there is any suspicion of sepsis a suitable broad-spectrum antibiotic may be administered.

- It may be useful to discuss the antibiotic selection with the referral centre.

**(g) The dose and time of all drugs and procedures used prior to departure and during transport should be recorded and sent with the foal!**

- It is unwise to rely on memory.

**(h) If the placenta is available send it with the foal in a sealed plastic bag packed surrounded with ice.**

433

**(i) Do not forget the needs of the mare if she is travelling with the foal or if she is to be left behind.**

434

### Therefore:

1. Confine the foal and mare in a quiet, safe area with (preferably) no opportunity for self-inflicted trauma. Size is very important as mares may become disturbed in a close confined area and traumatise the foal. A mare that will not settle should be placed in a separate stall so that she can see and smell the foal, which should then be held all the time by an experienced handler. Sedatives can be used to calm the mare but should not be used for the foal unless there is no option. A properly fitting foal slip should be used with suitable padding if necessary.
2. Foals inclined to convulsions or uncoordinated movement need to be fully bandaged with protective padding on limbs and head to prevent injuries.

The mare should have leg bandages applied, if only to protect the foal from damaging itself and her.

Body heat should be maintained by appropriate rugging and bandaging. This is vital when ambient temperatures are below 25°C.

- 'Space blankets' are a useful emergency measure and are extremely efficient at heat retention. Sweating is very 'cooling' and where present an appropriate undersheet made of absorbent cotton or wool is desirable.
- Towelling the foal dry before starting the journey is useful.
- In an emergency sleeping bags, sweaters (foals front legs through the arms and head through the neck) are good, simple measures.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Hot water bottles and electrically heated pads can be valuable but they can cause serious skin burns especially in compromised recumbent foals.

### 23.3.0.0.0.2 Note:

- THE DIRECT APPLICATION OF HEAT TO THE OUTER SURFACE CAN BE HARMFUL RATHER THAN HELPFUL.
- BEWARE OF LAYING A SICK FOAL ON AN ELECTRICALLY HEATED PAD – extensive skin necrosis can occur as the circulation is poor and compressed by the bodyweight of the foal. The skin is more liable to burn when cutaneous circulation is impaired.
- Do not transport a sick foal in an open pickup truck: heat loss and/or sunburn can be critical.

### 3. Prepare the box with adequate bedding over a rubber floor.

- An overlay of carpeting provides good insulation, reduces draughts and provides a clean surface.
- Shavings, sawdust or peat should not be used for young foals as they may harm the respiratory tract and the eyes in particular.

434

- ‘Vetbed’ artificial fibre blankets are excellent as they allow fluid to pass while still maintaining thermal insulation and dryness in contact with the skin.
- If the foal is standing do not make the bed too deep (6-12 cm is enough).

435

### 4. Trailers are less desirable than boxes and estate cars.

- Do not put a sick foal in the boot of a saloon car.
- It is illegal, irresponsible and dangerous to travel in a trailer with the foal (use closed circuit television if necessary).
- Equine ambulances are excellent but may not be equipped to transport a mare and foal.
- The greater the space and the contact with handlers the better.
- Always have at least two people with the transporter – it is unreasonable and dangerous for the driver to have to cope with every demand.

### 5. Avoid draughts in the transporter – but also avoid a steamy moist atmosphere by ensuring adequate ventilation throughput.

### 6. Stop at regular intervals unless separate staff are looking after the animals.

- Some foals will not nurse when moving so it may be necessary to stop to allow feeding.

### 7. Load the foal before the mare and guide it carefully and unless the foal can stand and coordinate normally the mare and foal should be separated in the box.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- It is not necessary or wise to tie the foal but a foal slip suitably padded is sometimes helpful with restraint.
8. If the foal has respiratory disease or compromise oxygen cylinders and possibly an indwelling nasal tube with continuous oxygen should be used.
- Fluid therapy may need to be maintained for the duration of the journey and so suitable arrangements have to be made using 'SUSI' flexible, extendible intravenous administration set.
  - The foal should be placed in sternal recumbency but should never be forced to adopt this position (it is better to leave it comfortable than to stress it).
9. It is often helpful to make written records of any measures taken before and during transportation so that the referral centre is aware of these.
- The vital signs, feeding regimen and frequency, rectal temperature, fecal and urinary output, details of birth and any subsequent relevant details can be supplied usefully.
- 3 Geiser DR, Henton JE (1986) Transportation of the equine neonatal patient. *Equine Practice* 8:19-24.
- 4 Cudd TA (1990) Neonatal transport. In: *Equine Clinical Neonatology*. AM Koterba, WH Drummond, PC Kosch, eds. Lea and Febiger, Philadelphia, pp. 763-769.
- 5 Madigan JE (1997) Transport of the critically ill equine neonate. In: *Manual of Equine Neonatal Medicine*. Live Oak Publications, Woodland, pp. 67-69.
- 6 Kosch PC, Koterba AM (1987) Respiratory support for the newborn foal. In: *Current Therapy in Equine Medicine*. NE Robinson, ed. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, pp. 247-253.

### <sup>24</sup>Section 11 Poisons and antidotes

Poisoning is rare in horses. A diagnosis of poisoning may have considerable consequences and so where this is suspected, and especially where foul play or negligence is concerned, the proper recording of the events and the results of all clinical and forensic examinations must be made.

In order for a diagnosis of poisoning to be made the following criteria must be satisfied:

- The horse must have had access to the poison.
- The horse must have ingested or otherwise contacted the poison; some poisons exert their effect by ingestion (such as lead or Ragwort), contact (such as amitraz), or inhalation (such as toxic gas, smoke).
- The poison must be found in the horse's body or the natural body fluids/excreta.
- The clinical signs must be fully consistent with the defined effects of the poison.
- The pathological effects and morbid findings must be consistent with the known effects of the poison and the poison must be found in the appropriate distribution in clinically significant amounts within the organs of the body.

Defined acceptable (safe) or toxic concentrations of poisons are reasonably well established for most species but there is scanty information about the horse. Most legal opinion relies upon extrapolated information from other species. Drug clearance periods are not well established in horses.

If poisoning is suspected it is highly advisable to seek support from another professional colleague and to ensure that the correct procedures are undertaken with appropriate recordings. Samples for analysis should be taken into formalin and onto ice and transferred immediately under sealed cover to the nearest forensic laboratory.

The commonest routine test for 'poisoning' in horses is the misuse of drugs to mask clinical disease during prepurchase examination or to alter performance. The Veterinary Defence Society (VDS), UK stores samples taken routinely during prepurchase examinations by their members for a defined period (usually 6 months). The Racecourse Securities Laboratory (UK) is usually empowered to analyse the samples for drug contamination on behalf of the purchaser.

Few of the genuine poisons that horses get access to have specific antidotes (see p. 254) and treatment is usually symptomatic. Treatment or antidotes usually require to be given promptly following poisoning. Ingested poisons such as metaldehyde (slug bait) or warfarin (rat poison) may have specific antidotes that may be given when signs are detected. However, if it is known that the poison has been ingested, the Veterinary Poisons Information Service (VPIS) can be consulted. In the UK this is a subscription organisation that is a worthwhile security investment. They provide 24-hour advice for any known poisoning. The specific name of the poison should be provided because some vary in either strength or component mixture.

General principles of treatment include:

1. **Rapid removal of the poison to prevent further contact/ingestion.**
2. **Prevention of absorption.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- By use of demulcents (including egg albumen) or adsorbents (such as activated charcoal at 1-3 grams per kg bodyweight) if ingested.
- By washing if skin contact involved.
- Rapid dilution with copious water. Dilution with either acidic solutions (using cider vinegar) or alkaline solutions (using sodium bicarbonate solution) may be used to neutralise alkaline or acidic materials.
- Emesis is not possible in horses but gastric lavage may be helpful if carried out soon enough.
- Purgation in horses is not really effective as an emergency measure and may in fact sometimes create more problems than it solves. Nevertheless there may be circumstances when a saline purge such as sodium sulphate can be helpful (e.g. as a supportive measure for the ileus that accompanies amitraz poisoning).

3. Where specific antidotes exist these must be given in sufficient dose by the correct route.

4. Symptomatic treatment may involve analgesics, sedatives, anticonvulsants, and fluid therapy.

438

439

Table 4.16 Known equine plant toxins in the UK

Poison	'Common' source	Clinical signs	Antidote/dose	Supportive treatment
Bracken <i>Pteridium aquilinum</i>	Pasture	Weakness/ataxia/staggering/muscle tremors	High doses vitamin B1 (IM NOT IV!)  (100 mg/day for 2 weeks +)	None needed
Ragwort <i>Senecio jacobaeae</i>	Pasture/hay/haylage	Hepatic failure	Nil	Liver support only palliative only
Yew <i>Taxus baccata</i>	Direct ingestion	Convulsions/sudden death	Nil	Nil
Mares Tails <i>Equisetum arvense</i>		Weakness/ataxia/staggering/muscle tremors	High doses vitamin B1 (IM NOT IV!) (100 mg/day)	Nil
Oleander <i>Nerium oleander</i>	Plant/leaves	Sudden death	Nil	Nil
Deadly nightshade <i>Belladonna atropina</i>	Hedgerows	Ileus/mydriasis	No safe antidote.  Neostigmine at 0.01 mg/kg subcutaneously. Flunixin	High volume nasogastric isotonic solutions to prevent colon impaction
Foxglove <i>Digitalis purpurea</i>	Direct or contaminated hay	Bradycardia/cyanosis/collapse	IV lidocaine 20–50 g/min	Oral potassium chloride 25–30 g

439

Table 4.17 Chemical/drug poisons in the UK

Poison	'Common' source	Clinical signs	Antidote/dose	Supportive treatment
Nitrate	Pasture fertiliser		Intravenous methylene blue	Oxygen
Chlorate	Weed killer	Severe depression	Supportive treatment only	Fluid therapy Oxygen
Amitraz	Iatrogenic (washes)	Colic ileus	Analgesia Fluid and saline purgation	Remove food
Lead	Paint/batteries	Central nervous signs	Calcium edetate	Fluid therapy Sedation/anticonvulsants
Monensin	Ruminant feeds	Cardiac failure	Oral 2 g Vitamin E	REST; DO NOT USE DIGOXIN
Paraquat	Weedkiller	Progressive pulmonary oedema	Nil	Nil
Warfarin	Rodenticide iatrogenic	Bleeding	Vitamin K <sub>1</sub> (0.5–1.0 mg/kg IV)	Whole (fresh) blood transfusion
Heparin	Overdose	Haemorrhage	Protamine	Whole blood transfusion

### 25 Section 12 Notifiable diseases

African horse sickness (Africa, Middle East, Spain/Portugal).

Anthrax (Worldwide).

Dourine (*Trypanosoma equiperdum*) (Africa, Far East, Middle East).

Equine viral encephalomyelitis (USA/Canada/South America/Asia/Japan).

Epizootic lymphangitis (*Histoplasma farciminosum*) (Africa/Asia/Mediterranean).

Equine infectious (viral) anaemia (Europe/Africa/Asia).

Glanders/farcy (Asia/Africa).

Rabies (Worldwide).

Contagious equine metritis (Western Europe).

Equine viral arteritis (Worldwide – especially Eastern Europe).

#### 25.1 Note:

In the UK salmonellosis and Warble Fly (*Hypoderma bovis*) are reportable rather than strictly notifiable in the horse but suspect cases should be reported to Local Ministry Officials (DVO).



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 26 Section 13 Investigative methods/protocols

443

This section is inserted to help the new/young graduate with some of the more demanding hurdles.

#### 26.1 REFERRAL TO A SPECIALIST/REFERRAL CENTRE

If you wish to refer a case to a colleague in a specialist or neighbouring centre you should observe all common and ethical courtesies (and you should expect them in return from the referral centre).

- (a) Contact the referral centre early in the course of the disease if you think it 'might' come to referral. They may be able to provide useful information for the further treatment/management of the case. This is particularly important for foals and other emergency referrals such as colic, painful eyes and joint infections.
- (b) Consider the implications of referral – welfare, cost and likely success. Discuss with the owner early. Discuss terms of insurance policies in force.
- (c) Consider reasons for referral (passing the 'buck' is not a reason for referral).
- (d) Consider the referral centre staff and system! – record all your findings honestly and legibly (laboratory and clinical) and send with the case (fax gives some effective advance warning to the centre etc.). Send any samples (e.g. peritoneal/joint fluids, placenta, blood samples etc.) with the case – changes may be very significant.
- (e) Ensure that suitable transport is laid on and that the referral centre has an estimated time of arrival. If possible be present at loading and administer such medication and nursing care as is required (e.g. nasogastric intubation, fluids, splinting etc.).
- (f) Instruct owner/agent/driver of any emergency measures, which might be needed along the way (e.g. check nasogastric tube/administer analgesics).
- (g) Remind owner of the need to contact the insurance company.

443

#### 26.2 CERTIFICATION

444

Veterinary surgeons are reminded that errors of commission and omission in certification are one of the commonest causes of litigation against members of the profession.

- (a) All certificates and reports must be completed accurately and as soon as possible after the event.
- (b) All certificates should include as full a description of the horse as is appropriate.
- (c) All certificates must be written legibly (or preferably typed) and signed by the named veterinary surgeon on headed/official notepaper.

**NEVER sign a blank certificate or page of paper – it is asking for trouble and you are likely to be disciplined in a severe fashion by both court and professional body!**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 26.2.1 The Twelve Principles of Certification (drafted by RCVS Certification Working Party, BVA, DEFRA)

(Extracted and abbreviated from the Code of Professional Conduct, RCVS.)

1. A veterinarian should only be asked to certify those matters that are either:
  - Within his/her own knowledge.
  - Can be ascertained by him/her personally.
  - The subject of supporting certification from another veterinarian with personal knowledge of the matters in question and is authorised to supply the supporting document(s).

26.2.1.0.0.0.1 **Note:**

Matters not within the knowledge of a veterinarian and/or not the subject of supporting documents but known to other persons (e.g. farmer, driver, jockey etc.) should be the subject of a declaration by those persons only. The veterinarian should be careful to avoid getting drawn into matters outwith his/her knowledge/competence or which are the opinions of other people.

2. The veterinarian must not be drawn into certifying (signing) any document which he/she cannot verify him/herself. He/she should not request certifying signatures from others who have no direct knowledge or competence in the matters covered by the documents.

26.2.1.0.0.0.2 **Note:**

The certifying veterinarian should never certify matters of hearsay or suggestion. The certificate should be a matter of verifiable fact.

444

3. Veterinarians should not sign a document that might raise questions of possible conflicts of interests, e.g. certificates relating to his/her own animals.

445

26.2.1.0.0.0.3 **Note:**

In the event that conflicts of interest are present, an independent second opinion/expert should be sought.

4. All certificates should be written in clear understandable English with the minimum of technical jargon. The meaning of the certificate should be clear and unequivocal.

26.2.1.0.0.0.4 **Note:**

Most certificates will be read by non-veterinarians at some stage and so excessive technical language should be avoided.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

5. Certificates should not use words, expressions, phrases or statements that are capable of more than one meaning.
6. Certificates should be produced on a single sheet of paper wherever possible (and where this is impossible the whole document should be bound together so that it is indivisible and tamperproof). Each page should be signed. Each document should carry a unique number with copies being retained by the issuing authority/person who should be able to identify the document easily by reference to the number.
7. Certificates should be written in the first language of the veterinarian signing them. In the event of translation being required, a certified official translation should be attached.
8. All certificates should include a positive identification of each and every animal to which it refers (unless this is impractical such as in day-old chicks). For equine certificates this should include the normal sketch and/or narrative description. The minimum permissible identification is a full signalment and a brief written narrative description of the markings and features (see p. 450). **There are no circumstances when no descriptive identification is justified in equine certificates.**

26.2.1.0.0.0.5 **Note:**

The basic format required is typically used on equine vaccination certificates, ID documents and passports (see p. 479).

9. Certificates should not require a veterinarian to certify that there has been compliance with the law of the European Community (or another country where appropriate) unless the specific relevant provisions of the laws involved have been provided and stated clearly and fully in the accompanying documents by the issuing authority.

26.2.1.0.0.0.6 **Note:**

Where legal declarations are required, veterinarians should ensure that they read the accompanying documents carefully before embarking on any certification. Legal advice may be necessary or advisable.

445

446

10. Certifying veterinarians should carefully read any specific instructions required by the issuing authority before undertaking any documentation.

26.2.1.0.0.0.7 **Note:**

This will obviate any missing matters in the certificate and eliminate any unnecessary inclusions. The document should relate to the requirements of the requesting authority and should not include matters outside this scope.

11. Certificates must always be presented in **ORIGINAL** form in a manner that is not subject to variations during copying (i.e. certificates must be completed in black indelible ink). Photocopies and other duplicates (photographic, faxed or scanned) are not acceptable.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 26.2.1.0.0.0.8 **Note:**

However, in some circumstances provision of an endorsed duplicate or copy may be provided. The duplicate must state categorically by endorsement that it is a duplicate/copy. In some cases the issuing authority may not permit any form of copy.

12. The certificate should be completed on headed notepaper that provides an unambiguous identification of the place of work of the veterinarian. The signature must be accompanied by an **official (practice/authority) stamp and must be dated**. The signature must include the printed name and the full qualifications of the certifying veterinarian. No deletions or alterations are permitted (except where these form an integral part of the documentation). Any unavoidable alterations should be clear and unambiguous and each must be signed and dated. No portion of the certificate is left blank in such a way that it can be altered or tampered with.

- Veterinarians providing a certificate should be satisfied that it is clear, honest and unambiguous. It should relate to matters within his/her competence and should be relevant to the matters concerned.
- Opinions may be included provided that they are clearly identified as such; indeed many certificates include statements of opinion as to relevance or opinions relating to clinical interpretation. It is useful to include a separate paragraph/section that is headed: **OPINION**.

446

### 26.3 **LITIGATION**

447

#### 26.3.1 **REMEMBER:**

Consult with the RCVS Code of Professional Conduct or contact the RCVS (or your governing body) as soon as you can. Early support and help has saved many careers!

You may find yourself on either side of a litigation procedure. You should conduct yourself with exemplary honesty and in a professional manner. No court will expect a witness to be perfect in every way and you may easily make mistakes and forget aspects of the matters in hand.

- (a) **Expert witness.** If you are called to act as an expert witness remember that you are not called to support or oppose either party. You are there to provide professional guidance and help for the court. Therefore do not 'wax lyrical' when you are being questioned by 'your side' and 'clam-up' when being cross-examined. The best professional witnesses are those with whom neither side has any quarrel! That is not to say that you should not have any firm opinions – the court will decide how to interpret your statements. You are not the judge and jury!
- (b) **Problems with colleagues.** Consult the RCVS Guide to Professional Conduct regularly and get to know its contents. Maintain your dignity and behave in an honest and professional manner. Consult with your governing body and if necessary your lawyer. Do not get involved in a 'slanging match' – leave it to the professionals. Most problems between members of the profession arise from lack of communication – so communicate and get to know your colleagues in neighbouring practices. Do not be afraid to apologise if you are wrong or have done something less than perfectly – it often cools off even the most aggressive situation.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- (c) **Problem cases.** Notes must be made in a bound book at the time of identification, location, reasons for procedures, examination, treatment, post mortem examination etc. It helps if there is a witness to the fact that contemporaneous notes are made. These should not be added to or otherwise interfered with at any later time. Further comment can be made on additional pages after the event e.g. laboratory results. Note should be made of the names and addresses of all witnesses and the exact circumstances of the event. The big problem is knowing which case is likely to result in legal complications. It is wise to make and keep proper records of all cases seen and procedures performed. Practice records should be kept for 5 years at least.

447

### 26.4 PURCHASE EXAMINATION

448

- (a) ENSURE that you are being asked to carry it out for the PURCHASER.
- (b) Be aware of the proposed PURPOSE/USE. Ensure your client has seen and tried the horse. Ask if there are any points which he/she has noted and wishes you to pay particular attention to e.g. breeding potential or obvious problems such as scars, bony lumps, cough etc.
- (c) RECORD DETAILS of the horse (age/colour/sex/height etc.), name, address and phone number of vendor and of stable where horse is kept (if different from owner details).
- (d) Check that suitable facilities and support personnel exist (darkened box/tack/suitable rider/handler/lunging facilities, exercising yard/field as appropriate). Obtain accurate travel directions.
- (e) It is preferable for the prospective PURCHASER (your client or agent) TO BE PRESENT with you during the examination.
- (f) Arrange APPOINTMENT WITH VENDOR (ensure horse is kept stabled overnight until you arrive – stable can be cleaned and horse fed if appropriate to time of arrival). Give specific time of arrival and arrive 10-15 minutes early!
- (g) On arrival observe yard and attitude of vendor (helpful/resentful/over-talkative etc!). Make discrete observations into tack room/office for drug bottles/packets, needles and syringes (glance into waste bin if you get a chance!).

IN THE PRESENCE OF THIRD PARTY (if possible) ask the vendor if there is anything he/she wants to tell you. Enquire specifically about VICES, disease history (e.g. lameness, coughing, colic etc.) and drugs either past or present. Record answers in notebook as soon as possible!

Observe horse from distance.

It is common practice (and a wise precaution) to take a blood sample from horses subjected to purchase examination (only with permission of the owner). This should include lithium heparin, fluoride oxalate and plain tubes (plasma/serum should be separated from each specimen, divided into two and stored in a freezer after being identified with owner/purchaser/name of horse and date of sampling and then sealed).

**RECORD YOUR FINDINGS IN YOUR OWN NOTEBOOK as you go along.**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### (h) Clinical examination.

- Observe restraint/haltering and acceptance or otherwise of restraint.
- Record age, sex, type and colour.
- Full clinical examination including darkroom ophthalmoscopy and thoracic auscultation (heart and lungs including trachea). Examine arterial pulses in all available arteries and record vital signs including temperature (more to show that it can be obtained!). Examine the skin carefully.

448

- Carefully palpate entire body surface! Scars e.g. Hobday, Tieback, laparotomy and any swellings etc. may be palpable but not visible! Record anything you find abnormal or equivocal.
- Joint and limb manipulations.
- Pick out and examine feet – test with foot tester/hammer. Feel for temperature differences between hooves. Check digital pulses (all four).
- Examine carefully for symmetry by standing the horse square and walking carefully round it observing anything unusual or non-symmetrical (left/right, front/back).
- If required make **approximate** measurement (this is not compulsory but might be helpful to purchaser) – official height certificate can only be provided by a veterinary surgeon approved by Joint Measurement Scheme.

449

### (i) Preliminary trot.

- In-hand walks and trot (straight line 30-40 metres, circles, turns, backing).
- Sharp/tight turns left and right.
- Flexion tests (whole limb) on all four limbs.
- **Note:** Ensure handler does not affect gait or try to alter gait/behaviour etc.

### (j) Strenuous exercise.

- Tack up – observe and record type of tack used.
- Observe at all paces under saddle (ridden circle and straight line) or lunge (if appropriate).
- Listen for clarity of wind.
- **Note:** Vary exercise extent with purpose/fitness.
- Auscultate heart (record maximal rate)/lungs (including trachea and pharynx), palpate feet and legs, and test symmetry of arterial pulses at end of exercise.

### (k) Period of rest IN BOX without tack etc.

- Observe the horse in its box (DO NOT LEAVE).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Complete ID.
- Check cardiac rate/rhythm (take time to reach resting rate) and character of horse.
- Discuss findings (in private) with purchaser if present.

### (l) Second trot and foot examination.

- Trot straight from box in straight line and test backing and turning.
- Full range of flexion tests again (full limb only).

### (m) Documentation.

- Complete full VDS/RCVS approved form. DO NOT USE OTHER TYPES because they may be inadequate in some areas. The tested and legally accepted forms are the best ones to use. Ensure that you have them before you set off! (Ensure that the copy is correctly set up!) Ideally this should be typed!

449

- State findings on the form, e.g. 'was heard to cough once' etc. (ALL – no matter how small/apparently irrelevant!)

450

- Give an honest opinion on the findings!
- Do not forget to record the results and what you have advised in your notebook at the time – even if this is done over the phone to the prospective purchaser.

It is unlikely that this examination can be completed properly in less than 1½–2 hours unless sections of the examination are excluded (for specific reasons). If any part of the examination is not performed (for any reason) this must be stated on the form (there is usually a section for this).

#### 26.4.1 Note:

- Few horses will be perfect (if they are it pays to be extra suspicious!).
- Remind the purchaser of the WARRANTY clause on the form regarding height, vices, ability, administration of drugs etc. Point out what you have not done e.g. radiographs, rectal examination, etc. and state why.
- **DO NOT DISCUSS THE FINDINGS WITH THE VENDOR.**

If you are uncertain of the procedure for this examination try to attend a suitable course on the matter. Purchase examination is the subject of numerous litigations against members of the profession and younger, less-experienced veterinary surgeons should be particularly careful – do not perform these unless you are certain of your ground and your ability to spot the problem horses.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 26.5 IDENTIFICATION

Identification is important for the original identifier and for subsequent confirmation of identity. The method is strictly laid down by various bodies and wherever possible an approved/accepted/official prepared form of identification should be used. This is included in all purchase and insurance examination documentation and in other official identification (Equine Passports)/naming and vaccination certificates. Only a written description is usually used in letters and descriptive reports but even these have minimal requirements (age, breed, colour and sex and name). The name of the owner and the place and date of the examination should be stated in all certificates. The Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons publish a very useful guide to the identification of horses (new edition published 2004).

#### 26.5.1 Colour

##### 26.5.1.1 Thoroughbred colours recognised by Weatherbys

**Black:** In a black horse the whole coat, including legs, body, flank and head is black. Any indication of tan in coat makes the horse brown.

**Brown:** The main tail, ears and distal limbs are the same brown colour without black components.

450

**Bay:** Bay horses have black mane, tail and lower legs. If there is a difference between the black lower and dark upper limbs and body, with some tan in flanks and muzzle, the horse is bay brown or dark bay.

451

##### 26.5.1.1.1 Note:

The terms light bay and dark bay should be avoided because differences often occur seasonally.

**Chestnut.** Variable orange to sandy colour, they can have a mane and tail which is lighter or darker than the body colour but it is not black. Lighter-coloured chestnuts may have flaxen manes and tails whilst darker chestnuts are called 'liver' chestnut. Black markings such as patches can be found and should be drawn/described.

**Grey.** Where the coat is a varying mosaic of black and white hairs with black skin. As greys age they tend to become lighter, approaching white in some cases. The mane may be a similar or lighter colour. Flea-bitten greys have small **groups** of chestnut hairs distributed through the coat.

**Roan.** Rarely encountered in Thoroughbreds. The basic body colour has variable quantities of additional white hairs distributed throughout. The quantity of these hairs varies with the season. Qualification of the description 'roan' (e.g. red) is acceptable however these horses tend to be going grey. Some greys have chestnut hairs scattered in the coat and some bays have white hairs scattered in the coat. These are best so described in the narrative.

##### 26.5.1.2 Colours recognised by alternative authorities

**Blue Roan.** The body colour is black or very dark brown with a generalised scattering of white hairs, giving a blue tinge to the coat. Head and lower limbs are usually darker, whilst white markings can sometimes be seen on the legs.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

**Red Roan.** The basic colour is bay or bay-brown with generalised scattering of white hairs giving a reddish tinge to the coat. White markings can occasionally be seen.

**Strawberry or Chestnut Roan.** Basic body colour is chestnut with a generalised scattering of white hairs. White markings can occasionally be seen.

**Blue Dun.** Variable stone/slate grey colour evenly distributed, with black skin, mane and tail. Occasional line (list) down the back and/or withers stripe.

**Yellow Dun.** Dusty yellow colour. Other features as for blue dun.

**Palamino.** Rich gold colour body with blonde white mane and tail.

**Appaloosian.** Basic coat colour usually roan with variable generalised mosaic of spots; may be dark on light or *vice versa*, over either part or all of the body.

**Piebald.** Large irregular but well-defined patches of black and white.

**Skewbald.** Large irregular but well-defined patches of white and of any colour *except* black e.g. often brown. The line of demarcation between the colours is generally well-defined.

**(Odd) coloured.** Large irregular patches of more than two colours, which can be less well defined than piebald and skewbald.

451

**Cream (cremello).** Cream-coloured with non-pigmented skin and pale/non-pigmented iris.

452

26.5.1.3

### Further coat colour terminology

**Ticked.** Sparsely distributed white hairs throughout the coat.

**Flecked.** Small patches of hairs of different colour to body unevenly distributed over part of the body. The degrees of flecking may be described e.g. 'heavily flecked', 'lightly flecked'. Colour of the flecking should be specified.

**Spots.** As for flecked but patches more circular.

**Patch.** Any large well-defined area (not covered by previous definitions) of hairs differing from the general body colour. The colour, shape, position and extent should be drawn and described.

**Zebra marks.** Where there is horizontal striping, often seen on caudal aspect of limbs but also neck, withers or quarters.

**Mane and tail.** The presence of differently coloured hairs in mane and tail should be specified.

**Ermine marks:** Black spots attached to or just above the coronet on a white limb. Often but not always associated with a black hoof coloration down that region of the foot.

**List.** A dorsal band of dark hair extending from the withers backwards along the spine.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 26.5.2 Whorls

Whorls are formed by changes in direction of flow of the hair. Simple whorls should be referred to as 'whorl' while other types should be further defined. They should be described as accurately as possible in relation to their anatomic position, and forehead whorls in relation to dorsal midline and eye level.

**Simple.** A single focal point from which the hairs diverge.

**Tufted.** A focal point into which the hairs converge from different directions and pile into a tuft.

**Linear.** Two sweeps of hair converging from diametrically opposite directions along a line.

**Feathered.** Two sweeps of hair diverge along a line at an angle, to form a feathered pattern.

**Crested.** As for linear, but the hair from each of the two directions rises up to form a crest.

**Sinuuous.** Crested or feathered along an irregular curving line.

The position of head whorls should be clearly described in terms of relation to midline and eye level and to white markings.

### 26.5.3 White markings

**Star.** White mark on the forehead, the size, shape, position and border should be described. A few white hairs are not described as a star but should be noted.

452

**Stripe.** Dorsal white marking down the nose and not wider than the flat surface of the nasal bones. The star and stripe are often continuous and should be described as star and stripe conjoined. If there is a gap in the stripe it is described as an **interrupted stripe**. The proximal point of origin should be described as well as the termination point. Any variation in width and direction should be described e.g. 'broad stripe', 'narrow stripe', 'inclined to left', 'terminating at upper left nostril'.

453

**Blaze.** Dorsal white marking covering almost the whole of the forehead between the eyes and extending beyond the width of the nasal bones, often to the muzzle. Any variations in direction, markings and termination points should be stated.

**White face.** White covering the forehead and front of the face, extending laterally towards the mouth. The extension may be asymmetric in which case that should be described.

**Snip.** Isolated white marking situated between or close to the nostrils. Its size, position and intensity should be specified.

**Lip markings.** Size, shape etc. should be described.

**White muzzle.** White covering both lips and extends to the region of the nostrils.

**White limbs.** White markings on limbs should be accurately drawn and described e.g. 'white to half pastern rising to fetlock on inside'. Lay terminology must be avoided e.g. socks, stockings etc.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

The following descriptions should be used when describing white marks without well-defined margins:

**Mixed.** White marking containing varying amounts of hairs of the general body colour.

**Bordered.** A white mark with a mixed border, e.g. 'bordered star'.

**Flesh marks.** Patches of unpigmented skin, e.g. often on lips, should be described as 'flesh marks'.

### 26.5.4 The sketch

The sketch forms an integral part of the definitive identification of the horse and must be completed correctly with white marks in red hatching and whorls shown as a black cross – with extensions if linear or feathered etc.

**Neck whorls.** Correct position of the crest whorls and neck whorls is best achieved by dividing the neck into three parts – anterior, middle and posterior.

**White markings.** Outlined with diagonal hatching in red. A few hairs without distinct outline are drawn as a few diagonal hatches in red.

**A bordered mark.** Indicated by a double ring with hatched centre space.

**A mixed mark.** As for white marking but stated 'mixed' in the narrative.

**A spot.** A white spot, if sizeable, must be outlined and hatched in red. A dark spot within a white marking (e.g. on a blaze) should be outlined and left blank.

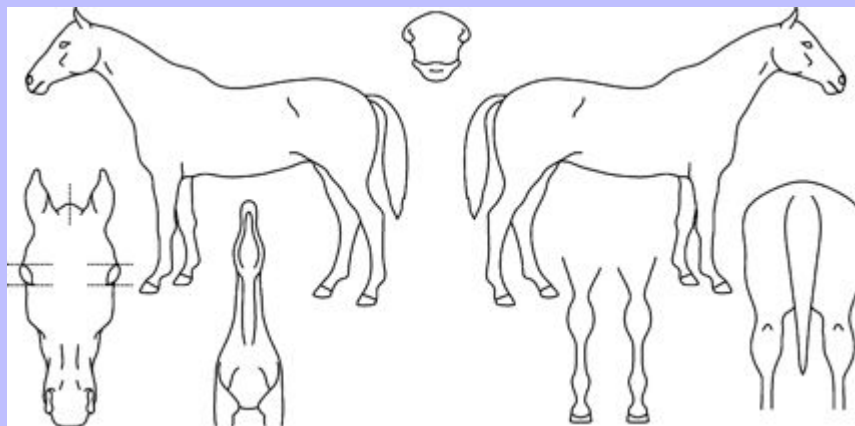
**Flesh marks.** Outlined and shaded completely in red.

**A bordered flesh mark.** Outlined by two concentric lines and shaded completely in red.

453

454

Fig. 4.76 A typical sketch outline for completion. Note that the limb descriptions must be completed from medial, lateral and posterior views. All the markings MUST be included completed.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

A **mottled flesh mark**. Drawn as for bordered flesh mark and indicated in the narrative.

**Scars**. Permanent adventitious marks (i.e. not congenital marks) e.g. marks made by tack, firing, branding and tattoo marks, and surgical scars. These should be described and drawn on the sketch by an arrow.

**Congenital abnormalities**. Any congenital marks or other abnormalities should be clearly described in the certificate and indicated on the sketch where possible, e.g.:

- **Wall-eye**. Lack of pigmentation on iris giving a pink or silver-blue appearance to the eye.
- **Showing the white of the eye**. Where some part of the sclera shows between the eyelids.
- **The 'prophet's thumb mark'**. Muscular depression seen usually in the neck, but sometimes in the shoulders or hindquarters. It should be drawn on the sketch by a triangular mark and described in the narrative.

### 26.5.5 Limbs

**Hooves**. Any variation in the normal dark colour of the hooves should be noted. In the case of a grey and chestnut the colour of each hoof should be stated.

**Chestnuts**. The vestigial digits form the chestnuts – sometimes referred to as 'night eyes' (USA). Chestnuts may be vestigial on, or even absent from the occasional leg. Their precise shapes provide useful identification features in whole-coloured horses. They are best drawn. Common shapes include **round**, **oval**, **pear-shaped**, **irregular pointed** (at top, below, etc.) and **notched** (above, below, etc.).

454

### 26.5.6 The description

The narrative should be typed or handwritten using block capital letters in black ink. All identification documents must be signed and stamped with an official stamp.

455

Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

Fig. 4.77 A typical narrative description form that is commonly included in all identification certificates such as passports, vaccination and registration documents. Note the non-technical language and clear descriptions of the markings that make the identification unique.

CERTIFICATE OF VETERINARY EXAMINATION  
OF A HORSE ON BEHALF OF A PROSPECTIVE PURCHASER

CERTIFICATE No:  
**V**

This is to certify that, at the request of (Name & Address) \_\_\_\_\_

I have examined the horse described below, the property of (Name & Address) \_\_\_\_\_

At (Place of Examination) \_\_\_\_\_ On (Time & Date) \_\_\_\_\_

NAME of horse (or breeding)  
RICARDO

BREED OR TYPE  
TB CROSS

COLOUR  
BAY

SEX  
GELDING

AGE by documentation  
15 yrs

APPROX. AGE (by dentition  
(See Note 1 - overleaf)  
AGED

INSTRUCTIONS 1) WRITTEN DESCRIPTION SHOULD BE TYPED OR WRITTEN IN BLOCK CAPITALS  
2) WRITTEN DESCRIPTION AND DIAGRAM SHOULD AGREE  
3) ALL WHITE MARKINGS SHOULD BE HATCHED IN RED  
4) WHORLS MUST BE SHOWN THUS "X" AND DESCRIBED IN DETAIL

LEFT SIDE

RIGHT SIDE

FORE REAR VIEW

HIND REAR VIEW

HEAD AND NECK, VENTRAL VIEW

MUZZLE

LEFT

RIGHT

LEFT

RIGHT

IDENTIFICATION

Head: IRREGULAR DIAMOND-SHAPED STAR DORSAL MIDLINE, CONJOINED STRIPE TAPERING OUT MIDWAY TO MUZZLE, TRIANGULAR BORDERED FLESH MARK BETWEEN NOSTRILS, MEDIAN WHORL UPPER EYE LEVEL, WHORL LEFT OF MIDLINE AT EYE LEVEL, MIDLINE POLL WHORL ADJACENT TO MANE.

Neck: WHORL UPPER THIRD RIGHT CREST, FEATHERED WHORL MIDPOINT OF LEFT CREST, TWO THROAT WHORLS, CRESTED WHORL LOWER THIRD TRACHEA, PROPHET'S THUMB MARK RIGHT JUGULAR GROOVE.

Limbs: LF WHITE TO MID-CANNON, STRIATED HOOF.  
RF NO WHITE, BLACK HOOF.  
LH WHITE HOOF, CRESTED WHORL PLANTAR UPPER THIRD CANNON.  
RH WHITE TO PASTERNS, WHITE HOOF, CRESTED WHORL PLANTAR UPPER THIRD CANNON.

Body: BILATERAL WHORLS BASE OF NECK, BILATERAL SHOULDER WHORLS WITH SINUOUS FEATHERING TO NECK, BILATERAL STIFLE FOLD WHORLS WITH FEATHERING TO WHORLS AT POINT OF PELVIS.

Acquired marks/brands/microchip: CENTRAL WITHER MARKS, SCATTERED SADDLE MARKS LEFT, NO MICROCHIP.

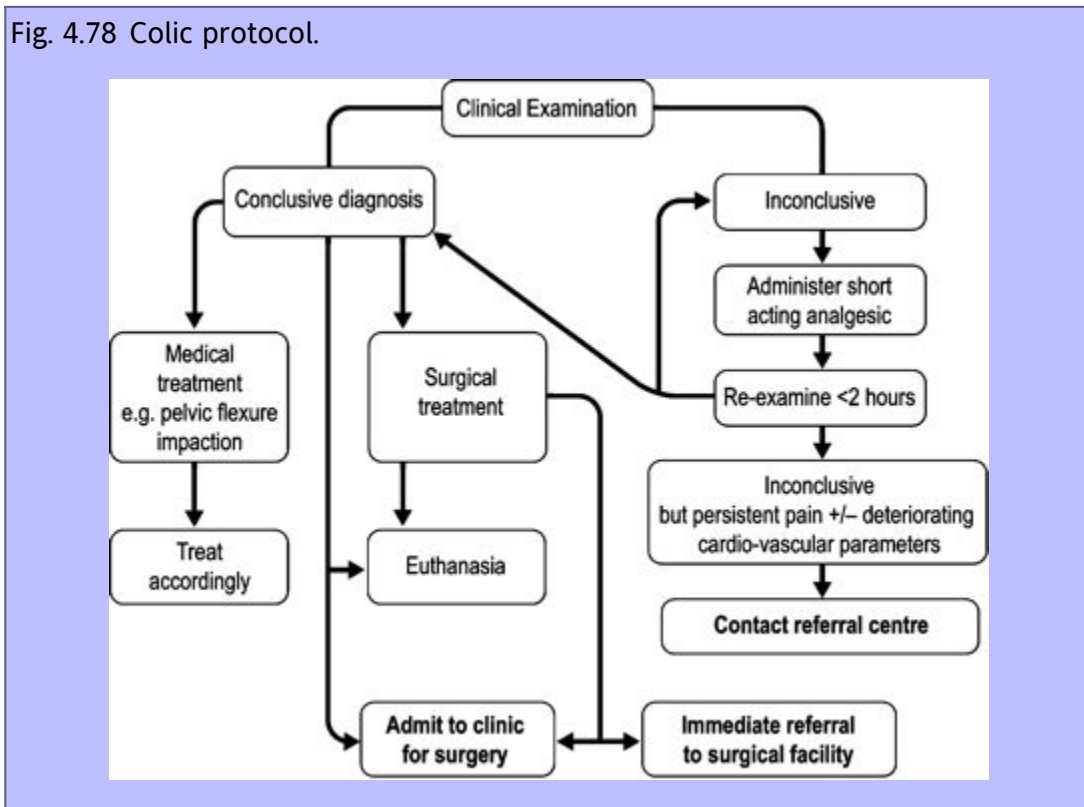
26.6 COLIC PROTOCOL

Do not be afraid to refer a colic horse to a specialist centre. No veterinary surgeon should feel under pressure to maintain an incorrect clinical approach and you will seldom, if ever, lose a client as a result of an early referral. The horse will be pleased with you and the owners will be satisfied that they are more likely to collect a live horse than a big bill and a dead one!

Section 13 Investigative methods/protocols

Page 13 of 15

Fig. 4.78 Colic protocol.



### Useful hints:

- Extreme pain is usually indicative of a surgical condition (you may make an occasional mistake but it is best to err on the side of safety).
- Abdominal distension is usually surgical and an absolute emergency.
- Deteriorating C-V parameters suggest a surgical problem.
- Reluctance to move (parietal pain usually suggestive of peritonitis and possible abdominal catastrophe).
- Blood-stained peritoneal fluid suggests ischaemic/strangulating condition.
- Persistent mild pain suggests non-strangulating obstruction.
- Diarrhoea is seldom an indicator of a surgical problem unless it is complicated by secondary intestinal compromises.
- Failure to respond to analgesics suggests surgical problem.
- Extensive disruption of bedding/stable etc. suggests prolonged/violent colic.
- Facial trauma suggests prolonged pain (may not be present at the time of examination).

456

457

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Do not subject a catastrophic case to the further stress of transport – be prepared to kill the horse immediately if this is indicated.
- NEVER ignore blood on a rectal sleeve!

‘The single most important factor that mitigates against the survival of colic horses is procrastination’.

GB Edwards, 1987

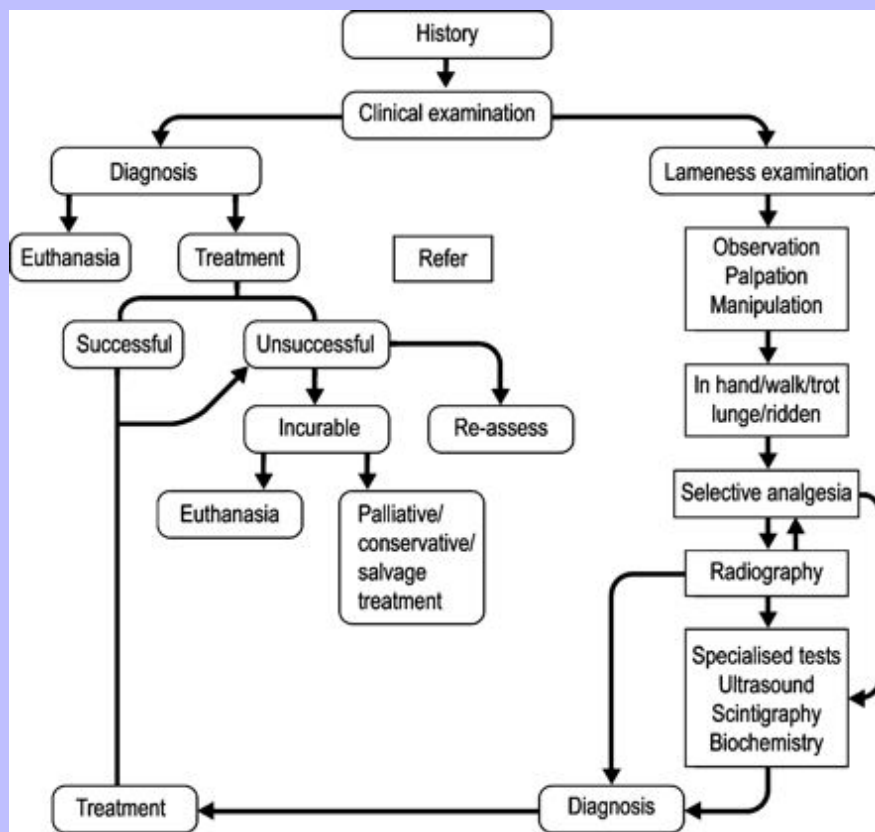
457

### 26.7 LAMENESS PROTOCOL

458

Lameness investigations should be carried out when the animal is lame, with the typical circumstances present, e.g. Shod/Unshod/After Rest/After/during exercise etc. This is particularly applicable to referral cases. Referral centres do not appreciate having to try to identify lameness in animals receiving analgesics and/or when they are not actually lame. If you are in doubt about the management of a referral case discuss it with your colleagues and with the referral centre specialist.

Fig. 4.79 Lameness protocol.



# Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

## 27 Section 14 Equipment for equine practice

459

### 27.1 FIRST AID KIT (FOR RACES/EVENTS ETC.)

Always arrive promptly (events usually cannot get underway until the full complement of emergency services are present).

Remember to ensure that the organisers know you are present and where you will be found (radio may be used). Stay where you are unless the organisers are informed otherwise. DO NOT be afraid to refer cases off the course to a hospital (use ambulance if necessary).

#### 27.1.1 Note:

All items should be clearly labelled and checked regularly (at least before every event). It is best to have the items marked (\*) in a small suitcase/box, which can be easily carried. It should remain with the veterinary surgeon throughout the event.

1. **EUTHANASIAGUN** (and appropriate ammunition) \* (only if you are licensed and prepared to shoot horses), injectable solutions \* sufficient to kill at least two horses (more if large event, far away from practice or you are only vet) e.g. Somulose®, Arnolds, UK (recommended), pentobarbitone (200 mg/mL).
2. **DRESSINGS:** Melolin \*, cotton bandage \*, cotton wool \*, Elastoplast \*, Vetwrap \*, Vaseline gauze, Intrasisite gel.
3. **HARDWARE:** Scissors \* (straight, curved), stethoscope \*, SUTURE KIT \* (see below), BLEEDER KIT \* (clamps, tissue forceps, tourniquet/Esmarch bandage), twitch \*, tracheotomy tube \*, safety razors (disposable), stomach tube.
4. **SPLINTS/CASTING MATERIALS:** Wooden foot wedges and axial splints (gutter/2" × 2" wooden battens) or Equine Emergency 'Ski' Boot. At least 10 rolls of casting material (e.g. Dynacast Optima®, Smith and Nephew) with suitable orthopaedic felt.
5. **DISPOSABLES:** Syringes (60/20/10/5/2/1) \*, needles, cannulae \* (10-24), suture materials \*, paper towel \*, sterile swabs \*, sterile gloves \*, disposable aprons/boiler suits (in case of contagion).
6. **DRUGS:** Local anaesthetics \*, butorphanol \*, detomidine \*, xylazine \*, acepromazine \*, thiopentone \* (thiopental), water for injection \*, tetanus antiserum, surgical scrub. Possibly antibiotics. Adrenaline (norepinephrine).

459

7. **STATIONERY:** Headed paper \* and notebook, red/black pens \*, invoicing equipment (your practice cannot afford to give the drugs etc. away – check practice policy before event). You are there to provide FIRST AID not full investigation/treatment.

460

8. **CLOTHING:** Suitable protective clothing/overalls, boots.

460



### 27.2 PRACTICE 'CAR BOOT' LIST

This is not a definitive list – individuals may need/want to alter some or all of this – but it may help you over the first few days in equine practice! You might even get the nurses to ensure it is all there at the start of every week!

KEEP ALL EQUIPMENT (yourself/clothing AND YOUR CAR) CLEAN – the quality of your work is reflected in the way in which you look after all of these and they are expensive to replace – your annual salary increment may rely on it! Additionally carefully maintained equipment functions better and is always available when you need it. If something gets broken – get it repaired as soon as possible.

#### 27.2.1 Hardware

1. **Handling equipment:** Twitch, rope halter, head collar, leading rein, Chiffney bit (usefully kept together in a cotton bag).
2. **Farrier:** Hoof knives (steel/file/oilstone), hoof tester, hammer, buffer, nail pullers, pincers, hoof cutters, rasp, apron. Usefully kept together in a compartmentalised leather bag or tray.
3. **Clinical:** Thermometer (mercury or digital), stethoscope, plexor/pleximeter, ophthalmoscope (with spare batteries), pen torch, TORCH (rechargeable from car), stomach tubes (foal/medium/large), funnel(s), scissors (curved and straight), tooth rasps (straight/angled), Hausman's gag, stirrup pump, parturition gown, flutter valve.
4. **Other:** RUBBISH BIN and sharps container. Waterproof marker pens/pencil. Practice stamp/pad, headed paper (in closed polythene container).
  - Purchase Examination/Insurance Examination and Slaughter Certificates, RED and BLACK pens. Vaccination certificates. LVI stamp. Pads and pens are usefully kept inside the car in a polythene box.
  - **GUN (locked in case/box fixed to floor of boot or under seat) (fewer police authorities are happy with firearm use by vets and they do not condone thefts or accidents!).**
5. **Surgical:** Disposable safety razors (or rechargeable clippers with car charger).
  - SUTURE PACK (sterile) [scalpel handle, scissors, forceps (rat/plain), suture needles, 2-4 pairs artery forceps, needle holders, swabs, scalpel blades].
  - Sterile and non-sterile gloves.
  - Suture materials (catgut, nylon, Vicryl). Penrose drains.
  - Wolf teeth extractor (Burgess Wolf-Tooth Kit useful).
  - CASTRATION KIT (**sterile:** Serra emasculator, scalpel handle, two to six large artery forceps, blades, suture needles, suture material).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 27.2.2 Disposables

1. Roll of paper towel, rectal gloves, sterile gloves, swabs.
2. Syringes (1/2/5/10/20/50 mL sizes STERILE), needles (disposable) (22 × 1", 20 × 1", 19 × 1.5", 18 × 1.5"), IV cannulas (18/16/14/12/10), Vacutainer holders/needles (19 × 1.5").
3. Blood sampling tubes (EDTA/FI-ox/Li-hep/Plain) (preferably Vacutainers – "mini" are excellent), microscope slides (in clean sealed container) and slide carrier, bacterial/viral swabs (transport medium), faecal and urine pots, sterile universals/bijous. Universal bottles with 10% formal saline.

461

462

### 27.2.3 Diagnostics

Fluorescein strips, proxymetacaine (needs to be kept refrigerated!) or amethocaine (stable at room temperature), urine Dipstix.

### 27.2.4 Drugs

1. **Euthanasia solution(s)**, thiopentone (thiopental) (3 × 5 g at least).
2. **Anti-infective agents**: penicillin (crystalline, benzathine, procaine), neomycin-penicillin, TMS (parenteral/oral – powder and paste), metronidazole paste and solution, chloramphenicol eye ointment, neomycin eye ointment, gentamicin eye drops, povidone scrub/solution/ointment, surgical spirit.
3. **Analgesics etc**: pethidine (CD), butorphanol (CD), buscopan, xylazine, thiopentone (thiopental), ketamine, atropine injection (and eye drops).
4. **Anti-inflammatory drugs**: phenylbutazone (parenteral, oral powder/paste), arquel, flunixin (oral and parenteral).
5. **Dressings**: Elastoplast, Vetwrap, absorbent cotton, cotton bandages, melolin/allevyn, silver dressings. Poultices. *Dynacast Optima* (carry 6-10 rolls in a sealed plastic bag)/orthopaedic felt.
6. **Other**: Calcium borogluconate (20%), saline (1 × 5 L + 4-5 × 1 L), Hartman's solution (5 × 5 L minimum – more may be required according to the type/grade of the event and the local climate), liquid paraffin (5 L minimum), Duphalyte (× 2), Ventipulmin, Sputolosin, WATER FOR INJECTION. Saline (4 × 250 mL and 500 mL sterile pack).

462

463

### 27.3 CLIENT FIRST AID KIT CONTENTS

A minimal client first aid kit should contain:

#### 1. Hardware:

- Scissors (straight and curved).
- Thermometer.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Mills wound irrigator.
- Plastic bowl.
- Disposable gloves.
- Paper towel.
- Razor blade (disposable).
- Teaspoon.
- Nose twitch.
- Penknife.
- Pen torch.

### 2. Wound management materials:

- Cotton wool (1/2 × 500 g rolls).
- Sterile gauze swabs (3 packs of 10).
- Sterile saline in bag (2 × 500 mL, 1 × 250 mL).
- Hydrogel (e.g. Intrasite Gel, Smith and Nephew, UK).
- Wound antiseptic (e.g. Chlorhexidene scrub, Hibiscrub).
- Salt (100 g in sealed container).

27.3.0.0.0.0.0.1

#### Note:

An approximately physiological saline can be made from 1 flat teaspoonful of salt in a pint of lukewarm, previously boiled water.

### 3. Dressings

- Absorbent dressings (e.g. Allevyn, Smith and Nephew, UK) (adhesive and non-adhesive in various sizes).
- Plastic film dressing (e.g. Melolin, Smith and Nephew Ltd UK).
- Soft cotton roll (6-8 rolls) (Soffban, Smith and Nephew Ltd, UK).
- Non-elastic conforming bandages (12 × 10-12 cm size).
- Semi-adhesive bandage 4-5 rolls (Co-Plus Smith and Nephew Ltd, UK).
- Adhesive bandage (Elastoplast, Smith and Nephew Ltd, UK).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

4. **Instruction booklet with personal details and emergency information** including next of kin and doctor's name, address and telephone number (in the event of an accident) **and details of veterinary practice** (name, address, telephone numbers).

### 28 Section 15 Anaesthesia

#### 28.1 FIELD ANAESTHESIA

Before embarking on any anaesthesia the attending veterinary surgeon **MUST** be satisfied that the proposed method is both safe and effective. The duration and depth required will depend on the procedure being performed.

##### 28.1.1 Sedation of unhandlable horse in a field

If possible, withhold water for 2 days – then add 3-6 g/45 kg of chloral hydrate (30-60 g total for the average-sized horse) to a gallon of water in a bucket.

The mixture tastes very bitter and it is unlikely even a thirsty animal will drink it all, but hopefully it will drink enough to sedate the horse.

Chloral hydrate is a 'pro-drug' and has to be metabolised to its active form in the liver. Therefore be patient and allow up to 30 minutes before disturbing the horse. If you have estimated the weight wrongly and have overdosed the horse it may become recumbent.

Depending on the level of sedation from the chloral hydrate you may want to 'top-up' the degree of sedation with a more familiar drug.

##### 28.1.1.1 Note:

Chloral hydrate does not provide any analgesia – so remember to give an analgesic if you are going to do anything that will cause pain.

#### 28.2 SEDATION OF PREGNANT MARES

Late term pregnant mares in particular can be a challenge to sedate or anaesthetise.

Many physiological parameters in the mare change with pregnancy, others (e.g. ventilation and circulation) are affected by the massive bulk of the uterus. Metabolic and hormonal changes also occur.

Most of the drugs we normally use will pass the placenta and will be found in the foetus as well. This is mainly a concern in late pregnancy or Caesarean section.

The aims during sedation or anaesthesia in non-obstetric surgery are to:

1. Maintain foetal oxygenation.
2. Maintain uterine blood flow.
3. Prevent premature foetal delivery.
4. Maintain maternal homoeostasis.
5. Ensure rapid recovery.

465

466

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

If it is absolutely necessary to sedate the mare it helps to stick to a plan in order to keep time of sedation/anaesthesia as short as possible and least stressful for you:

1. Prepare all the requirements you need for the procedure beforehand.
2. Try to keep the mare quiet and pre-oxygenate if possible by mask or nasopharyngeal tube.
3. If the mare is hypovolemic (sweating, not drinking over some period etc.) place a catheter to administer fluid electrolytes (2-10 mL/kg/h).
4. Sedate with **romifidine 20-80 µg/kg** (because it causes the least and the shortest intrauterine pressure increase and because there is no evidence that its use is linked with abortion). This can be combined with **butorphanol 0.02-0.1 mg/kg**. This provides sedation and analgesia but at high doses some ataxia may develop.
5. Provide O<sub>2</sub> as long as possible and let the mare recover in a quiet environment with close observation during the next few days.

For any procedure requiring general anaesthesia the mare should probably be referred to a hospital that can provide full intensive care support and controlled anaesthesia with positive pressure facility.

### 28.3 FOAL SEDATION

#### 28.3.1 Factors to consider

- Foals are small and have a high surface area to body weight ratio so ensure they are kept warm and dry to avoid hypothermia.
- They have a reduced ability to metabolise most drugs so take care with dosing, especially if repeated doses are necessary.
- Cardiac output is dependent on the heart rate as the myocardium is less compliant and they are less able to increase stroke volume.
- Foals often have a patent or partially patent ductus arteriosus in the first 24-48 hours and may have physiological murmurs over the heart base for the first 3 months.
- Murmurs can also occur due to fever, anaemia or high cardiac output.
- PCV is higher in foals (43%) and will fall to normal over the first few weeks of life.
- Oxygen consumption is higher in the first few weeks of life so foals are more susceptible to hypoxaemia, if possible maintain in sternal to optimise the PaO<sub>2</sub>.
- Fluid requirements are greater and they have a greater total body water (mainly in greater ECF volume) ideally foals should drink 25% of their body weight daily.
- Monitor the blood glucose levels as they are prone to hypoglycaemia (too much glucose can cause rebound hypoglycaemia when the glucose-containing fluids are withdrawn).

466

- May need to check IgG levels, e.g. cite test may need to give colostrums or plasma preoperative/pre-sedation.
- Sedate the mare especially if the foal is to undergo GA and keep her sedated until the foal recovers.

### 28.3.2 Sedation

1. **Useful to aid restraint** for procedure such as bandaging and catheter placement and to reduce stress.

#### 2. Diazepam

- 0.1-0.2 mg/kg IV.
- Mild sedation.
- Especially useful in younger foals and sick foals.
- Minimal cardiorespiratory depression.
- Will cause recumbency.
- No analgesia.

#### 3. Xylazine

- 0.3-0.5 mg/kg IV.
- Sedation may last for up to 90 min in foals.
- Can **combine with butorphanol** 0.02 mg/kg to enhance sedation and analgesia.
- Foals will tend to become recumbent.
- Heart rate will drop and so can compromise cardiac output (the second-degree AV block seen in adults with this drug is rare in foals).
- May cause some degree of respiratory noise due to muscle relaxation around the larynx and airway collapse.

#### 4. Other alpha-2 agonists

- Have too long a duration of action and therefore side effects.
- Detomidine may prove more reliable than xylazine when given intramuscularly.

#### 5. ACP

- Long duration.
- May enhance hypothermia due to the vasodilation caused.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Will not provide adequate sedation for most procedures.

### 28.4 DETOMIDINE DRIP SEDATION

#### 1. Potential uses:

- Prolonged standing procedures such as frontal sinus trephine, thoracoscopy and ovariectomy.

467

#### 2. Advantages:

468

- No need for repeated top ups.
- Aims to maintain an even plane of sedation.
- Can anticipate changes in level of sedation.

#### 3. Disadvantages:

- Time taken to set up.
- Cost.
- Possibility of profound sedation if not observant.

#### 4. Procedure:

- Place IV catheter.
- Sedate horse with 6 µg/kg detomidine.
- **Note:** May take 5 min to achieve full effects.
- Give an analgesic dose of butorphanol (0.05-0.1 mg/kg).
- Add 12 mg of detomidine to 500 mL of saline.
- For a 500 kg horse start drip rate at 4 drops per sec (~0.1 µg/kg/min) – dose is adjusted for other bodyweights.
- Aim to 'predict' requirements for deeper sedation and increase drip rate pre-emptively as there is an ~1-2 min lag in increasing drip rate before full effect is seen.
- When adequate sedation is achieved reduce to 1-2 drops per second.
- Horse should be able to leave stocks 10-15 min after stopping drip.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 28.5 PROCEDURES FOR EQUINE FIELD ANAESTHESIA

#### 28.5.1 Pre-anaesthetic assessment

##### 28.5.1.1 History

In all cases a history should be obtained. Important aspects of the history are:

- Has the horse been anaesthetised/sedated before? Were there any adverse reactions?
- The vaccination status. All horses undergoing surgery should be up to date with their tetanus and if not it is recommended to give tetanus antitoxin.
- Any known problems in the past, e.g. penicillin reactions, adverse reactions to sedation etc.
- Insurance details; this is important as most companies will need to be informed before elective procedures are carried out if the insurance is to be valid.
- Ensure you get informed consent before every anaesthetic.

##### 28.5.1.2 Clinical examination

- This is essential in all cases. However occasionally it may have to be restricted and a fractious animal may require sedation first to allow examination.
- The most important body systems with respect to anaesthesia are the cardiovascular and respiratory systems.
- Place a catheter before anaesthesia.

468

469

##### 28.5.1.3 Weight

Accurately measuring or estimating the weight is very important to avoid both under- and overdosing of the anaesthetic agents.

In the field it is often impossible to accurately weigh the horse and therefore girth tapes and calculated weights are very useful (especially for Thoroughbred-type horses). Some weigh tapes are specially designed for larger or smaller horses and are correspondingly more accurate.

#### 28.5.2 Pre-anaesthetic sedation

The sedation protocol will depend on several factors including:

1. The temperament and breed.
2. Significant findings in the pre-anaesthetic exam.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

3. Available helpers.
4. Environment.
5. Personal familiarity with the drugs available.

Route of administration is important and will vary according to the horse's temperament, the drug involved and the ease of administration.

If ketamine is to be used as the induction agent then the horses must be well sedated to avoid the excitement that ketamine alone causes.

28.5.2.1

### Acepromazine (ACP)

- 10 mg/mL (Large Animal Solution).

- **Dose:**

0.1-0.25 mg/kg per os (in UK only the paste form is licensed, the tablets are not licensed for horses).

0.03-0.1 mg/kg IM.

0.01-0.05 mg/kg IV.

- Onset 30-40 minutes irrespective of the route of administration so adequate time should be allowed before induction.
- Only about 70% of animals respond, and further top ups can prolong the duration of the side effects or lead to excitement and increased locomotor activity.
- Generally will not cause adequate sedation if ketamine is to be used.
- Mental calming effect can be improved by the addition of opioids.
- Hypotension by vasodilation, especially a problem in hypovolaemic animals.
- May cause profound hypotension and even collapse in very excited animals (treat with phenylephrine, not adrenaline (epinephrine)).
- Minimal effects on respiration.

469

- Spasmolytic, anti-arrhythmic.

470

- Muscle relaxation. Including the retractor penis muscle so the penis protrudes.

- **Care in stallions** as prolonged penile protrusion can lead to severe problems that may necessitate penile amputation!

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Inclusion in the pre-anaesthetic protocol reduces the risk of perioperative morbidity/mortality and may improve the quality of recovery by providing mild sedation in the recovery period.

### 28.5.2.2 Alpha-2 adrenoreceptor agonists

- These will normally provide reliable sedation for most horses:
  - Xylazine 0.3-1.1 mg/kg.
  - Detomidine 5-20 µg/kg.
  - Romifidine 40-100 µg/kg.
- Use the lower end of the dose range for the large horses and the higher end for the smaller horses.
- All will provide analgesia to varying extent; the duration of analgesia is approximately  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  the duration of sedation and therefore must not be relied upon as the sole analgesic agent.
  - All alpha-2 agonists will cause bradycardia (can be 50% of the original heart rate) and are dose dependent with higher doses producing more profound bradycardia.
  - The blood pressure will initially rise and then fall to resting levels or just below and the duration of this depression is longer than the duration of the sedation.
  - The cardiac output will be reduced due to this bradycardia and the fall in blood pressure.
  - If blood samples are taken after alpha-2s, glucose levels may be high due to effects of the drug.
  - They will increase the intrauterine pressure in both pregnant and non-pregnant animals and these may compromise the uterine blood flow and therefore possibly compromise the placental blood flow (see special cases chapter for the sedation of pregnant mares).
  - Alpha-2s can also cause sweating, shaking and panting.
  - The effects can be reversed with atipamezole (antisedan) 25-50 µg/kg. **This product is not licensed for use in horses.**

### 28.5.3 Analgesia

#### 28.5.3.1 Note:

- All horses undergoing anaesthesia/a surgical procedure should receive appropriate analgesia.
- The use of butorphanol with the premedication and the alpha-2 agonists used will not provide adequate analgesia.
- The addition of a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug will provide longer lasting and more effective analgesia.

470

471

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 28.5.3.2 Butorphanol

- Provides better analgesia for visceral pain than somatic pain.
- For **analgesia butorphanol doses are 0.01-0.1 mg/kg IV** (much higher than those used for sedation and has a short duration of action).

### 28.5.3.3 Pethidine

- The other licensed opioid in horses is pethidine. It must be given intramuscularly as it causes histamine release when administered IV; this will cause hypotension, excitement and convulsions.
- The dose is 1-4 mg/kg as it is a 50 mg/mL solution large volumes need to be given and it stings in injection and has a short duration of action (30 minutes to 1 hour) but is a good spasmolytic.

### 28.5.3.4 Morphine

- Not licensed in horses.
- Dose 0.1-0.3 mg/kg (0.12 mg/kg is usually about right).
- Provides 4 hours of analgesia.
- May cause ileus in recovery that may cause colic.

### 28.5.3.5 Carprofen

- NSAID.
- Doses 0.7 mg/kg IV q 24 h for 3-5 days.
- Useful for foal analgesia as potentially has less harmful side effects, e.g. gastric ulceration, but it is wise to always provide a gastroprotectant.

### 28.5.3.6 Other NSAIDs

- **Phenylbutazone** (4.4 mg/kg) for orthopaedic pain.
- **Flunixin** (1.1 mg/kg) for soft tissue pain.
- Always remember that buscopan contains the NSAID drug dipyrene and should not be given with other NSAIDs.
- Other NSAIDs – check data sheet of licensed products.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 28.5.4 Local anaesthesia

- This is a useful adjunct to anaesthesia and can improve the quality of anaesthesia.
- Most techniques are safe to perform and can be done easily in the field.

471

### 28.5.5 Induction and maintenance of anaesthesia

472

Adequate restraint must be ensured before induction of anaesthesia. There are several drugs available for induction of anaesthesia and the drugs chosen will depend upon personal preference, the maintenance regime to be used and the horse.

#### 28.5.5.1 Thiopentone (thiopental) (see later for doses)

- Given as a bolus injection following premedication with ACP, an alpha-2 or no premedication.
- Will produce cardiovascular depression and transient apnoea.
- Often used with GGE for induction of anaesthesia.
- Top-up doses cannot be used for the maintenance of anaesthesia due to thiopentone's cumulative effects producing a hangover effect and prolonged recovery from anaesthesia.

#### 28.5.5.2 GGE (see later for doses)

- A centrally acting muscle relaxant with no analgesic or anaesthetic properties.
- See [Part 3 section 1](#), p. 94 on GGE for more information.

#### 28.5.5.3 Ketamine (see later for doses)

- Dissociative anaesthetic agent.
- Direct myocardial depressant; however this is counteracted by an increase in sympathetic tone leaving an overall neutral effect on the cardiovascular system in healthy animals.
- Must be given following sedation to prevent excitement.
- Muscle hypertonus can occur following ketamine and the addition of a benzodiazepine or other muscle relaxant ( $\alpha 2$ ) will help counteract this.
- Can be used for the maintenance of anaesthesia but beware prolonged administration as an active metabolite (norketamine) has  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the potency of the parent compound and can prolong the recovery from anaesthesia.
- Will provide excellent analgesia.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 28.5.5.4 **Benzodiazepines** (see later for doses)

- Will provide sedation only in foals under 4 weeks of age.
- They are used as adjuncts to ketamine anaesthesia to provide muscle relaxation to aid induction and intubation with minimal cardiovascular side effects.

472

### 28.6 **TOTAL INTRAVENOUS ANAESTHESIA (TIVA)**

473

TIVA is the induction and maintenance of anaesthesia using only intravenous methods. It is based on the combination of two or three different types of drug, usually a muscle relaxant, a dissociative and a sedative.

The ideal combination of drugs would have identical half-lives, short elimination, and no active metabolites. Xylazine and ketamine have similar durations of action and therefore work well together; the other alpha-2s have longer durations of action and can therefore become cumulative if used in top-ups or triple-drip with ketamine. This can prolong the horse's recovery and this means an increase in your time.

The extra expense of xylazine compared to the other alpha-2s may be offset by this increase in recovery time.

#### 28.6.1 **Advantages**

- TIVA is easy to do in the field and there is less need for complex equipment than with inhalation anaesthesia.
- The cardiovascular depression caused by these combinations is usually less than that caused by the inhalational methods and arterial blood pressure may be better maintained.
- There is less stimulation of the stress response to anaesthesia with TIVA therefore it is regarded as a physiologically better method of anaesthesia than inhalation anaesthesia.
- Allows combination of several drugs to reduce the side effects of each individual drug.

#### 28.6.2 **Disadvantages**

- Ideally, oxygen supplementation should still be provided but this involves insurance implications for transporting O<sub>2</sub> cylinders in cars if horses are not to be anaesthetised on practice premises.
- Over-dosage can lead to respiratory arrest and often there is less equipment available for the supplementation of oxygen and IPPV.
- Extended procedures will have prolonged recoveries and excitement due to the accumulation of active metabolites over time especially if the procedure takes longer than anticipated.
- Once administered the agents cannot be taken back, whereas inhalation agents can be rapidly removed using IPPV in 100% O<sub>2</sub>.
- Anaesthetic depth may be harder to monitor.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Not ideal for surgery of the eye or upper airway due to maintenance of the cranial nerve reflexes.

### 28.6.3 Top-up TIVA

- This is the maintenance of anaesthesia with bolus doses of anaesthetic agent. The use of top-ups is easy to perform in the field but will produce an undulating plane of anaesthesia in the horse. 473
- Top-ups of ketamine are usually used, as thiopentone (thiopental) is unsuitable for repeat administration if using a total dose of less than 10-15 mg/kg thiopentone (thiopental) (i.e. 5.0-7.5 g total dose in a 500 kg horse). 474
- The top-up doses must be timed on the clock when using ketamine as it takes 1-3 min to start working following intravenous injection and if the top-up doses are administered when signs of lightening anaesthesia start then this is too late and the horse will become too light.
- It is advisable to have top-up doses ready prepared before anaesthesia and also to have a dose of thiopentone (thiopental) available for the horses that becomes light quickly or starts moving so that the plane of anaesthesia can be swiftly deepened with minimal risk to personnel.
- This method should not be continued for more than 90 min due to the accumulation of norketamine and prolonged recovery times. (See later for doses and regimes.)

### 28.6.4 Triple drip

- This is continuous infusion total intravenous anaesthesia. The triple drip can be used for induction of anaesthesia, or another method of induction can be performed. If the surgery is expected to last for more than 1 hour, then it is advisable to have an alternative method of induction so the maximum dose of GGE is not reached too early.
- There is a limited amount of time available when using the triple drip method, so the cases on which this is used should be carefully selected and an alternative method of maintenance of anaesthesia should be available.
- Infusion rates may be lowered if the visual and auditory stimuli are reduced, e.g. stuff the ears with cotton wool and cover the eyes.
- Monitoring horses on triple drip is different from those maintained with inhalation methods. The horses maintained with triple drip are receiving large amounts of ketamine. These horses may appear to be light, e.g. nystagmus, movement, changes in respiratory pattern, when they are actually too deep. If the drip rate is increased to attempt to deepen the anaesthesia, then the horse may appear even lighter due to increased amounts of ketamine.
- GGE is also cumulative. Too much central muscle relaxation can make the horse weak in recovery and prolong recovery or reduce the quality. Catechol is a metabolite of GGE and when it builds up it causes excitement and can lead to the horse looking too light, when in fact, it is too deep.
- Triple drip must be used immediately after it is made up. Any remaining solution must be thrown away and not used the next day; hence it can be wasteful and expensive for very short procedures. 474

### 28.6.5 Monitoring under TIVA anaesthesia

- Monitoring should be as any anaesthetic with a pulse rate and respiratory rate.
- As horses have a large cardiac reserve they do not need to increase heart rate to increase cardiac output (they just increase the stroke volume and therefore blood pressure), so heart rate is not a good indicator of a lightening plane of anaesthesia in horses.
- Horses also have a large respiratory reserve (unless they have respiratory disease); therefore they will not increase their respiratory rate with a lightening plane of anaesthesia. However, they will often change their respiratory pattern; this is often a sudden deeper breath. Equine respiratory patterns may change when they are too deep, e.g. ketamine can cause periodic breathing (which is several small breaths followed by a long pause).
- Remember that the use of ketamine will not abolish the cranial nerve reflexes; they should have palpebral and gag reflexes and may twitch, so monitoring their depth can be difficult.
- The depth of anaesthesia will undulate and top-ups should be given by the clock, even without the signs of a lightening plane of anaesthesia.
- Eye position is an unreliable indicator of the plane of anaesthesia in horses; the sign of a lightening plane of anaesthesia is nystagmus.

### 28.7 EQUINE FIELD ANAESTHESIA RECIPE BOOK

#### 28.7.1 Ingredients

- Appropriate location (no water, flat surface, non-slippery).
- Padded head collar and rope.
- IV catheter (preplaced).
- Ideally, source of oxygen, e.g. demand valve and endotracheal tube.
- Drugs for induction.
- Drugs for maintenance.
- Heparin-saline flush.
- Top-up drugs if patient moves during procedure: have 1 g thiopentone (thiopental), 500 mg ketamine and heparin saline ready to use in preloaded syringes.
- All other perioperative medication, e.g. analgesics, antibiotics, tetanus antitoxin.
- Sedatives for recovery.



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

### 28.7.2 Premedication

476

Table 4.18 Drugs for premedication

Drugs		Dose (/kg)	Route	Notes
ACP (acepromazine)		0.03 mg	IV/IM	Takes 30–40 min to work 'protective' during anaesthesia DO NOT USE IN STALLIONS
Alpha-2 agonists	Xylazine	1.1 mg	IV	10–20 min sedation
	Detomidine	5–20 µg	IV	Up to 80 min sedation
	Romifidine	40–100 µg	IV	Minimum 80 min sedation
'Magic' Mix	Detomidine	0.02 mg	IM	IM sedation for the ill-tempered horse
	ACP	0.03 mg		
	Butorphanol	0.05 mg		
				Leave unstimulated for 30–40 min (1 mL of mixture for 100 kg of horse)

### 28.7.3 Induction

- Choose location carefully, plenty of room, flat, clear debris, no bystanders, no water or roads.
- Pad head collar with foam or jumper.
- Once induced, position patient with dependent front leg pulled forward and if possible legs parallel with ground (especially if a longer procedure is anticipated).
- Remove head collar after induction to prevent pressure on the facial nerve.
- Covering the eye can reduce stimulus whilst the animal is under anaesthesia as well as cotton wool in their ears but remember to take it out!

Table 4.19 Drugs for induction

<b>Ketamine</b>	2.2 mg/kg after an alpha-2 agonist is given IV.
<b>Ketamine + benzodiazepine</b>	2.2 mg/kg + 0.05 mg/kg diazepam/midazolam after alpha-2 premedication.
<b>Thiopentone (thiopental)</b>	5–8 mg/kg after alpha-2 premed.
	10–15 mg/kg after ACP premedication.
<b>Thiopentone (thiopental) + benzodiazepine</b>	5–8 mg/kg thiopentone (thiopental) + 0.05 mg/kg benzodiazepine post alpha-2 premedication.
	10–15 mg/kg thiopentone (thiopental) + 0.05 mg/kg benzodiazepine post ACP premedication.

476

## 28.7.4 Maintenance

477

Table 4.20 Top-up anaesthesia

<b>Ketamine + alpha-2 agonist</b>	<p>Top up every 10–15 min (on the clock).          Give <math>\frac{1}{3}</math>–<math>\frac{1}{2}</math> the induction dose of ketamine and alpha 2-agonist.          If using <i>xylazine</i> top up every 10–15 min with ketamine and xylazine.          If using <i>detomidine</i> premed, give <math>\frac{1}{2}</math> initial dose at 30 min (i.e. with 3rd top-up of ketamine).          If using <i>romifidine</i> premed, give <math>\frac{1}{3}</math>–<math>\frac{1}{2}</math> initial doses at 1 hour, or one-sixth dose every top-up or <math>\frac{1}{2}</math> dose for recovery.          Ketamine is slightly cumulative therefore increase your intervals after 3rd top-up.          Can add benzodiazepine at 0.025 mg/kg every 20–30 min (after 3 doses extend duration to 1 h).</p>
Thiopentone (thiopental)	<p>0.5–2.5 mg/kg top ups as required.          Careful total dose does not exceed 10–15 mg/kg.          Works quickly therefore excellent for movement.          Can add benzodiazepine at 0.025 mg/kg every 20–30 min (after 3 doses extend duration to 1 h).</p>
<b>Note:</b> Thiopentone (thiopental) can be used after a ketamine induction and ketamine after a thiopentone (thiopental) induction.	

## 28.7.5 Intravenous infusions

- Induction as previously described.
- Make sure catheter is secure in vein after induction (and preferably placed down the vein).

### 28.7.5.0.0.0.1 Note:

GGE is extremely irritant if injected extravascularly.

- All infusions are given “**to effect**”, on average 1 mL/kg/h, or roughly 3 drops per second for a 500 kg horse, from a 20 drops per mL giving set.
- Horses should seem to be in a ‘light’ plane of anaesthesia with spontaneous blink and swallow responses.
- The plane of anaesthesia (and the infusion rate) should be reduced dose over time and should not exceed a total anaesthesia time of 2 hours.
- Always keep a top-up dose of either ketamine or thiopentone (thiopental) for movement.
- Don't forget about patient positioning with field anaesthesia!

477

## 28.7.5.1 Drugs and doses

478

- GGE 15% (150 mg/mL) + xylazine (1.5 mg/mL) + ketamine (3 mg/mL), i.e. 500 mL bottle of 15% GGE; add 750 mg xylazine + 1500 mg ketamine (£52.06 cost price mix).

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- GGE 15% (150 mg/mL) + romifidine (0.06-0.075 mg/mL) + ketamine (3 mg/mL), i.e. 500 mL bottle of 15% GGE; add 30-37.5 mg romifidine + 1500 mg ketamine (£30.70 cost price per mix).
- GGE 10% (100 mg/mL) + xylazine (1 mg/mL) + ketamine (2 mg/mL), i.e. 500 mL bottle 10% GGE; add 500 mg xylazine + 1000 mg ketamine.
- GGE 10% (100 mg/mL) + detomidine (0.02 mg/mL) + ketamine (2 mg/mL), i.e. 500 mL bottle of 10% GGE; add 10 mg detomidine + 1000 mg ketamine.
- GGE 10% (100 mg/mL) + romifidine (0.05 mg/mL) + ketamine (2 mg/mL), i.e. 500 mL bottle of 10% GGE; add 1000 g ketamine.
- GGE 5% (50 mg/mL) + xylazine (0.5 mg/mL) + ketamine (1 mg/mL), i.e. 500 mL bottle of 5% GGE; add 250 mg xylazine + 500 mg ketamine.

28.7.6

### Recovery

- Recoveries after total intravenous anaesthesia in horses are generally a lot more controlled taking fewer attempts to stand and once standing a lot less ataxic.
- Generally if left to their own devices they will stand beautifully without assistance.
- To assist in recovery a lunge line can be attached to the head collar allowing control of the direction of the head, whilst also allowing to move well clear of the animal (they can however cause a problem if let go and the line gets caught around the legs!).
- Downward pressure on the tail as the animal attempts to rise can also aid in steadying the patient.

### 29 Section 16 Current requirements concerning drug usage and passport regulations in the UK

(As at May 2005: Modified from BEVA Website with permission.)

#### 29.1 HISTORY

The Horse Passport Regulations have been produced in response to European Commission Decision 2000/68/EC, which required member states to introduce legislation to modify existing equine identification documents (passports) and establish identification documents for horses that were not currently registered. In July 2000 the UK Government initiated a consultation process on how this should be implemented and having considered the responses announced in February of 2003 that all horses and ponies should have passports by December 31st 2003. The 'Horse Passports (England) Regulations 2003' were laid before Parliament in November 2003 and came into force on the 30th November 2003. Implementation was initially supposed to be as from 31st December 2003, but was subsequently put back until 30th June 2004 to give everyone concerned more time to ensure understanding and compliance. These regulations were however subsequently criticised for poor drafting by a parliamentary committee and have subsequently been re-drafted to the current 'Horse Passports (England) Regulations 2004'.

The primary purpose of the original Commission Decision was to allow horses going for slaughter for human consumption to be identified and their medication history to be checked to ensure that it conformed to the relevant EU legislation (Regulation 2377/90). Its potential greater impact on horses in the UK was its potential to regularise the treatment of non-food-producing horses (obviously the majority) with veterinary medicinal products containing substances without established maximum residue limits (MRLs) – a substantive group of medicines vital to equine practitioners and horses. Without such a mechanism the marketing authorisations for these drugs were and are at threat and they could have been lost.

The proposals were therefore supported by BEVA on the basis that they would allow clear identification of non-food-producing horses and their exemption from medication restrictions. The advent of the option of not signing the declaration has muddied this water to some extent however – no alternative solutions to the threat to the availability of medicines were or are currently in sight.

There will hopefully be additional potential benefits to the passport scheme including information that will be useful in disease surveillance and control.

The accompanying DEFRA guidance notes can be seen at:

[www.defra.gov.uk/animalh/tracing/horses/nfg.pdf](http://www.defra.gov.uk/animalh/tracing/horses/nfg.pdf)

479

Veterinary surgeons who are involved in seeing horses are strongly advised to read the full legislation and guidance notes as these contain much useful information. The information below is simply the current interpretation of the Regulations as summarised by the British Equine Veterinary Association. These Regulations will require veterinary surgeons to carry out certain actions when administering/prescribing/dispensing substances or medicines to a horse. In brief these are as follows.

480

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

### 29.2 CHECKING THE PASSPORT

1. If you intend to administer, prescribe or dispense any substance or medicine to a horse ask to be shown the horse's passport. (If there is no passport supplied proceed as in '**What to do with horse with no passport**' – see below.)
2. Check that you are satisfied the passport supplied relates to the horse in question. (If you are not satisfied proceed as in what to do with horse with no passport – see below.)
3. Note which of the categories below the horse falls into:
  - (a) Declared as NOT INTENDED for human consumption (in passport Section IX part II).
  - (b) Declared as INTENDED for human consumption (in passport Section IX part IIIa) or
  - (c) The declaration at Section IX has not been signed in either part in which case you will need to proceed as if the horse IS INTENDED for human consumption, or
  - (d) The passport contains no Section IX pages in which case you will need to proceed as in what to do with horse with no passport – see below.

#### 29.2.1 The horse 'not intended for human consumption'

If the horse is declared in its passport as **NOT intended for human consumption** then it can be treated as at present (i.e. with drugs licensed for use in horses or under the cascade (see Amelia 8, VMD website <http://www.vmd.gov.uk/>). **There is no need to record ANY drug usage.**

#### 29.2.2 The horse 'intended for human consumption' or undeclared

If the horse **IS intended for human consumption or the declaration is unsigned** then the medicines used may need to be recorded in the passport (if in doubt record!) and withdrawal periods or complete exclusions will apply following treatment. This is unfortunately where life gets complicated!

##### 29.2.2.1 1. What medicines should not be used?

Avoid prescribing/dispersing/administering medicines containing substances in Annex IV of European Council Regulation 2377/90. If these substances are given the horse can NEVER go for human consumption. Fortunately this list is short and the main substances that are likely to be considered for use in horses are **metronidazole** and **chloramphenicol**.

480

The full current list is:

481

- Metronidazole.
- Chloramphenicol.
- Chloroform.

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

- Chlorpromazine.
- Colchicine.
- Dapsone.
- Dimetridazole.
- Furazolidone.
- Nitrofurans.
- Ronidazole.

If an Annex IV substance is administered to a horse intended for human consumption it should always be recorded in the passport (Section IX part IIIb) **BY THE PERSON ADMINISTERING IT TO THE HORSE** and the owner advised that the declared status of the horse will have to be amended to **NOT intended** for human consumption.

29.2.2.2

### 2. What medicines can be used WITHOUT any recording in the passport?

If a medicine is prescribed/dispensed/administered which contains a substance which **IS** listed (for **any** food-producing species) in Annexes I, II or III of European Council Regulation 2377/90 then it need NOT be recorded in the passport.

- Lists of Veterinary Medicinal products **licensed for use in the horse** in the UK which fall into this category are on the VMD website at [www.vmd.gov.uk](http://www.vmd.gov.uk) (under 'publications' and then 'horse medicines' then 'Veterinary Medicinal Products Authorised for Use in Horses' then 'Medicines that do **not** need to be listed in the passport (because the substances they contain are in Annexes I–III of Regulation 2377/90)').
- Where medicines are being used under the cascade reference will need to be made to the actual Annexes I, II or III of European Council Regulation 2377/90 to determine if the active substances are included (for **any** food-producing species). There is a link to the Annex lists from the VMD website [www.vmd.gov.uk](http://www.vmd.gov.uk) (under 'publications' and then 'horse medicines' then 'European Commission – Maximum Residue Limits of Veterinary Medicinal Products in Foodstuffs of Animal Origin').

29.2.2.3

### 3. What medicines do need to be recorded in the passport?

Firstly medicines containing substances in Annex IV as outlined above. Secondly medicines containing substances which are **NOT** included (*for any food-producing species*) in Annexes I–III of European Council Regulation 2377/90 need to be recorded in the passport (in Section IX part IIIb) **BY THE PERSON ADMINISTERING IT TO THE HORSE**. Lists of veterinary medicinal products licensed for use in the horse in the UK which fall into this category are on the VMD website at [www.vmd.gov.uk](http://www.vmd.gov.uk). On this website, see under 'Publications', and then 'Horse medicines', then 'Veterinary medicinal products authorised for use in horses', then 'Medicines that may need to be listed in the passport (if either the horse is declared as intended for human consumption or the declaration has not been signed). These will include:

- Phenylbutazone.

481

482

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

- Meclofenamic acid.
- Eltenac.
- Suxibuzone.
- Griseofulvin.
- Halothane.
- Pethidine.
- Acepromazine.
- Etorphine.

**NB See VMD list as described above for complete and up-to-date list.**

Again where medicines containing such substances are being used under the cascade reference will need to be made to the actual Annexes I, II or III of European Council Regulation 2377/90 to confirm that the active substances are not included (for **any** food-producing species). There is a link to the Annex lists from the VMD website [www.vmd.gov.uk](http://www.vmd.gov.uk) (under 'Publications', and then 'Horse medicines' then 'European Commission – maximum residue limits of veterinary medicinal products in foodstuffs of animal origin').

### 29.2.2.4 4. What withdrawal periods apply?

A licensed VMP will either have a specific withdrawal period defined on its data sheet or, if not, a standard 6-month withdrawal period will apply. The list of licensed equine products on the VMD website referred to above is subdivided into those products that have a specific withdrawal period and those to which a standard 6-month withdrawal period applies. A 6-month withdrawal period will also apply to medicines not licensed for use in the horse and being used under the cascade. The client should be informed of the withdrawal period.

#### 29.2.2.4.1 Note:

Owners of horses declared as intended for human consumption or where the declaration is not signed have an existing separate legal obligation to keep a written record of ALL medicines or substances administered to their horse (i.e. to keep a 'medicines book'). This requirement falls to them under existing food safety legislation rather than the new passport regulations (The Animals and Animal Products (Examination for Residues and Maximum Residues Limits) Regulations 1997, SI 1997 No. 1729 paragraph 32 – made under the Food Safety Act 1990.)

482

### 29.3 THE HORSE WITHOUT A PASSPORT

483

- If the horse does not have a passport (e.g. is too young to require one, or does not have one available at the time, or the identification cannot be confirmed, or has an 'old' passport to which Section IX pages have not yet been added) then the veterinary surgeon should **avoid prescribing/dispersing/administering**

## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

**medicines containing substances in Annex IV** of European Council Regulation 2377/90 as outlined above). No other restrictions apply and the horse can be treated with drugs licensed for use in horses or under the cascade (see Amelia 8, VMD website <http://www.vmd.gov.uk/>).

- The veterinary surgeon should keep his or her own clinical record of the substances/medicines prescribed/dispensed/administered (including the date) and, if the medicines contain substances not included (for any food-producing species) in Annexes I, II or III of Council Regulation 2377/90, give a copy of this treatment record to the owner/keeper. Written notification that administration of these medicines must be recorded in the passport once available by the owner if the horse is declared as intended for human consumption or undeclared. If the medicine contained a substance in Annex IV of Council Regulation 2377/90 the owner should be given written notification of this fact and that the horse may not now be slaughtered for human consumption.

### 29.3.1 Commonly asked questions

#### 29.3.1.1 1. Who does the recording in the passport?

The final responsibility for recording substance/medicine use should lie with the individual **administering** the substance/medicine. Thus in the case of:

- (i) Substances/medicines prescribed or dispensed by the veterinary surgeon but administered by the owner/keeper, or
- (ii) Substances/medicines acquired by the owner/keeper and administered to the horse independently of the veterinary surgeon (e.g. PML and GSL products), responsibility for recording in the passport lies with the owner/keeper (despite the fact that many passport formats are likely to suggest the need for a **veterinary** signature in the relevant column in Section IX part IIb).

If the veterinary surgeon administers a substance/medicine then the recording responsibility lies with him/her (hence with horses declared as intended for human consumption or undeclared if in doubt record medicines administered).

#### 29.3.1.2 2. Who is responsible for a residue-free carcass?

BEVA have been told by DEFRA that if the horse is intended for human consumption it is the owner's responsibility to present a residue-free animal to the slaughterhouse.

483

#### 29.3.1.3 3. What about potential data sheet confusions?

484

Note that VMD currently state on their website:

*'We are aware that this section offers only limited guidance. Currently the marketing authorisations for the products intended for use in horses may carry a warning that they "must not be used in horses for human consumption". This fulfills the requirements of UK and EC medicines and residues legislation but the implementation of the new Horse Passport Scheme leads to some difficulties in the interpretation of the legislation overall. This is because a conflict exists between the European laws covering on the one hand, horse passports and on the other hand, residues. We have therefore*



## Saunders Equine Formulary, 2nd Edition

---

*amended the UK legislation to harmonise it with the horse passport provisions so far as we can. Statutory Instrument No 2004/147 came into force on 23 February 2004 and permits the legislation on residues to be read in conjunction with the passport legislation. We are currently considering how this will impact on the individual marketing authorisations and this is likely to take some time as each authorisation has to be dealt with separately in conjunction with the marketing authorisation holder. In the meantime our working assumption in interpreting the conflicting EC laws will be that we **CAN** allow the use of a medicine (unless it contains a banned (Annex IV) substance) in horses that have been declared as intended for human consumption provided that a full medicines record is maintained (by the owner) and a 6-month withdrawal period before slaughter can be demonstrated.'*

This recognises the confusion that is going to arise because some data sheets currently state 'Do not use in horses intended for human consumption' and yet it will in fact be possible to do so provided:

- (a) The substance involved is not in Annex IV of European Council Regulation 2377/90.
- (b) A six-month withdrawal period is observed.
- (c) The owner records the use of the medicine in their medicines book.
- (d) If necessary (as outlined above) the use of the medicine is recorded in the passport.

29.3.1.4

### 4. Who can I contact about queries?

DEFRA helpline number for passports is 0207 904 6216.

VMD can be contacted on 01932 336911.

British Equine Veterinary Association:

Wakefield House

46 High Street

Sawston

Cambridgeshire

CB2 4BG

Tel: +44 (0)1223 836 970

Fax: + 44(0)1223 835 287